

Handbook for Korean Studies Librarianship Outside of Korea

Committee on Korean Materials
Council on East Asian Libraries



Editorial Board Members:

Erica S. Chang
Mikyung Kang
Miree Ku
Yunah Sung
Hyokyoung Yi

Copy Editors:

Philip Melzer
Nancy Sack

Handbook for Korean Studies Librarianship Outside of Korea

Published by the National Library of Korea

The National Library of Korea
201, Banpo-daero, Seocho-gu,
Seoul, Korea, 137-702
Tel: 82-2-590-6325 Fax: 82-2-590-6329
www.nl.go.kr

© 2014 **Committee on Korean Materials, CEAL** retains copyright for all written materials that are original with this volume.

ISBN 979-11-5687-075-3 93020

Table of Contents

Foreword	Ellen Hammond	1
Preface	Miree Ku	3
Chapter 1. Introduction	Yunah Sung	5
Chapter 2. Acquisitions and Collection Development		
2.1. Introduction	Mikyung Kang	7
2.2. Collection Development	Hana Kim	9
2.2.1 Korean Studies		9
2.2.2 Introduction: Area Studies and Korean Studies		9
2.2.3 East Asian Collections in North America: the Historical Overview		10
2.2.4 Collection Development and Management		11
2.2.4.1 Collection Development Policy		12
2.2.4.2 Developing Collections		13
2.2.4.3 Selection Criteria		13
2.2.4.4 Selection Tools		16
2.2.4.5 Serials		21
2.2.4.6 Cooperative Collection Development		23
2.2.4.7 Managing a Budget		24
2.2.4.8 Managing Collections		25

2.3. Producers and Distributors of Korean Language Materials

	Jaeyong Chang	29
2.3.1	Background	29
2.3.2	Publishing in Korea	29
2.3.3	Publication of Korean Materials in Other Countries	30
2.3.4	Vendors in South Korea	31
2.3.5	Vendors of North Korean Materials	32
2.3.6	Vendors of Korean Materials from China	33
2.3.7	Vendors of Korean Materials from Japan	33
2.3.8	Korean Materials Published in the USA	34
2.3.9	Korean Materials from the Former USSR	35
2.3.10	Conclusions	36
2.4. Acquisitions: Approval Plan	Youngsim Leigh	37
2.4.1	Major Characteristics of an Approval Plan	37
2.4.2	Benefits of Implementing an Approval Plan	38
2.4.3	Disadvantages of an Approval Plan	39
2.4.4	Approval Plan Suppliers in Korea	40
2.4.5	Documents Needed for Contracting the Approval Plan	42
2.4.6	Criteria for Selecting Suppliers	45
2.4.7	Appendixes	47
2.5. Acquisitions: Firm Orders	Mikyung Kang	61
2.5.1	Selecting Materials	61
2.5.2	New Publication Lists from Korean book Vendors	62
2.5.3	Online Bookstore Lists	63
2.5.4	Ordering	63
2.5.5	Data Loading Services	68
2.5.6	Appendixes: Vendor Lists	69
2.6. Gift and Exchange Program	Helen Kim, Yunah Sung	74
2.6.1	Introduction	74
2.6.2	List of Possible Donors and Partners	77

Chapter 3. Cataloging

3.1. Introduction	Erica Chang	85
3.1.1 Notes		86
3.1.2 Important Changes with RDA for All Formats		86
3.2. Romanization	Erica Chang	91
3.3. Textual Printed Monographs	Jee-Young Park	93
3.3.1 PCC Core Elements in RDA		93
3.3.2 Translations of Work by Single Author (Translation Only)		93
3.3.3 Translations of Work by Single Author (Translations + Original)		93
3.3.4 Simultaneous Publications in Different Languages		94
3.3.5 Revised Editions		95
3.3.6 Errors in Title Proper		96
3.3.7 Compilations by a Single Author		97
3.3.8 Compilations by Multiple Authors		98
3.3.9 Collaborations: ‘No Rule of Three’ in 245 \$c		99
3.3.10 Books with Accompanying Non-print Media		100
3.3.11 Reprints		100
3.3.12 Commentaries		101
3.3.13 Additions		102
3.3.14 Dissertations or Theses		104
3.3.15 Sacred Scriptures		104
3.3.16 Official Communications		105
3.3.17 Conferences		105
3.3.18 Frequently Used Relationship Designators		106
3.4. Textual Printed Serials	Erica Chang	107
3.4.1 References		107
3.4.2 CONSER RDA Core Elements		107
3.4.3 Creator		109
3.4.4 Authorized Access Point		109
3.4.5 Different Works with Same Title		110
3.4.6 Language Edition (Translation)		110
3.4.7 Language Edition (Simultaneous Editions)		110
3.4.8 Title Change		111

3.4.9	Reprints	112
3.4.10	Supplements, Accompanying Materials	112
3.4.11	Relationship Designators	113
3.5. Moving Image Materials	Erica Chang	114
3.5.1	References	114
3.5.2	RDA Cataloging for DVD-Video in Monograph Format	114
3.5.3	RDA Cataloging for Carriers Other Than DVD-Video	119
3.5.4	Example	120
3.6. Sound Recordings	Eunseung Oh	123
3.6.1	References	123
3.6.2	Musical Sound Recordings	123
3.6.3	Non-Musical Sound Recordings	130
3.6.4	Example	131
3.7. Scores	EunHee Nah	133
3.7.1	References	133
3.7.2	Traditional Korean Music and Scores	133
3.7.3	RDA Fields for Scores	134
3.7.4	RDA Relationship Designators	135
3.7.5	Examples	135
3.8. Maps	Hee-Sook Shin	139
3.8.1	References	139
3.8.2	Fields for Maps	139
3.8.3	Examples	143
3.9. Online Textual Resources (Remote Access Resources)	Erica Chang	146
3.9.1	Monographs	146
3.9.2	Monograph Example	148
3.9.3	Serials	149
3.9.4	Serial Example	150

3.10. RDA Tools and Resources	Jee-Young Park	151
3.11. Korean Cataloging Outsourcing	Eunseung Oh	153
3.11.1 Planning, Selecting, and Evaluating Vendors		153
3.11.2 Korean Outsourcing Vendors		154
3.12. Subject Headings	Erica Chang	157
3.12.1 References		157
3.12.2 Personal Name Headings as Subject (600)		158
3.12.3 Corporate Body Headings as Subject (610)		158
3.12.4 Titles as Subjects (630)		159
3.12.5 Literary Works Entered Under Authors (600)		159
3.12.6 Groups of Literary Authors (650)		160
3.12.7 Classes of Persons (650, 610, 651)		160
3.12.8 Ethnic Groups (650)		161
3.12.9 Other General Topical Headings (650)		161
3.12.10 Geographic Name Headings (651)		161
3.12.11 Use of Geographic Subdivisions, Korea, Korea (South), Korea (North), Local Places		162
3.12.12 Korean Art Headings		162

Chapter 4. Information Literacy, Faculty Liaison, Community Outreach and Reference Tools at North American Korean Studies Libraries

4.1. Introduction	Hana Kim	163
4.2. Library Instruction/Information Literacy, LibGuide, Lib Catalog Search	Jude Yang	165
4.2.1 Library Instruction/Information Literacy		165
4.2.2 LibGuides		168
4.2.3 Library Catalog Searches		172

4.3. Faculty Liaison and Community Outreach Activities

	Hana Kim	177
4.3.1	Faculty Liaison	177
4.3.1.1	Meeting Your Faculty	178
4.3.1.2	Building Relationships	180
4.3.1.3	Communicating Professionally	181
4.3.1.4	Tailoring to Faculty Interests	182
4.3.1.5	Collaborating with Faculty	183
4.3.1.6	Suggested Readings	186
4.3.2.	Community Outreach	186
4.3.2.1	Campus Community Outreach for Undergraduate Students	186
4.3.2.2	Local Community Outreach	187
4.3.2.3	Bibliographies	190

4.4. Ask a Korean Studies Librarian and Other Reference Services

	Hyokyoung Yi	191
4.4.1	Ask a Korean Studies Librarian	191
4.4.1.1	Brief History	191
4.4.1.2	Service Design	192
4.4.1.3	Evaluation	193
4.4.1.4	Suggestions	195
4.4.2	The International Network for Korean Studies Librarians (INKSLIB)	196
4.4.3.	National Assembly Library of Korea's Reference Service	196

4.5. Basic Reference Sources in Print Format

	Kyungmi Chun	197
4.5.1	Guide to Reference Works	198
4.5.2	General Encyclopedias	198
4.5.3	Encyclopedias, Dictionaries and Glossaries for Korean Studies	198
4.5.4	Korean Language Dictionaries	199
4.5.5	Korean-English Dictionaries	199
4.5.6	<i>Hanchaŏ</i> (Chinese Characters Used in Korea) and Korean-Chinese Dictionaries	199
4.5.7	Korean-Other Language Dictionaries	200
4.5.8	Korean Romanization	201

4.5.9	Bibliographies and Catalogs	201
4.5.10	Indexes	203
4.5.11	General Guides, Handbooks and Yearbooks	203
4.5.12	Biographies	204
4.5.13	Chronologies	205
4.5.14	Directories	206
4.5.15	General Statistics	206
4.5.16	Multidisciplinary Sources	206
4.5.17	Anthropology	207
4.5.18	Art and Art History	208
4.5.19	Business	208
4.5.20	Communications, Journalism and Media Studies	209
4.5.21	Economics	210
4.5.22	Education	211
4.5.23	Film and Theatre	212
4.5.24	Geography	212
4.5.25	History	214
4.5.26	Language and Linguistics	216
4.5.27	Literature	217
4.5.28	Music	219
4.5.29	Philosophy and Intellectual History	219
4.5.30	Political Science and International Relations	220
4.5.31	Religion	222
4.5.32	Sociology	222
4.5.33	Women's Studies	224

Chapter 5. Information Technology

5.1. Introduction	Hyoungbae Lee	225
5.2. Korean Fee-based Online Resources	Mikyung Kang	226
5.2.1	Books/Texts	226
5.2.2	Dissertations	229
5.2.3	Articles/Journals	230
5.2.4	News	232
5.2.5	Images/Multimedia	233

5.3. Free Electronic Resources for Korean Studies

	Hee-sook Shin	234
5.3.1	Bibliographies, Catalogs, and Indexes	234
5.3.2	Biographies	236
5.3.3	Dictionaries and Encyclopedias	237
5.3.4	Films and Multimedia	239
5.3.5	Geography and Maps	240
5.3.6	Newspapers and News Media	241
5.3.7	Statistics	243
5.3.8	Arts & Culture	245
5.3.9	Economics & Business	247
5.3.10	Education	248
5.3.11	Genealogy	249
5.3.12	Government	249
5.3.13	History	250
5.3.14	Labor	254
5.3.15	Language & Literature	254
5.3.16	Law	256
5.3.17	North Korea and Unification	257
5.3.18	Philosophy & Religion	258
5.3.19	Science & Information Technology	259
5.3.20	Social Science	260

5.4. English Databases for Korean Studies

	Kyungmi Chun	261
5.4.1	Archival Collections and Primary Sources	261
5.4.2	Book Reviews	262
5.4.3	Dictionary	263
5.4.4	Dissertations and Theses	263
5.4.5	Government Publications	263
5.4.6	Newspapers and Newswires	265
5.4.7	Statistics and Numeric Data	266
5.4.8	Multidisciplinary Sources	267
5.4.9	Anthropology	270
5.4.10	Architecture, Art, and Art History	271
5.4.11	Business	271

5.4.12	Communication	272
5.4.13	Economics	272
5.4.14	Education	273
5.4.15	Film, Theatre, and Performing Arts	273
5.4.16	Geography	274
5.4.17	History	274
5.4.18	Language, Linguistics, and Literature	274
5.4.19	Music	275
5.4.20	Philosophy	275
5.4.21	Political Science	275
5.4.22	Psychology	276
5.4.23	Religion	276
5.4.24	Social Work	276
5.4.25	Sociology	277
5.4.26	Women's and Gender Studies	277
5.5.	Technology and Library Services	
	Hyoungbae Lee	279
5.5.1	Korean IME (Input Method Editor)	279
5.5.2	Internet Browsers	280
5.5.3	Unicode, Han'gŭl, and Hancha	281
5.5.4	Ayn, Alif, and Apostrophe	285
5.5.5	Macros	285
5.6.	Korean Studies Electronic Resources: Purchase and Subscription through Group Collaboration	
	Miree Ku	291
5.6.1	Introduction	291
5.6.2	History and Current Status of Purchasing/Subscribing to Korean Studies E-Resources	291

Chapter 6. Case Studies

6.1. The Korean Collection at the University of Auckland Library

	Kyu-won Hwang	303
6.1.1	Introduction	303
6.1.2	History	303
6.1.3	Composition of the Collection	304
6.1.4	Collection Development	305
6.1.5	Last Word: Future Challenges	306

6.2. Korean Studies Collection at the University of Michigan

	Yunah Sung	308
6.2.1	Introduction	308
6.2.2	Korean Studies at Michigan	308
6.2.3	History of the Korean Collection	309
6.2.4	Scope of the Collection	310
6.2.5	Electronic Resources	310
6.2.6	Staffing and Collection Budget	311
6.2.7	Korean Collections Consortium of North America (KCCNA)	312
6.2.8	Challenges and Opportunities	312
6.2.9	Related Sites	313

6.3. Developing a Korean Studies Collection: The Case of the Monash University Library, Australia

	Jung-Sim Kim	314
6.3.1	Korean Studies Collection	314
6.3.2	Collaboration and Outreach Through Asian Libraries in Melbourne(ALIM)	316
6.3.3	Budget and Staffing	317
6.3.4	Potential Changes	317
6.3.5	Conclusion	318

6.4. Developing a Korean Studies Collection: The Case of Duke University	
	Miree Ku 319
6.4.1 Introduction.....	319
6.4.2 Brief Summary of Korean Collection at Duke	319
6.4.3 Issues and Challenges	322
6.4.3.1 Collection Evaluation.....	322
6.4.3.2 Budget Analysis.....	323
6.4.3.3 Acquisition	325
6.4.3.4 Access to Resources	326
6.4.3.5 User Service and Outreach.....	329
Chapter 7. Characteristics of Korean Studies Librarianship	
	Joy Kim 331
7.1. Essential Skills and Qualifications for Success.....	333
7.2. Personal Advice on Opportunities, Priorities, and Facing Common Challenges	335
7.3. Conclusion	338
Contributors	339

Foreword

Ellen H. Hammond

*President, Council on East Asian Libraries
Director, International Collections & Research Support,
Yale University Library*

It is an honor to write a foreword to this ambitious work. Building on the successful 2002 *Korean Studies Librarianship Outside of Korea: A Practical Guide and Manual*, its authors have crafted a comprehensive handbook that addresses issues of both theory and practice. The volume is much more than an update of the earlier manual; its broad scope and multi-layered approach extend its usefulness, making it appropriate for a wide range of audiences in various academic and library settings.

The most obvious audience for this handbook is Korean studies librarians working in research libraries in academic institutions outside of Korea. For novice librarians and old hands alike, this volume provides a short course in all aspects of the job, covering collection development methods and principles, acquisitions, cataloging, reference sources, electronic resources, and approaches to information literacy and the liaison librarian role. All of the practical information relevant to Korean studies librarianship is interwoven with concise overviews of “best practices” for librarianship in general and area studies librarianship in particular. In this way, the handbook transcends the specificity of its topic to become something much more: a primer or textbook for librarians in the 21st century research library, especially those who serve as advocates for their collections or, like area studies librarians, provide subject-based expertise.

Other groups of librarians can also benefit from this text: catalogers with Korean-language skills who have little experience cataloging Korean books, generalist librarians in college libraries who must guide students through the English-language sources for Korean studies, East Asian collection librarians without Korean-language skills who must, nevertheless, build a collection and support Korean studies students and scholars.

However, it is not only librarians who will find this volume a valuable reference. Faculty and students in Korean studies can use it as a basic guide for their research if they do not have direct access to a Korean studies librarian. The detailed information on print and electronic sources can be used to uncover information relevant to the study of Korea that is available in standard English-language databases, as well as more specialized sources in English and Korean. For those who must work with a non-specialist librarian to obtain materials from Korea, the text can serve as a “how-to” manual for acquisitions. For those in any academic field who need information relevant to Korea, this volume can serve as a good place to start with research. For native Korean speakers, the text will help them understand the mysteries of how North American libraries handle the Korean language in local online library catalogs.

For all of the above purposes, this handbook provides an up-to-date and thorough overview of Korean collection operations today. However, considered from a different angle, it also provides a fascinating glimpse of the diffusion of Korean-language information internationally in the early 21st century. In the future, this volume will likely become a primary source for study of Korean-language information flows and the development of Korean studies scholarship in historical perspective. In this way, the volume makes yet another valuable contribution to the field.

On a personal note as head of the Yale University East Asia Library, I would like to mention how grateful I am to the authors of the 2002 manual that served to inspire the present volume. Without a Korean studies librarian to rely on, my staff and I were faced with challenges similar to those reported in the case studies included in chapter six. Without access to the information contained in the earlier manual, we would have been completely unable to move forward. At the time, I was so impressed with the talent, dedication, and foresight of the contributors, who seemed to know exactly what would be useful to us. I know that many readers of the present volume will have a similar experience as they draw on the wealth of information contained here. And, like me, they will be grateful to the authors of this volume, who are representative of one of the finest groups of area studies librarians in North America today.

This volume was prepared under the auspices of the Committee on Korean Materials of the Council on East Asian Libraries (CEAL). As President of CEAL, I would like to commend the committee, as well as the authors and editors who participated in this important project. The publication of the *Handbook for Korean Studies Librarianship Outside of Korea* marks a major contribution to the field of librarianship.

Preface

Miree Ku

*Chair, Committee on Korean Materials, Council on East Asian Libraries
Korean Studies Librarian, Duke University*

It has been 12 years since the Committee on Korean Materials of the Council on East Asian Libraries (CEAL), published the “*Korean Librarianship Outside of Korea: A Practical Guide and Manual*” to aid Korean Studies librarians. This guide, which was published in 2002, was prepared by many contributors and based on their experience with the Workshop on Korean Studies Librarianship in March 2001.

In 2012, in an effort to provide the most up-to-date information on Korean Studies librarianship, the Committee on Korean Materials decided to publish a “*Handbook for Korean Studies Librarianship Outside of Korea*,” sponsored by the National Library of Korea to share knowledge on Korean Studies librarianship.

This handbook would not have been possible without the contributions and support of many people. First of all, I must recognize the significant time and effort spent by **the contributors** over the last two years. I am honored to have had the opportunity to work with these authors who are making an important contribution to the advancement of Korean Studies librarianship.

The Committee members have been working hard to outline the content of the handbook, which contains fundamental information on Acquisitions and Collection Development, Cataloging, Reference, E-resources and Information Technology. After the Committee finalized the title, table of contents, contributors, timeline and the editorial board members, the National Library of Korea sent official letters to Korean Studies librarians asking them to write. At the same time, Yunah Sung, the Chair of the Committee during 2011-2014, announced the publication of the handbook in 2013 and, upon its completion, the distribution of the handbook and its online version at no cost to libraries around the world. Later, the tentative publication date was changed to October, 2014. The reason for this was to allow for the review of Korean records following the Library of Congress’s implementation of RDA cataloging in March 31, 2013. The Committee members involved in this project during 2011-2014 are:

Yunah Sung (Chair), Korean Studies Librarian, University of Michigan
Mikyung Kang, Librarian for the Korean Collection, Harvard University
Hana Kim, Korean Studies Librarian, University of Toronto
Miree Ku, Korean Studies Librarian, Duke University
Hyoungbae Lee, Korean Studies Librarian, Princeton University
Jee Young Park, Korean Studies Librarian, University of Chicago
Hyokyong Yi, Korean Studies Librarian, University of Washington
Erica S. Chang (Cataloging Advisor), Cataloging Librarian, University of Hawaii
at Manoa

The Editorial Board (EB) members each took responsibility for a specific chapter. The Editorial Board members, Mikyung Kang, Erica S. Chang, Hyokyong Yi, Miree Ku and Yunah Sung also played a key role in compiling the chapters on Acquisitions and Collection Development, Cataloging, Reference, E-resources and Information Technology, and Case studies.

All the contributors are indebted to **Philip Melzer** and **Nancy Sack**, the editors of this handbook. Philip Melzer retired as Chief of the Asian and Middle Eastern Division of the Library of Congress and served as CEAL President (2006-2008). He devoted himself to reviewing and editing materials written by the contributors over the summer of 2014. Nancy Sack, cataloger at the University of Hawaii at Manoa, also dedicated her time and energy to reviewing and editing the Cataloging chapter with Erica S. Chang. Without their expertise and passion, this project would not have been possible. I am most grateful for their time and effort.

Finally, I would like to express thanks to **the National Library of Korea**, which sponsored the publication of the handbook. This project gave us an opportunity to collect a wide array of information, knowledge and scholarly resources and make them accessible to those who wish to use them into the future.

The contributors have spent the last two years preparing these manuals, which were edited during the summer of 2014. As Chair of the Committee on Korean Materials (CKM) of the Council on East Asian Libraries (CEAL), I sincerely hope that their hard work on compiling the accumulated knowledge of Korean Studies librarianship will be an indispensable asset to all readers. We welcome any comments, suggestions, or questions, so please use the contact information listed in the back of this handbook. The contributors, editors, and sponsor would like to extend our best wishes for your endeavors in Korean Studies programs and collections.

October 2014

Chapter 1

Introduction

By Yunah Sung¹

The “*Handbook for Korean Studies Librarianship Outside of Korea*” is a guide to the practices, procedures, and standards for a Korean studies librarian to develop, organize, and manage an excellent Korean studies collection. To assist Korean studies librarians in developing their collections and serving the constantly evolving needs of the diverse user community, this handbook has been compiled to share an in-depth knowledge of the complexities, dynamics, and methods of some of the leading Korean studies librarians.

This handbook consists of seven chapters. Following the introduction, Chapter 2 provides detailed information on acquisitions and collection development, featuring collection development policy, tools and criteria, vendors, approval plans, firm orders, and gift & exchange programs. Chapter 3 covers cataloging policies and guidelines in the new cataloging code RDA (Resource Description and Access) with examples of various formats, such as monographs, serials, moving image materials (DVDs), sound recordings, scores, maps, and electronic resources. In addition, the ALA-LC Romanization system for the Korean language, Library of Congress subject headings, RDA tools and resources, and outsourcing related information are covered in this chapter.

The main subject of Chapter 4 is public services, with guidance on information literacy instruction, reference services, faculty liaison roles, and community outreach activities. This chapter also contains basic reference sources in print format arranged by specific categories, including encyclopedias, dictionaries, bibliographies & catalogs, indexes, biographies, statistics, and various other subjects. Chapter 5 addresses issues related to

¹ Korean Studies Librarian, University of Michigan

information technology and library services, such as the Korean IME, Internet browsers, Unicode, diacritics, and macros. There are also in-depth bibliographies of both freely available and fee-based Korean and English online resources. The last section of Chapter 5 is devoted to the brief history and current status of purchasing and subscribing to Korean studies e-resources, as well as the grant programs which support access to these e-resources for eligible libraries outside of Korea.

Chapter 6 consists of case studies of four Korean studies collections; University of Auckland in New Zealand, Monash University in Australia, and two libraries in the United States, Duke University and the University of Michigan. For each library there is a brief history, unique aspects of the collection, strengths and weaknesses, and challenges and opportunities. The last chapter is titled “Characteristics of Korean Studies Librarianship”, in which the author discusses most important skills and qualities for Korean studies librarians to possess in order to perform multi-tasking of collection development, acquisitions, cataloging, reference, instruction, outreach, technology, and preservation. The author foresees that an intelligent, creative, motivated, passionate and energetic librarian will devise ingenious ways to grow the collection and provide excellent service.

Korea’s rise to prominence in the world has prompted the steady development of the study of Korea, its people and culture. As a result, Korean studies have become an increasingly important aspect of librarianship, one which will continue to grow in scope and complexity in the coming years. The authors of this handbook hope that new and veteran librarians, heritage and non-heritage Korean librarians alike will find it useful in helping them to provide excellent user services and treasure their Korean collections for library users in the future.

Chapter 2

Acquisitions and Collection Development

2.1. Introduction

By Mikyung Kang¹

This chapter covers information on Acquisitions and Collection Development mainly for Korean language materials in the field of Korean Studies in general, and it is organized into three sections as follows:

1. Collection Development
2. Acquisitions
3. Gift and Exchange Program

The first section, Collection Development, provides information on collection development of mainly Korean Studies materials, covering Korean language materials from two Koreas, South Korea and North Korea, and those publications published in Korean from China, Japan, and countries in the territory of the former USSR. A wide range of collection development issues are addressed, including general overview of Korean Studies, East Asian Collections in North America, collection development policy, and technical collection management issues. The section also provides detailed information about producers and distributors of Korean language materials and selection tools for Korean Studies materials.

The section on Acquisitions includes information about approval plans and firm ordering, the two major methods of acquiring Korean materials. Included are both technical and

¹ Librarian for the Korean Collection, Harvard-Yenching Library, Harvard University

practical information and workflows, along with step by step procedures, with samples of documents and screen captures to explain what to do and how to do it. Appendices at the end of this section provide detailed information about each book vendor from which one can acquire Korean materials.

Lastly, the ‘Gift and Exchange Program’ section provides workflows for receiving gift and exchange materials. There is a list of potential Korean gift and exchange partners for overseas libraries, and possible publication requests for gift and exchange programs.

In general, it is authors’ intention to provide information specific to Korean Studies rather than general information concerning acquisitions and collection development for all library collections.

The chapter provides some useful tips and information that should lead to improvements in economy and efficiency.

2.2. Collection Development

By Hana Kim²

2.2.1 Korean Studies

This section primarily deals with collection development that supports Korean Studies in an academic and research collection, and is based on Korean language materials published in South Korea in the humanities and social sciences. However, some simple tips on selection tools for English language materials on Korean Studies are also briefly introduced for selectors for Korean Studies who do not understand the Korean language.

2.2.2 Introduction: Area Studies and Korean Studies

Interdisciplinary and multidisciplinary area studies became notably important in United States scholarship after World War II as a response to the perceived need to enhance the knowledge in the Western world of the Soviet Union and its satellites, and of third world countries (Johns 1990, ix). After the war, there was substantial support from foundations and government for the creation of area studies expertise. In particular, by the 1970's in the United States, funding opportunities and institutional developments in area studies had achieved remarkable results, substantially altering the ethnocentrism of many social science and history departments (Kennedy 1997).

As mentioned by Schmid, with respect to the launching of Korean Studies in the same fashion as other area studies programs, in the United States, types of Cold War funding were crucial. On the other hand, this phenomenon did not occur in Canada, where education is a provincial and not federal responsibility, thus leaving universities largely on their own to develop fields of study. In Canada, the growth of Asian Studies at major universities followed what might be called more Orientalist traditions, as had been the case in Europe, with largely a focus on China and some attention to Japan (2006, 46-47).

² Korea Studies Librarian, Cheng Yu Tung East Asian Library, University of Toronto(As of September 2014, Head, Asian Library, University of British Columbia)

As a discipline of area studies, Korean Studies focuses on the study of Korea, its society and culture. The term first began to be used in the 1940s for course offerings on Korea at the School of Oriental and African Studies (SOAS), University of London (Korea Research Foundation Newsletter 2003), but did not attain widespread currency until South Korea rose to economic prominence in the 1970s. In 1991, the South Korean government established the Korea Foundation with the aim of enhancing the global image of Korea, and also to promote academic and cultural exchange programs on Korean Studies around the world (Han'guk Kukche Kyoryu Chaedan 2007, 29-30).

In North America, Korean Studies programs commonly include Korean history, literature, anthropology, art, music, language, sociology, political science, religion, economics, archeology, and ethnomusicology.

2.2.3 East Asian Collections in North America: the Historical Overview

Misco states that similar to the general development of area studies scholarship in North America, area studies collections also went through a major expansion following the Cold War and other developments affecting the global community (2011, 387). Although each library collection for area studies may have a different starting point, those collections have generally developed with the aim of directly support the institution's academic and research programs.

Tsien states that the first large addition of East Asian books to an American library was a collection in the Chinese language obtained from China in 1869, which was deposited at the Library of Congress (LC) (1964-65, 19). By the end of 19th century, a considerable amount of Chinese material had been collected in several academic and research libraries, such as Harvard University, Yale University, University of California at Berkeley, and New York Public Library. Subsequently, books in other East Asian languages were brought in at the beginning of the 20th century. The Japanese collection at LC was begun in 1906, when some 9,000 volumes of Japanese literature were acquired, and a similar collection was built up at Yale (Tsien 1966, 58). The expanding interest in East Asian Studies or Far Eastern Studies at many universities in the 1930's resulted in the further establishment of new collections, such as those at the University of Chicago, Northwestern University, University of Pennsylvania, Princeton University, and the University of Toronto. Since then, these collections have constantly been growing, and new ones have also been established, such as those at the University of California at Los

Angeles, University of Michigan, and University of Washington at Seattle, and at many other institutions throughout the USA and Canada (Tsien 1966, 59).

Furthermore, we may also note that the development of East Asian collections in North America is of particular importance today because of ever-growing East Asian immigration to the USA and Canada, and increasing cultural diversity.

2.2.4 Collection Development and Management

Johnson states that collection development and management are the meat and potatoes of libraries. She specifically emphasizes that if one doesn't have a collection, then one doesn't have a library (2004, ix). Gardner also emphasizes that public services will succeed or fail as a result of good or poor collection development (1981, xi). These statements explicitly articulate how important collection development is for a library.

Collection development is a term representing the planned purchase of materials in various formats to meet the instructional and research needs or mission of an institution in a timely manner within the current fiscal environment and resource sharing opportunities.

Johnson cites the essential activities of collection development and management advocated by the Collection Management Section of the Association for Library Collections and Technical Services of the American Library Association (ALA) (2004, 2):

- Collection policies
- Selection of materials in all formats
- Collection maintenance (selection for weeding and storage, preservation, and serials cancellation)
- Budget and finance
- Assessment of needs of users and potential users
- Liaison and outreach activities related to the collection and its users
- Collection use studies
- Collection assessment and evaluation
- Planning for cooperation and resource sharing.

2.2.4.1 Collection Development Policy

Johnson states that libraries without collection development policies are like businesses without business plans (2004, 72). Collection development policies provide a blueprint for the maintenance and expansion of the library's collection in all formats. These written policies help to ensure consistency in procedures and enable libraries to allocate acquisition funds adequately and develop a strong collection while meeting users' needs.

A carefully prepared, up-to-date collection development policy provides clear guidelines when making selection decisions. Collection development policies may vary in academic and research libraries depending on their mandates and budget capabilities. However, in general, the International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions (IFLA) guides librarians to include the following elements in a collection development policy (International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions, Section on Acquisition and Collection Development 2001):

- Introduction (mission statement, the purpose of the policy statement, identification of target audiences)
- General statements (characteristics that determine the direction of the development of the collection)
- Narrative statements (detailed scope and coverage)
- Subject profiles (collection assessment)
- Collection evaluation methods (techniques and processes used to gather data for collection assessment)
- Collection depth indicators (description of collection intensity levels)
- Language codes
- Policy implementation and revision timetables

Here are some samples of the collection development policies related to East Asian collections, or genre specific Korean collections.

- McGill University – East Asian Studies Collection: Provides a good map of other campus libraries, which also hold East Asian Studies-related materials.
www.mcgill.ca/library/about/collections/collection-policies/asian
- University of Pennsylvania Libraries – East Asian Studies: Clearly indicates exclusions within their collection development.
www.library.upenn.edu/collections/policies/easian.html

- Indiana University Bloomington Libraries – East Asian Collection: Presents a detailed general statement.
www.libraries.iub.edu/index.php?pageId=2567
- Wellesley College - East Asian Languages and Culture and East Asian Studies: Provides an exhaustive list of related subjects and interdisciplinary relationships to the collaborative collection development.
www.wellesley.edu/lts/collections/collectiondevelopment/cdpolicies/cdeall
- Ohio State University – Manga Collection: Provides a genre-specific collection development policy.
library.osu.edu/blogs/manga/manga-collection-development-policy/

These examples may provide guidance and motivation for creating one's own collection development policy for the Korean Studies collection at one's institution.

2.2.4.2 Developing Collections

In addition to input from faculty, the following criteria are generally used as guides when selecting titles for the collection, developing the reference collection, developing new areas in the collection, filling in identified gaps in the collection, and doing retrospective collection building:

2.2.4.3 Selection Criteria

-- Criteria for Selection of Books

Within the constraints of the financial resources available at an institution, selection of library materials for purchase is considered on the basis of the following criteria. Particular criteria may assume a greater or lesser importance. There is no single standard that can be applied universally in all cases when making the decision to acquire a title for a library's collection.

- Relevance to current and potential teaching, learning and research programs at an institution
- Collection continuity (e.g., maintenance of strong existing collections)
- Currency and timeliness of content

- Authority
- Quality of content
- Expectation of use
- Cost, ongoing expense, and availability
- Types of material (e.g., format, genre, subject)
- Language
- Uniqueness of content, features or capabilities
- Space and storage issues (e.g., print vs. e-book)
- Inter-institutional or collaborative collection development agreements
- Recreational reading

-- Criteria for Selection of Serials

Selection criteria for serials are consistent with the criteria for selection of books set out above, but also specifically include the following factors:

- Reputation of editors, contributors, publishers
- Reviews of the title
- Journal ranking studies
- Quality of paper, print, graphics, special features
- Currency and regular publication of issues
- Current and past price history
- Cost effectiveness
- Inclusion on lists of journals recommended by accrediting agencies
- Availability elsewhere (interlibrary loans)

To maximize availability and accessibility, if the platform, cost and licensing conditions (including perpetual access) are acceptable, today electronic journals are generally regarded to be the preferred format. The website of the Colgate University Libraries (exlibris.colgate.edu/about/policies/serialscdpolicy.htm) provides a useful guideline for which format would be preferred in selecting serials.

- Electronic may be the preferred format for selection providing:
 - price is similar or less than the print subscription (cost of binding or microform purchase should be considered as part of the cost to own)

- completeness is similar to the print, or the materials excluded have limited research value (advertisements, job advertisements)
 - perpetual access is available, with a reasonable assurance of continued long-term availability
 - there are not unreasonable licensing conditions
 - availability of usage statistics
 - the quality of graphics is high enough to support the primary uses of the title
 - there is full text reproduction (images, graphs, charts are included).
 - usability of the digital version is equal to or superior to the print edition
 - there is access control via the WWW and authentication via IP restriction (or an acceptable substitute)
- Print may still be favored for:
 - popular magazines (e.g., *Wŏlgan Chosŏn* 月刊朝鮮 [Monthly Chosun], Seoul: Chosŏn Ilbosa, 1980- and *Wŏlgan Chungang* 월간중앙 [Monthly Joongang], Seoul: Chungang Ilbosa, 1999-.
 - titles with significant cost increases for online access
 - titles with limited assurance of perpetual access
- Print plus electronic may be selected if:
 - cost of print includes online, and titles have limited assurance of perpetual access
 - it is the only subscription model
 - titles with rolling back files will not have online access implemented unless there is substantial content.
- Microform may be the least preferred format, but may be selected when:
 - cost of binding and storage is prohibitive
 - image quality is acceptable to support the primary uses of the title
 - the format of the material does not lend itself to binding (e.g., newspapers)
 - space restrictions to shelve bound print is often a prime consideration for libraries. In such cases, the print may not be bound, but discarded upon receipt of the microform.

It is also noted that these days microfilm titles are often no longer purchased at many institutions in the United States and Canada.

-- Criteria for Selection of Media Materials

Film and video material can be an effective alternative to print media for teaching and research in Korean Studies. In addition to the general selection criteria for books outlined above, the following are also criteria that can be used specifically when selecting film and video materials:

- The lasting value of the media
- Curriculum relevance
- Quality of material
- Compatibility of the media and available hardware

DVDs are today the preferred format for audio-visual material, both because of the decline in the use of VHS equipment, and for the advantage of added features, such as scene selection, multiple subtitles, etc.

More specifically, in general, in North America CD is often regarded as the format of preference for audio, and DVD is often regarded as the format of preference for video. Other international video formats in North America, such as PAL, may be collected only when no authoritative version exists in NTSC. Region-free DVDs, typically manufactured in the Asian market, may be utilized more heavily for teaching and research if the item contains an English translation.

Subscription to services that offer electronic streaming of documentary and feature film material is another rising area that the Korean Studies librarian may make a selection from when developing a collection.

2.2.4.4 Selection Tools

-- Books (print) and Serials (print)

There are various sources that assist librarians in selecting resources on Korean Studies. Some of these selection tools provide evaluative information and are selective in nature, while other tools are more comprehensive in their coverage, such as vendor lists of titles available for purchase.

-- Book Reviews

Although only a small fraction of books published are actually reviewed, one of the most important sources of information for book selection is the book review. Book reviews provide descriptive and evaluative information that can be used in place of physically examining the actual book.

Book reviews for Korean language materials:

- *Ch'ulp'an chŏnöl 출판저널* [The Publishing journal], Seoul: Han'guk Ch'ulp'an Kŭmgo, 1987-.
- *Daum ch'aek = Daum 책* [Daum books], Seoul: Daum Communications. book.daum.net.
- *Naver ch'aek = Naver 책* [Naver books], Seoul: Naver. book.naver.com.
- *Toksŏ sinmun 독서신문* [Readers News], Seoul: Toksŏ sinmun. www.readersnews.com.
- and other major South Korean newspapers' book review sections (e.g., Chosŏn ilbo 조선일보, Tonga ilbo 동아일보, Chungang ilbo 중앙일보, and Sŏul sinmun 서울신문)

In addition, the following two sources are useful for selectors in Korean Studies who do not understand the Korean language, as they provide not only book reviews, but also other bibliographical information:

- *List : books from Korea*. Seoul, Korea Literature Translation Institute, 2008-. This is a quarterly magazine which introduces Korean books to overseas publishers and libraries.
- *Books on Korea*. Seoul, Korea Foundation. www.BooksonKorea.org. This website provides bibliographical information on publications and multimedia materials on Korea and the Korean language. The collection listed on the website is gathered through professional recommendations, and is used by the Foundation to carry out the Korea Foundation's Reference Materials Distribution Program. A log-in is required to access to this website.

Book Reviews for English language materials:

- *Acta Koreana*. Taegu, Korea: Kyemyŏng Taehakkyo, 1998-.

- *The Journal of Asian Studies*. Ann Arbor, Mich.: Association for Asian Studies, 1956-.
- *Journal of East Asian Studies*. Boulder, CO: Lynne Rienner, 2001-.
- *The Journal of Korean Studies*. Seattle: Society for Korean Studies, 1969-.
- *The IIAS Newsletter*. Leiden, Netherlands: International Institute for Asian Studies, 1993-.

-- Online Bookstores

Online bookstores provide a quick and easy way to find publication information for a wide range of books, as well as providing a convenient method for purchasing books that are needed very quickly. The disadvantage of these sources is that there is little professional critical opinion included.

Select South Korean Online Bookstores:

- Aladin 알라딘 = Aladdin www.aladin.co.kr
- Kyobo Mun'go 교보문고 = Kyobo Book www.kyobobook.co.kr
- Libūro 리브로 = LiBRO www.libro.co.kr
- YES24 www.yes24.com
- Yōngp'ung Mun'go 영풍문고 = Youngpoong Bookstore www.ypbooks.co.kr

-- Vendors' Catalogs

Major South Korean library vendors maintain extensive bibliographic catalogs for their customers. The vendors provide their customers with a paper or electronic list of newly-published titles and retrospective titles, including expensive, rare, or limited multi-volume sets.

Select South Korean vendors:

- Asea Munhwasa 아세아문화사 = The Asian Culture Press www.acp21.co.kr
- Kyōngin Munhwa 경인문화사 = Kyungin Publishing kyungin.mkstudy.com
- P'anmun 판문 = Panmun www.epanmun.co.kr
- T'aehaksa 태학사 = Taehaksa www.taehaksa.com
- Ŭryu Munhwasa 을유문화사 = Eulyo Publishing www.eulyoo.co.kr

-- Publishers' Catalogs

Publishers often send catalogs, flyers, and announcements to libraries to publicize their books and other publications. One may use these sources to keep up with new book publications that may be useful for one's Korean collection. As one becomes more familiar with publishers and their specialties, one will be better able to recognize those publishers of interest, whose books are seldom reviewed but whose products fill a specific need within one's client community. One may request print copies of their catalogs (which will automatically put you on their mailing list) so that one can take into account their publications at least a once a year.

Here is a list of select South Korean publishers which publish materials related to Korean Studies:

- Ch'angbi 창비 = Changbi Publishers www.changbi.com
- Chininjin 진인진 = Zininzin www.zininzin.co.kr
- Hanul Ak'ademi 한올아카데미 = Hanul Publishing www.hanulbooks.co.kr
- Hyumönisüt'ŭ 휴머니스트 = Humanist www.humanistbooks.com
- Chimundang 지문당 = Jimundang Publishing www.jimoon.co.kr
- Kukhak Charyowön 국학자료원 = Kookhak www.kookhak.co.kr
- Kŭlnurim/Yöngnak 글누림/역락 = Geulnurim Publishing www.geulnurim.co.kr
- Kyöngin Munhwasa 경인문화사 = Kyungin Publishing kyungin.mkstudy.com
- Minsogwön 민속원 = Misokwon www.minsokwon.com
- Minŭmsa 민음사 minumsa.com
- Munhak kwa Chisöngsa 문학과지성사 = Munji Publishing moonji.com
- Munhak Tongne 문학동네 = Munhakdongne Publishing www.munhak.com
- Pagijöng 박이정 = Pagijong Press eng.pjbook.com
- Pogosa 보고사 = Bogosa Publishing www.bogosabooks.co.kr
- Sönin 선인 = Sunin Book www.suninbook.com
- T'aehaksa 태학사 = Taehaksa www.thaehaksa.com
- Yöksa Pip'yöngsa 역사비평사 = Yukbi www.yukbi.com
- As well as many university presses' catalogs:
 - Ihwa Yöja Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu 이화여자대학교출판부 = Ewha Womans University Press www.ewhapress.com

- Koryŏ Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu 고려대학교출판부 = Korea University Press
www.kupress.com
- Kyemyŏng Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu 계명대학교출판부 = Keimyung University
Press kmupress.com
- Kyŏngbuk Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu 경북대학교출판부 = Kyungpook National
University Press knupress.com
- Sŏnggyun'gwan Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu 성균관대학교출판부 = Sungkyunkwan
University Publishing Department press.skku.edu
- Sŏul Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'an Munhwawŏn 서울대학교출판문화원 = Seoul
National University Press www.snupress.com
- Yŏnse Taehakkyo Taehak Ch'ulp'an Munhwawŏn 연세대학교 대학출판문화원
= Yonsei University Press www4.yonsei.ac.kr/press

Here is a list of several publishers which publish English language materials related to Korean Studies:

- Brill www.brill.com
- Jimundang Publishing www.jimoon.co.kr
- Palgrave Macmillan www.palgrave.com
- Random House www.randomhouse.com
- Routledge www.routledge.com
- Rowman & Littlefield Publishing rowman.com/RLPublishers
- Seoul Selection www.seoulselection.com/publishing

In addition, the following university presses in North America frequently publish quality English language materials on Korean Studies:

- Columbia University Press cup.columbia.edu
- Cornell East Asia Series eap.einaudi.cornell.edu/publications_ceas
- Duke University Press www.dukeupress.edu
- Harvard East Asian Monographs www.hup.harvard.edu/collection.php?recid=195
- Oxford University Press global.oup.com
- Stanford University Press www.sup.org
- University of California, Berkeley's Institute of East Asian Studies ieas.berkeley.edu/publications/catalogue_krm.html
- University of Hawai'i Press www.uhpress.hawaii.edu

-- Bibliographies

Bibliographies include records for materials of all genres (books, journals, articles, working papers, conference proceedings, dissertations and theses, technical reports, etc.). Bibliographies may be useful in the selection and acquisition of new materials. They may inform one of developments in the field, and may serve as reference sources.

Here is a select list of bibliographies:

- *Chǒngbu kanhaengmul mongnok* 정부간행물목록 [Government publications in Korea], Seoul: Kongboch'ŏ Chǒngbu Kanhaengmul Chejakso, 1961-2002.
- *Chǒnggi kanhaengmul hyǒnhwang: tǔngnok illamp'yo* 정기간행물현황: 등록일람표 [List of registered periodicals], Seoul: Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism, 2002-.
- *Nappon chubo* 납분주보 [Korean National Bibliography Weekly], Seoul, National Library of Korea, 2004-. www.nl.go.kr/nl/napbon/list.jsp.

In addition, the National Library of Korea's *dlibrary* provides highlights of government publications newly deposited to the National Library in the following website: policy.dlibrary.net/boards/show/410/1232/0.do.

2.2.4.5 Serials

-- Electronic Resources

To maximize availability and accessibility (simultaneous use by multiple individuals, remote, 24-7 access, and search capabilities), today electronic format generally regarded to be the preferred format for all material types over traditional formats, provided the platform, cost and licensing conditions are acceptable.

In addition to the guidelines of the Criteria for Selection of Serials given above, a number of other sources may also be consulted to identify electronic resources of potential use:

- Database listings of other East Asian/Asian libraries at universities in the United States and Canada
- Minutes, trial pages and reviews of other university libraries' collection development committees
- Consortia's reviews and listings

- Mailing lists (e.g., Eastlib, Tomeri 도메리 = Domeri Library Mailing List, koreanStudies: Moderated Korean Studies Internet Discussion List)
- Meeting with vendors, or visiting vendors' booths at a conference (e.g., Association for Asian Studies Annual Meeting & Exhibit, Korean Library Association General Conference)
- Requesting a trial service from vendors and then evaluating these products by working with faculty and graduate students
- Enquiring with the Task Force on Korean Studies E-Resources of the Committee on Korean Materials, Council on East Asian Libraries, Association of Asian Studies), or posting a question to the Ask a Korean Studies Librarian! Service askkorea@googlegroups.com.

The following South Korean database vendors provide electronic resources on Korean Studies:

- Chininjin 진인진 = Zininzin www.zininzin.co.kr
- Haksul Chŏnja Ch'ulp'an Hyŏptong Chohap 학술전자출판협동조합 [Korean e- = Acadepedia, Academic Ebook Corporation www.blog.daum.net/adadepia]
- Haksul Kyoyugwŏn 학술교육원 www.earticle.net
- Han'guk Haksul Chŏngbo 한국학술정보 = Korean Studies Information Publishers Cooperative www.kstudy.com
- K'oria K'ont'enč'ŭ Raep 코리아콘텐츠랩 = Korea Contents Lab www.kclab.com
- Kyobo Mun'go 교보문고 = Kyobo Book Center www.kyobobook.co.kr
- Roaenbi 로앤비 = LawnB www.lawnb.com
- Nuri Midiŏ 누리미디어 = Nurimedia www.nurimedia.co.kr
- Tongbang Midiŏ 동방미디어 = DongBang Media www.dbmedia.co.kr

Further details on each vendor and their products and services will be dealt with in greater detail in another chapter of this handbook.

Technology is constantly improving for e-resources of all types, and librarians need to keep themselves informed about available options. To be responsive to their community of users, Korean Studies librarians will have to provide e-books and other resources in appropriate packages.

-- Media Materials

Thanks to technological advancement, use of audiovisual materials as a teaching aid has increased in recent years. This also applies to the fields of Korean Studies: Korean history, anthropology, language, and literature. Due to the popularity of Korean contemporary and pop culture, use of audiovisual materials has increased significantly.

Here is a list of select websites providing information on Korean films and dramas:

- e-yōngsang yōksagwan e-영상역사관 [e-Museum of the moving image] = film.ktv.go.kr
- Han'guk yōnghwa teit'ōbeisū 한국영화데이터베이스 = Korean Movie Database KMDb www.kmdb.or.kr
- Han'guk Yōngsang Charyowōn 한국영상자료원 = Korean Film Archive www.koreafilm.or.kr
- Koreanfilm.org koreanfilm.org
- Ssine21 씨네 21 = Cine21 www.cine21.com

Here is a list of select websites providing information on Korean music:

- Han'guk chōnt'ong sori munhwa 한국전통소리문화 = Traditional Korean Music portal koreamusic.org
- Kungnip Kugagwōn 국립국악원 = National Gugak Center www.gugak.go.kr
- Kungnip Kugagwōn Kugak Ak'aibū 국립국악원 국악아카이브 = National Gugak Center Gugak Archives archive.gugak.go.kr
- maniadb www.maniadb.com

2.2.4.6 Cooperative Collection Development

Cooperative collection development is “the sharing of responsibilities among two or more libraries for the process of acquiring materials, developing collections, managing the growth and maintenance of collections in a user-beneficial and cost-beneficial way.” (Branin, *Collection Management: A New Treatise*, 1991, 82).

As academic libraries recognize their responsibility to respond to the research needs of faculty and provide access to specialized information sources, libraries often participate in and encourage cooperative collection development with other libraries.

Established in 1994 under the sponsorship of the Korea Foundation, the 14-member Korean Collections Consortium of North America is one of the most successful examples of such cooperative collection development in North America. Each member library is responsible for development of in-depth collections in its assigned fields of Korean Studies, and Consortium materials are loaned free of charge to any Korean Studies scholar or student anywhere in North America (Korean Collections Consortium of North America).

In view of growing financial constraints and increasing subscription costs, the Korean Studies librarian should investigate opportunities for participating in cooperative collection development in all formats, especially for electronic resources.

2.2.4.7 Managing a Budget

The Korean Studies librarian has an overall duty to monitor and expend his or her budget. Specific responsibilities encompass spending within budget allocation; transferring funds to cover new serials, negotiating cooperative funding with other subject librarians or selectors for expensive, interdisciplinary items, and meeting any spending targets and deadlines within a fiscal year.

When managing a collection budget, the Korean Studies librarian should try to align cost with value in order to provide access across campus to the information resources needed by his or her institution's faculty and students in the field of Korean Studies. With the rapidly increasing cost of academic books, journals, electronic databases, and other resources, and often without added funding to cover these increases, the collection budget must be carefully targeted toward the most essential materials. The following factors form the basis of budget management in order to meet this goal:

- curriculum
- circulation of materials by subject area
- number of courses on Korea
- number of faculty teaching Korea-related or interdisciplinary courses
- number of students majoring in Korean Studies or enrolled in a course on Korea
- faculty publications
- consortia plans

When managing one's budget, it is recommended that orders be placed early enough during the fiscal year so that shipments from Korea or other East Asian regions (e.g., China or Japan) will arrive before the fiscal year end.

Budgets often tend to fluctuate with the economic times. Reviewing a current fiscal year's budget for the Korean collection and planning and projecting budgets for the next and upcoming years are an important routine to follow. In this way, one may better accommodate and serve one's users' needs. Furthermore, with a well-formulated plan and projection, one can make an adequate request for any budget increase in a logical manner and be efficiently prepared for any future changes or new developments.

2.2.4.8 Managing Collections

To maintain a healthy and responsive Korea Studies collection, it should be managed through constant evaluation to ensure its usefulness and relevance to its user groups, and to meet the library's mandate.

-- Weeding and Storage

Weeding/de-selection and transfer to storage are critical collection management activities. Through periodic weeding, obsolescent, damaged, ephemeral materials which are no longer within the scope of the collection or no longer used can be identified and withdrawn or transferred as appropriate.

By performing weeding, one can

- optimize the use of shelf space
- utilize acquisitions funds in the most effective manner
- maintain the collection in accordance with the users' needs.

Materials weeded may be used for gifts and exchange (e.g., local communities, libraries or organizations in Korea), or discarded, and this decision is discretionary. The following criteria are generally considered in the weeding of library materials:

- past usage statistics
- value for historical research
- redundancy (copies or editions)
- accuracy & timeliness of information
- physical condition

Today, in most collections, items that are kept in off-site storage can be retrieved within 24 to 48 hours, upon completing a request online. Recently, remote storage has become a cost effective option for many institutions as they seek to create more space for new acquisitions and the development of collaborative and technologically enhanced learning environments.

-- Serial Cancellation

With the ongoing annual fee hikes in periodical subscription rates, deciding on cancellations has become a routine part of collection management. Korean serials are no exception. It is recommended for a librarian to go through a consultation process with faculty when canceling serials in order to identify the highest priorities for collection. Other typical criteria for retaining print subscriptions instead of moving to electronic-only are suggested as follows (Johnson 2004, 175):

- user preference
- content
- subscription model
- current availability
- cooperative resource sharing
- consortial commitment

Furthermore, migrating print subscription to electronic only or print plus online may be an effective approach in serial cancellation projects.

-- Preservation

Routine preservation activities are essential to prevent, eliminate, or retard deterioration of library resources, and of rare or brittle materials in particular. This practice helps to identify deteriorating library materials that should be preserved (physically or digitally) and evaluate materials for limited access because their condition, value, or demand require special protection.

The author believes that collection development is the most enjoyable job one can have in a library. Especially in the case where a small institution grows into something larger, like an undeveloped child growing up into an adult, it is a process of aiding and fostering. No matter what kind of place, it is the librarian's enthusiasm and effort that will transform the collection into the most beneficial environment for research for that university's library users.

Bibliography

Branin, Joseph J. "Cooperative Collection Development." In *Collection Management: A New Treatise*, edited by Charles B. Osburn and Ross Atkinson, 82. Greenwich, Conn.: JAI Press, 1991.

Colgate University Libraries, "Serials collection development policy,"

<http://www.lib.odu.edu/aboutthelibraries/policiesprocedures/collectiondevelopment/collectioncriteria.htm> (cited January 10, 2014).

Gardner, Richard K. *Library collections: their origins, selection, and development*. New York: McGraw Hill, 1981.

Han'guk Kukche Kyoryu Chaedan. 한국국제교류재단 = Korea Foundation. *Haeoe Han'gukhak paeksŏ hŏwŏ Han'gukhak paeksŏ* [Overseas Korean Studies Whitepaper]. Seoul: Ŭryu munhwasa, 2007.

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions, Section on Acquisition and Collection Development, "Guidelines for a collection development policy Using the conspectus model," <http://archive.ifla.org/VII/s14/nd1/gcdp-e.pdf> (cited January 9, 2014).

Johns, Cecily. *Selection of Library Materials for Area Studies*. Chicago: American Library Association, 1990.

Johnson, Peggy. *Fundamentals of collection development & management*. Chicago: American Library Association, 2004.

Kennedy, Michael D. "A Manifesto (of sorts) for Area Studies". *The Journal of the International Institute*. Volume 4, Issue 3, Summer 1997.

<http://hdl.handle.net/2027/spo.4750978.0004.302> (cited February 18, 2014).

Korean Collections Consortium of North America, "Overview,"

<http://koreancollections.org/about.html> (cited March 31, 2014).

Karlsson, Anders. 2003. *Kukche wisang ŭl nop'yo kanŭn Rŏndŏndae SOAS esŏi Han'gukhak* 국제적위상을높여가는런던대 SOAS 에서의 한국학 [Raising international

prestige at the prestige at the University of London SOAS's Korean Studies program].
<http://www.krf.or.kr/html/newsletter/2003-12-0404.html> (cited January 1, 2014).

Misco, Masha. 2011. Disciplinary Points of Departure: How Area Studies Librarians Fit Within the Subject Paradigm. *College & Undergraduate Libraries* 18 (4), 385-390.
<http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/10691316.2011.624951> (cited January 2, 2014).

Schmid, Andre. "Korean Studies in Canada." *K'aenada nonch'ong 캐나다논총* = Korean Review of Canadian Studies 12 (2): 45-63.

Tsien, Tsuen-hsui. "First Chinese-American Exchange of Publications," *Harvard Journal of Asiatic Studies*, 25 (1964-65): 19-30.

Tsien, T. "East Asian collections in America." In *Area studies and the library*, edited by T. Tsien and H. Winger, 58-80. Chicago: The University of Chicago Press. 1966.

2.3. Producers and Distributors of Korean Language Materials

By Jaeyong Chang³

2.3.1 Background

For over a century, the Korean peninsula and its peoples have experienced a tragic legacy of international circumstance. It experienced the Russo-Japanese War on the Korean peninsula (1904-1905), Japanese colonial rule for thirty-six years (1910-1945), and the Korean War (1950-1953). Now the Korean peninsula maintains a cease-fire, not an end to the war, being the last area left in the world which is divided into two parts. After Korea opened its doors to foreign powers around the turn of the last century, the Korean peninsula became a bone of contention among major foreign powers such as China, Japan, Russia, and the United States.

Korean emigration took place against this historical background. Although the Korean diaspora began forming from around the late nineteenth and early twentieth century, the numbers were initially insignificant. However, during the Japanese colonial period 1910-1945, a sizeable number of Korean workers were forced to leave their homeland under colonial rule. Thus, others emigrated to other destinations. Most settled in the United States, Japan, China and Russia. As for China and Russia, ethnic Koreans are particularly concentrated in the cities such as Shenyang and Yanji in Northeast China, and Tashkent in Uzbekistan and Almaty in Kazakhstan (in the former Soviet territory of present day Central Asia).

2.3.2 Publishing in Korea

From the perspective of collection development with regard to Korean language materials, the producers and distributors of Korean language materials have an indispensable relationship with Korean history and diaspora. Around the globe, the indisputable major loci of the productions of Korean language materials are South Korea and North Korea, the two

³ Librarian for the Korean Collection and Interim Head, Collection Services, C.V. Starr East Asian Library, University of California Berkeley

countries that use Korean as their native language. South Korea publishes a great deal more than does North Korea. Due to North Korea's political peculiarity, the materials produced in North Korea can be classified into two kinds: one for domestic use and the other for international distribution. It is only the latter that can be legally acquired in North America. Worse yet, since the North Korean economic crisis of the 1990s, the volume of publications intended for dissemination abroad had markedly shrunk, so that, at present, it does not amount to even ten percent of the total volume of materials produced in South Korea.

2.3.3 Publication of Korean Materials in Other Countries

China is the country that produces the most Korean language materials outside of the Korean Peninsula. In the past, most Korean language material was produced where most Korean-Chinese people lived, in the three provinces of northeastern China, Jilin, Liaoning and Heilongjiang, especially Yanbian Chaoxianzu Zizhizhou in Jilin Province. Since the beginning of China's open-door policy and development of Sino-Korean economic exchange after the normalization of relations between China and South Korea in 1992, the ethnic Koreans (Chosŏnjok; 조선족), who formerly took residence in the northeastern provinces, began to migrate to Beijing, Tianjin, and the northeastern coastal areas—such as Qingdao and Yantai—centered around Shandong province. Consequently, the regions mentioned above have now also begun to produce Korean language materials. In addition to indigenous ethnic Koreans, other major producers of Korean language material since 1992 have been new immigrants (holders of Korean passports), who migrated from South Korea to Chinese metropolises for economic reasons.

In addition to the Korean peninsula and China, Korean language materials are being generated in Canada, the United States of America, Japan, Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, and other parts of former Soviet Central Asia that have dense ethnic Korean populations. Yet, the aggregate volume of materials supplied from all of these places is relatively small. By contrast, since the establishment of the People's Republic of China in 1949, the Chinese government, with the proclaimed objective to protect the identity of ethnic minorities has been encouraging the ethnic Koreans to use the Korean language in China. However, the outmigration of ethnic Koreans from northeastern China has led to a significantly diminished amount of Korean language materials generated from this area when compared to the past. It is likely that this phenomenon will only be accelerated in the future.

2.3.4 Vendors in South Korea

Distribution of monographs and periodicals is the most active in South Korea, as it is the supreme site of production with the most producers of materials. In comparison to vendors that have the capacity to supply Chinese and Japanese language materials to North America (such as China International Book Trading Corporation and China National Publications Import & Export Corporation in China and Kinokuniya Book Store in Japan), companies supplying Korean materials in North America are very limited, as the current demand for Korean language materials in North America is also rather small. At present, the North American market for Korean language materials relies on a number of small-sized vendors which are unable to provide systematic and comprehensive services generally afforded only by bigger companies. For this reason, ready-shelf service of Korean language materials is not yet available in North America.

In the experience of the author, Panmun Co. Ltd. (주식회사 판문) has consistently provided high quality service in distributing Korean language materials. The author especially appreciates Panmun's ability to locate and provide hard-to-find not-for-sale material. There are currently several other vendors in South Korea that export Korean language materials: Asea Munhwasa (아세아문화사), Eulyoo Munhwasa (을유문화사) and Kyungin Munhwasa (경인문화사).

As for pricing, it is difficult to ascertain in concrete terms, for there are issues of frequent shifts in foreign currency exchange rates, shipping methods, and numerable other variables. Nonetheless, in the experience of the author, the general prices for one volume of a scholarly book would increase in the following order: Kyungin Munhwasa (being the least expensive), Asea Munhwasa, Panmun Co. Ltd., and Eulyoo Munhwasa (being the most expensive). All four major companies have their own websites, and although some of them allow customers to place order online, online purchasing is still an inconvenient process. Moreover, the websites are not designed to be accessible for non-Korean speakers. The web addresses are as follows:

Panmun Co. Ltd.: <http://epanmun.co.kr/>

Asea Munhwasa: <http://www.acp21.co.kr/>

Eulyoo Munhwasa: <http://www.eulyoo.co.kr/>

Kyungin Munhwasa: <http://kyungin.mkstudy.com/>

2.3.5 Vendors of North Korean Materials

Because it is impossible for South Korea to import materials from North Korea, North Korean materials generally have to be imported via China or Japan. Vendors in South Korea that are currently carrying out such business are Nambook Kyoyuk (남북교역) (<http://nambook.co.kr>) and Asia Journal (아시아저널) (<http://asiajournal.co.kr>). Due to the tenuous political relations between South and North Korea, in order to distribute North Korean materials, a special license from the South Korean government must be obtained. In addition, North Korean materials are not available for individual researchers, and only a few special libraries holding the special government license can purchase them. For these reasons, North Korean printed materials that are sold by the two companies are very limited in variety and number, and the prices are higher than for the same materials sold by Beijing Sunyoung Scientific Technology Trade Co., Ltd., (베이징선영) (<http://www.korea-publ.com/>) located in Beijing, China. In fact, it is through Sunyoung that Nambook Kyoyuk receives North Korean materials. Asia Journal acquires the materials through personal connections in China and businesses in Japan.

Sunyoung is currently the biggest distributor of North Korean materials in the world. It provides various materials such as monographs and periodicals, DVDs, CDs, VHS movies, stamps, postcards, and works of art. Sunyoung is now working with North Korea's Chosŏn Sahoe Kwahagwŏn (조선사회과학원) to publish a 1,500 multi-volume set of "Chosŏn sahoe kwahak haksuljip," (조선사회과학학술집) and as of April 2014, 300 volumes have been published and are being sold. Sunyoung boasts of its high credibility because it not only distributes North Korean materials to individual institutions, libraries, and vendors in China, but also provides materials to libraries in South Korea, Japan, Europe and North America. It is said that this company negotiated an official MOU contract with an organization under the North Korean government, Chosŏn Ch'ulp'anmul Such'uripsa (조선출판물수출입사), and therefore has exclusive rights to North Korean materials. However, the biggest problem in dealing with Sunyoung is that, unlike the situation with the South Korean vendors, it is difficult to communicate with Sunyoung. Because Sunyoung and its consumers communicate mainly via email, Sunyoung lacks an understanding of North American institutions, including academic libraries. Therefore, it is unlikely that Sunyoung can provide additional services such as blanket order, standing order or donation materials shipping service that South Korean vendors offer. In addition, when communicating with Sunyoung, using Chinese is more efficient than communicating in Korean or English.

2.3.6 Vendors of Korean Materials from China

Whereas Sunyoung is in charge of distributing most materials directly from North Korea, Korean materials created in China by ethnic Koreans (Chosŏnjok; 조선족) are mainly provided by Xinhua Bookstores, which are located in four major cities in Northeast China: Shenyang, Changchun, Mudanjiang, and Yanji. Particularly the Xinhua Bookstore located in the Koreatown of Shenyang, Liaoning Province, has been critical for the export of Korean monographs, periodicals and newspapers published in China. The success of small bookstores in these areas that exported materials to North American institutions and libraries, with their strict business practices, comes thanks to Ch'oe Kwang-uk (최광욱). He is the director of Xinhua Bookstore in Shenyang, and has been working solely in this business for over twenty years. However, he will retire in the next one to two years, and after his retirement, there is no guarantee that Xinhua Bookstore will be able to continue its export business. Korean materials can be also purchased through big companies such as China International Book Trading Corporation, Beijing Rentian Bookstore Co., and China National Publications Import & Export Corporation, but there is an obvious difference between Xinhua Bookstore and the big vendors in terms of price.

2.3.7 Vendors of Korean Materials from Japan

In Japan, as I had pointed out before, Korean materials produced there are very scarce in number. The General Association of Korean Residents in Japan (Chae Ilbon Chosŏnin Ch'ong Yŏnhaphoe, 재일본조선인총연합회) was founded in 1955 under the North Korean government's support, and publishes a bilingual newspaper, Chosŏn Sinbo (조선신보) (<http://chosonsinbo.com/>) which is written in both Korean and Japanese. It also produces various printed propaganda materials for North Korea. Additionally, it established its sub-organization, Kuwŏl Sŏbang (구월서방), and exported its published works until it was merged with Chosŏn Sinbosa in 1994. Today, the first floor of Chosŏn Sinbosa's building in Tokyo has a bookstore and it sells Korean materials produced in both Japan and North Korea. Besides Chosŏn Sinbosa, there are two other vendors which distribute Korean language materials in Japan: Rainbow Trading Co. (<http://www.rainbowtrading.co.jp/>) and Okura Info Service (<http://www.e-okura.co.jp/>). In the past, these two companies only dealt with North Korean materials, but today they also sell South Korean materials to North America. The companies target institutions within Japan as their main customers.

2.3.8 Korean Materials Published in the USA

There are also few Korean language materials produced by Korean-Americans in the United States. Metropolitan areas with high Korean-American population, such as Los Angeles, San Francisco, Chicago, New York and Washington D.C., are the major centers of production. However, materials produced in these areas are often histories of local Korean-American communities or local Korean churches. These communities also tend to publish poetry anthologies, novels and essays composed by the members of Korean-American literature associations, which have a small membership circle. The publications usually come in the format of periodicals or monographs, and the issues of such publications are not always regular. Unlike in the past, however, even these kinds of Korean language materials are now also being printed in South Korea, making it difficult to simply categorize them as products generated purely by Korean-Americans in the United States.

Within the States, the majority of vendors distributing materials in Korean are local bookstores run as small business establishments. The books they sell tend to be concentrated in popular or religious genres, rather than those of scholarly interests. Therefore, it seems that they have sporadic business dealings with local libraries, rather than supplying professional scholarly materials that satisfy the demand of research institutions and university libraries.

In accord with the advancement of IT technology, online bookstores have recently begun to make their appearance as well. The companies worth noting among them are Aladin US (알라딘 유에스) (<http://us.aladin.co.kr/>), which sells all monographs and DVD-formatted movies released from South Korea, and Yesasia (www.yesasia.com), which handles multimedia materials produced not only in Korea, but also in China and Japan. One notable feature of these companies is that small-quantity orders placed through them can be convenient, but as the cost is generally higher than the normal pricing in South Korea, it would be unsuitable to use them to make large-quantity purchases on a regular basis. Aside from the two companies mentioned above, there was an LA-based vendor named Korean Trading Co. (Koryŏ Muyŏk, 고려무역) that sold materials from North Korea over for thirty years, but it has recently closed.

2.3.9 Korean Materials from the Former USSR

In the territory of the former USSR, especially Tashkent in Uzbekistan and Almaty in Kazakhstan, Korean language materials generated by ethnic Koreans in these areas (*a.k.a.* Koryŏin 고려인) are almost nonexistent. This situation can be explained as a result of the policy of the former Soviet government in 1937 that forced ethnic Koreans residing in Primorsky Krai (Vladivostok and Khabarovsk) at the time to migrate to Central Asia. During this time period, most of the Korean language materials produced by ethnic Koreans was lost. Nevertheless, the materials stored in local universities and research institutions survived. Since the forced migration to Central Asia, use of Korean language was prohibited, creating conditions that rendered the production of Korean language materials in the region almost impossible, and this condition persisted for a long time to the present day. (But we do have a small number of books still preserved that were published in Korean between the 1950s and 1980s by Moscow's Oegungmun Sŏjŏk Ch'ulp'ansa (외국문서적출판사) and Ppŏroguresŭ Ch'ulp'ansa (쁘로그레스출판사). Written on the history of Soviet Communist Party or on communist party local policy, these texts were to serve as aids to Korean-Russians who are illiterate in Russian.) After the forced migration until the 1980s, Sasusŭi Ch'ulpansa (사수식출판사) in Almaty, Kazakhstan had printed literature-oriented published materials in Korean, but it is estimated that this publishing house produced less than fifty titles in all. Aside from the aforementioned establishments, Koryŏ Ilbo (고려일보) is publishing bilingual newspapers in Korean and Russian to this day.

Since the disintegration of the USSR in 1991, this area also saw an increase in the use of the Korean language because of the many new immigrants from South Korea who came with economic motives. Materials in Korean are now being generated for this portion of the population. Due to such historical and social circumstances discussed so far, sales for materials in Korean had not really taken place in the former USSR territory. Consequently the only way to purchase Korean language materials published prior to the 1990s was through the means of utilizing personal connections with local researchers in the field of Korean studies.

2.3.10 Conclusions

In the final analysis, it is clear that the amount of Korean language materials produced outside of the Korean Peninsula is small and appears to be declining. In fact, even the extant materials are in a danger of disappearing, or are already in the process of disappearing. There are a few researchers focusing their studies on the production and distributions of materials written in Korean language around world, but there is still no one forming a comprehensive collection of such materials. After all, a task of this breadth cannot be undertaken by a single individual researcher. Acknowledging such circumstances, this paper calls for the attention of the National Library of Korea and the National Assembly Library in South Korea to recognize the worrisome and problematic state of present affairs sooner rather than later, and realize the necessity to collect unique and endangered materials. Finally, the author of this section must admit that this brief text is too numerous in its inadequacies, and therefore promises a deeper, more refined research article in the very near future.

2.4. Acquisitions: Approval Plan

By Youngsim Leigh⁴

An approval plan is a contractual arrangement between a library and a supplier (or a publisher, or a wholesaler) who can accept the responsibility for selecting and supplying current publications based upon selection guidelines (or collection profiles) established by the library. A library's selection guidelines (collection profiles) can be specified in terms of subjects, levels, formats, prices, languages, publisher, or other criteria. Unlike a blanket order, approval plans include return privileges for materials which do not satisfy a library's specific collection needs. Materials can be selected by the supplier alone, or the selection efforts can be coordinated between the book supplier and librarians if the quality of materials is a major concern in implementing an approval plan.

Although approval plans are generally utilized by libraries with larger budgets, a library of any size and budget can make more effective use of its acquisitions programs with carefully written selection guidelines. Particularly, small libraries where there are no Korean studies librarians or specialists can make efficient use of an approval plan. The only current drawback for implementing an approval plan for Korean materials is that only 1 or 2 suppliers have experience handling an approval plan with libraries outside of Korea.

2.4.1 Major Characteristics of an Approval Plan

1. Generally, a single supplier is selected to ensure efficiency. It is easier to avoid duplication, maintain consistent service, and save effort on additional training. However, if a library elects to use more than one approval plan supplier, the library does have to make sure to allocate coverage to avoid duplications across subjects, format, languages, or publishers.
2. The book supplier is pre-authorized to make selections of newly published materials that conform to the set of selection guidelines (or collection profiles) prepared by the library.
3. Selections by the supplier can be supplemented by librarians' selections. Librarian involvement in selecting materials will tend to reduce concerns about

⁴ Librarian, Asian and Middle Eastern Division, Library of Congress

the quality of materials being acquired on an approval plan. The suppliers can keep track of their selections as distinguished from the librarian selections.

4. A library has a return privilege specified in the contractual agreement for materials which do not meet the library's collection needs.
5. Approval plans are renewed on a fiscal year basis, with a specified amount of funding.
6. Suppliers can be evaluated and selected either through an informal review process or a formal bidding process, on a regular basis.
7. Sample issues of new serials can be requested as part of the approval plan.

2.4.2 Benefits of Implementing an Approval Plan

1. Saving time: effective use of library staff and specialists' time will be the most significant benefit.
 - 1.1. Librarians or specialists can be freed from recommending and ordering easily identifiable mainstream publications and publishers, and devote themselves to focusing on materials that are harder to find, smaller publishers, and other more specialized research materials. Also, a library with a limited number of Korean librarians or no Korean language expertise can take advantage of appropriate approval plan suppliers.
 - 1.2. Invoice payment can be streamlined by paying for the bulk of purchased materials at one time.
 - 1.3. Standing orders for monographic series or incomplete multi-part sets can be placed on the approval plan fund, with the supplier authorized to send each new part as it is published. This will not only save time, but also serve to prevent duplicated orders.
 - 1.4. Routine workflow procedures and knowledge of the library's needs result in reduction of supplier training and feedback time.

2. Return privileges: a percentage of supplier selections specified in the agreement can be returned without prior approval. Items specifically requested by the librarians can generally be returned only with the supplier's permission. The suppliers can issue credits for returned materials that can be used in partial payment for invoices on hand.
3. Additional services: It is easier to request useful additional services from approval plan suppliers. Such services include:
 - 3.1. Additional customized supplier recommendation lists focused on specific subject areas or topics
 - 3.2. The monitoring of duplicated orders
 - 3.3. The monitoring of expenditure of funds
 - 3.4. Bibliographic records for the materials acquired by the library and shelf-ready services
4. Discounted book prices or shipping costs.

2.4.3 Disadvantages of an Approval Plan

1. The materials selected by the approval plan suppliers generally need to be reviewed by the librarians or subject experts, and the librarians do need to prepare written selection guidelines (or collection profiles) and provide feedback on the supplier's material selections on a regular basis.
2. The services of approval plan suppliers have to be repeatedly evaluated on a regular basis.
3. Occasional acceptance of materials subject matters which are out-of-scope or duplicated materials.

2.4.4 Approval Plan Suppliers in Korea

As of today, only two of the major South Korean suppliers, Eulyoo Publishing Co. Ltd. and Panmun Co. Ltd., are known to have had experience with libraries outside of Korea, supplying materials on an approval plan basis.

-- Selecting Materials

Generally, these suppliers have not been employing specific subject experts, but they have enough knowledge and experience with various levels of Korean publications and publishing communities to select materials to meet basic libraries' collection needs, when following well prepared selection guidelines. If the quality of materials is a major concern in implementing the approval plan, librarians can modify the traditional approval plan workflows, and they can review suppliers' book lists or publishers' catalogs in advance and preselect titles before suppliers send materials. Libraries can also communicate with suppliers on a regular basis to tailor minor adjustments to meet libraries' needs. The suppliers are very cooperative in general with modifications to workflow or selection requirements.

-- Processing Materials

1. Ordering: Most of the ordering process is done by email. The suppliers cited have not yet implemented a streamlined automated system or a website from which a librarian can select and order titles directly.
2. Shipping: Materials are generally sent by the most economical shipping method, which is surface mail, and it usually takes 1-2 months to receive materials in the US. However, "rush" materials can be delivered via special express mail as needed.
3. Accuracy: Accuracy of invoices and other related documentation are generally dependable.
4. Duplication check: Suppliers search libraries' OPAC, and they maintain a list of titles that they have supplied for each customer. The duplication checks are generally reliable, unless a library receives materials from multiple sources.

5. Bibliographic records and shelf-ready services: Suppliers can provide minimum level bibliographic records for the materials they supply either by sending MARC format files, Excel spreadsheets to convert to MARC records, or cataloging directly in OCLC. Providing full level bibliographic records is currently something of a challenge for Korean suppliers. Since none of the Korean suppliers are OCLC members yet, the library has to establish a third party agreement including supplier and OCLC if it wants the supplier to create the minimum level cataloging records in OCLC in place of the library. Also, the suppliers can provide a partial barcode labeling or binding services.

-- Customer Services

1. The suppliers are prompt in responding to requests, questions, or price queries. They are generally efficient with customer service, and prompt processing of ordered materials.
2. The suppliers provide careful maintenance of acquisition related documents and monitoring the expenditure of funds. For example, they can provide copies of well documented statements of accounts on a regular basis so that it is easier and saves time for a library to be fiscally responsible.
3. The suppliers have been willing to learn and keep up with new systems, although one supplier may maintain a slightly better acquisitions processing related system than others, where the customers can check the status of their orders in the web, FTP MARC records files, EDI the invoice processing, etc. However, the systems they have developed are not off the shelf or standardized systems that can help a library to streamline selection and ordering processes, or create biographic records. There are a number of areas that need to be improved.
4. The suppliers are willing to provide the service of working as a mediator for gifts or exchange materials and shipping the materials for libraries when Korean institutions, universities, or individuals cannot themselves ship directly for various reasons.

-- Book Prices and Other Related Matters

The formula for pricing books varies depending on the approval plan suppliers. A specific supplier might apply 10-20% higher to the marked book price as a part of the handling service. Others might surcharge book prices with manipulated flat currency rates, or shipping and handling costs. However, they might apply a 10-20% discount to the marked book price for multi-volume sets. Such conditions must be clarified before agreeing to the contract.

2.4.5 Documents Needed for Contracting the Approval Plan

Well written contractual documents help to ensure acquisition of better quality materials, and to guarantee that acquisition related business transactions will be processed more efficiently. These documents are: A Letter of Agreement, Selection Guidelines (or Collection Profiles), and Business Guidelines.

-- A Letter of Agreement

A Letter of Agreement for an approval plan is a legal document of agreement between a library and a material supplier which specifies the duration of contract, budget, and obligations. The letter should contain the following basic information:

1. Both parties' addresses.
2. Contractual period: note duration of contractual agreement, e.g. from beginning of fiscal year to end of fiscal year.
3. Brief collection scope: include a brief description of the types of materials or geographic areas, e.g., South Korean or Science and Technology materials published by the Republic of Korea, or materials published in or about the Kyongsang area, or materials published by only specific publishers.
4. Authorized budget amount for the supplier to spend within the contractual period. Minimum and maximum amounts can be noted so that the library can be flexible in case of budget fluctuations during the period of contractual agreement.
5. Both parties' signatures and dates.

(See the attached modified example used at the Library of Congress #1)

-- Selection Guidelines (or Collection Profiles)

Selection Guidelines (or Collection Profiles) specify in detail to guide what types of materials a supplier should supply on the approval plan fund and to place limitations on the supplier. The following points should be described in detail.

1. Publication coverage date and copy: Generally, the supplier should select one copy of new books published during the current year, but the publication time frame can be modified depending on the library's needs, e.g., within 5 years.
2. Specifications: Provide limitations on certain categories of materials. Materials requiring librarian permission before supplying materials are: expensive items, non-book materials, non-commercial items which have the potential to be acquired as gift or exchange, popular subjects, self-published works, special formats, translated items or out-of-scope materials as specified by the collection development policy.
3. List all the subject categories in detail. Materials needed by the library should conform to the library's collection development policy, but should be described in a manner that makes it easier for suppliers to identify the materials they need to supply.
4. Indicate specific formats, languages, areas, publishers or publications to include or not to include.
5. Guidelines for suppliers concerning what to supply and what not to.
6. What to do with editions, including unrevised editions, and how many copies to supply. Indicate how to supply multi-part items or monographs in series.

(See the attached modified example used at the Library of Congress #2)

-- Business Guidelines

Business guidelines describe in detail all business related transaction matters concerning how the budget should be used, what types of publications the suppliers should send, return privileges for the materials not wanted by a library, procedures on claim and cancellation, instructions on packing, shipping, credit, and invoicing, and legal restrictions, such as prohibiting the suppliers from using the library for their commercial gain in advertising.

1. Budget: Make sure that the amount authorized for the supplier to spend covers both the cost of publications selected by them and by the library. Also, the supplier should be fiscally responsible for sending materials within a budget limit. The supplier monitors the expenditure of the budget on a regular basis and informs the library when the authorized amount is not sufficient or approaching the total allowance before the end of the fiscal year.
2. Statements of Account: request the statements of account on a regular basis (monthly or quarterly). Each statement should include, at a minimum: 1) invoice or credit note number, 2) invoice or credit note date, 3) amount billed or credited on each invoice or credit note, 4) total statement balance, 5) identify invoice payments that are fulfilled or overdue.
3. Instructions on supplying publications: Instruct that all publications are to be sent on approval. Titles that the library approves and accepts will be purchased by the library. Also, the library may return up to a certain percentage of items shipped if the amount authorized for the fiscal year without prior permission includes any duplicate or unwanted publications selected by the supplier (e.g.: 5% of the total budget) The supplier should be required to inform the library when they cannot supply specific materials requested by the library, such as out-of-print or unavailable items. Also, they should not send any materials that the library already has in its collection.
4. Duration of the agreement: The agreement should cover the current fiscal year only, subject to annual renewal. It may also be terminated by either party after 30 days notice to the other party. The renewals of the agreement should take the form of an updated version of a Letter of Agreement that accompanies the approval plan.
5. Claim and cancellation notices: The library can send the supplier approval plan claims. The library should also define when an order is considered as cancelled if the supplier cannot supply the materials wanted by the library. The supplier can offer later to supply the materials when they are available so that the library can reconsider ordering items again.
6. The contact information: Inform where and to whom to report all supplier reports, offers, and other correspondence concerning the agreement, invoices, credit invoices, selection slips, or recommendation lists, etc.

7. **Packing and Shipping Instructions:** Instruct the supplier to pack materials in strong, protective, waterproof containers that do not exceed 30-50 pounds. Secure the containers with strong tape or strapping. Provide the address to ship by the most cost effective means. The library will pay all regular shipping costs, except for damaged or lost publications. Since the supplier bears the risk of possible loss of material sent on approval under applicable U.S. law, they should be encouraged to insure each container at their own expense.
8. **Invoice Instructions:** Provide instruction on preferred invoice format, what information is needed, how they should invoice, how many copies should be provided, and where they should send. It is more convenient to process invoices if they are converted to US dollars. If it is charged in Korean currency, the exchange rate for the currency should be effective by the time the payment or check is issued. Korean suppliers generally charge in US dollars, but the methodology for the currency conversion process is not consistent among Korean suppliers. It needs to be negotiated and confirmed how the materials are to be charged before the final agreement is reached. It should be made clear that the library cannot pay for bank charges, taxes, or for currency conversions, nor compensate suppliers for fluctuations in the exchange rate.

(See the attached modified example used at the Library of Congress #3)

2.4.6 Criteria for Selecting Suppliers

The following criteria can be considered to evaluate materials suppliers should be able to:

1. Select high quality research value materials by following the library's selection guidelines or collection profiles, and provide various auxiliary materials (e.g. online databases, publishers' catalogs, or lists) to librarians. Respond to additional requests when needed, such as out-of- print materials, providing extra information, lists, or catalogs of publications on specific topics.
2. Undertake standard business transactions efficiently. For example, ensuring accuracy of invoices, shipping materials according to the business guidelines, monitoring expenditures of funds provided, communicating business related matters in a timely manner, etc.

3. Maintain their own system and database efficiently to keep track of book titles, ordered materials, accurate account statements and budget expenditures.
4. Keep an updated information system to be able to provide bibliographic records in standard format, to implement electronic data interchange for payments, and place orders online.
5. Maintain excellent searching skills to keep track of ordered materials within their own information system and also be able to search the library's OPAC so that the duplicated materials are not sent.
6. Provide other ancillary services. For example, the ability to provide cataloging records, shelf-ready or binding services; to provide additional lists of recommendations; to provide material in e-book format.

Although there are choices of multiple suppliers who have been exporting Korean publications outside of Korea, only a few suppliers have sufficient experience in handling approval plans that one can compare and choose from. Choices of suppliers for North Korean materials are especially limited.

Ultimately, we select a supplier who can meet our needs best, maximizing the services that the supplier can provide, operating within the constraints of our necessarily limited resources.

References

- Broadbent, J., Jenkins, B., Mwalilino, V. ABA Workflow and Procedures Documentation: Approval Plan Overview. 2008: Acquisitions & Bibliographic Access Directorate, Library of Congress.
- Library of Congress Authorization Letter (dealer selection)
- Library of Congress Selection Guidelines
- Library of Congress Approval Plan Business Guidelines

2.4.7 Appendixes

<Appendix 1. Sample General Approval Plan Authorization Letter>

Libraries Name and Logo

Subject: GENERAL APPROVAL PLAN AUTHORIZATION FOR FISCAL YEAR YYYY
Period: MM DD YYYY through MM DD YYYY
Scope: [COUNTRY/REGION]
Minimum: [\$X,XXX]
Maximum: [\$XXX,XXX]

[VENDOR NAME AND ADDRESS]

[Library name] hereby authorizes the renewal of the GENERAL APPROVAL PLAN with your firm for the fiscal year beginning on MMDDYYYY and ending on MMDDYYYY in the following assigned area: [XXXXX - enter Country or countries or region].

Under this approval plan, you are authorized to supply at least [\$X,XXX] worth of materials and no more than [\$XXX,XXX].

Federal regulations [or other regulations] governing the use of funds may require some changes in the terms of our approval plans. You will be advised of any changes in advance.

Please select books for us according to the [LIBRARY NAME] Selection Guidelines at attachment A. Terms and conditions of this approval plan are described in the [LIBRARY NAME] Business Guidelines at attachment B.

To indicate your receipt of this approval plan and your acceptance of its terms, please sign and date this page and return it to us as soon as possible by airmail or electronically.

Sincerely yours,

[Title]

Date: _____

VENDOR ACCEPTANCE SIGNATURE

Name and Title (*please print*)

Date: _____

Signature

Attachment A – [Library’s name] Approval Plan Selection Guidelines

Attachment B – [Library’s name] Approval Plan Business Guidelines

<Appendix 2. Sample Approval Plan Selection Guidelines>

[LIBRARY NAME]

Approval Plan Selection Guidelines

Dates Covered

This approval plan covers books published within the past six years only. Normally, you should select new books published during the current year. You may select older books published within the six year limit, especially if they are just now coming to your attention; however, do not select books published in any year that you did not service this approval plan.

Editions

Always supply the original edition, whether in hardcover or paperback.

Monographs in Series

Do not select monographs that are part of a series on this approval plan if the library has placed a subscription order for that series with your firm.

Multipart Items

Although you may select complete multipart items, do not select separately published volumes in incomplete sets, the volumes of which will be published over a number of years. If the Library wants to purchase such sets, we shall place approval plan continuation orders for them.

Number of Copies

Supply only one copy of each appropriate publication whether it is selected by you or ordered by us. If we want to order more than one copy of a publication, we shall place firm orders for the additional copies.

Publishers

Select publications of research value produced by all commercial publishers, including university presses, except for any which may be excluded in the accompanying Special Instructions.

Publications and Subjects to Be Selected

Select all appropriate publications and subjects as provided in the outline below, and supply them as soon as possible upon publication without further authorization from us. This outline

is meant as a guide for selection. It gives you examples of the types of publications and subjects in which we are interested, but it is not all-inclusive.

- Select publications written by authors from your assigned area that contain new information, research or analysis, especially about topics related to your area.
- Select only the most authoritative or influential publications written by authors from your area on topics that deal with other areas
- Avoid repetitive or derivative publications and popular treatments written for the layman or student.

Agriculture

Select works on the social, cultural, economic, historical, and political aspects of agriculture, including such topics as sustainable agriculture, biodiversity, and agrarian reform. Do **not** select books on *technical* agriculture, including the cultivation of crops and animal husbandry.

Anthropology

Select works on anthropology, ethnology, and archaeology, including theoretical treatises and reports of fieldwork. Also select works on folklore, customs, and fashion.

Art

Select books and exhibition catalogs produced by both commercial and non-commercial publishers except for any that are excluded in the accompanying **Special Instructions**, in these art subjects:

- Archaeology
- architecture (including gardens, landscape architecture, and urbanism)
- decorative arts (including ceramics, glass, mosaics, furniture, metalwork, textiles, and costume)
- drawing, painting, and sculpture
- graphic arts (including prints, posters, manuscript illumination, illustration, graphic design, propaganda, and such graphic humor and satire as cartoons and caricatures)
- photography
- works on the study of art (including art documentation and picture research)
- iconography
- technical analysis
- conservation
- preservation
- art history and historiography
- art criticism
- museums and museology
- patronage and collecting
- private collections

- art sales and sales indexes
- world's fairs and international expositions.

Do **not** select manuals and advice to amateurs, especially in the graphic arts and photography, and **do not** select comic books. Do **not** select books of reproductions of well-known and widely reproduced artistic works.

Cooking

Select only the most authoritative books on cooking and gastronomy, especially those of reference value. Select cookbooks that deal with the cuisine from your area only, including major regional cuisines.

Do **not** select books about dieting.

Economics

Select works on the history of business, commerce, and economics on:

- all sectors of the economy, including the productive sector (farming, manufacturing) and the service sector (finance, insurance, markets)
- economic infrastructure (transportation, communications, banking)
- important businesses
- business and labor organizations
- government economic institutions
- government economic policy and planning, including consumer affairs, domestic subsidies, housing, foreign trade, labor relations, population policies, occupational health and safety and other regulations
- nationalization and privatization
- public finance, taxation, and urban planning

Select only original and authoritative works on other regional economies, the global economy, and theoretical topics such as economic theory, econometrics, marketing, management, etc.

Education

Select works on new teaching methods, curricula, the history of education, and important educational institutions.

Do **not** select schoolbooks, textbooks, planning or teaching manuals, curriculum outlines, tests and aids for passing examinations, correspondence courses, college catalogs, and do-it-yourself books. Do **not** select dissertations on any topics covered by this approval plan unless they are commercially published.

Film, radio, and television

Select books about the history, technology, and criticism of film, radio, television, and journalism, including print journalism. Select works about important personalities (actors, directors, journalists, producers, writers, etc.) and about important films, documentaries, television programs, series and genres.

Do **not** select program schedules or popular books written for fans.

Geography

Select works on geography, including its physical, economic, cultural, social, and historical aspects; on environmental issues, including technologies for monitoring the environment such as remote sensing, geographic information systems, and photogrammetry. Select works on topography and cartography. Select atlases, but **not** maps.

History

Select works about history of all periods, current events, and area and regional studies. Select works on the theory and methodology of history, and related fields such as heraldry, philately and numismatics. Select works on family history and genealogy published by commercial publishers and by genealogical societies, except for any that may be excluded in the accompanying Special Instructions. Select histories of cities, towns, and regions.

Do **not** select histories of local groups such as companies, banks, societies, cooperatives, labor organizations, churches, and schools which have limited nationwide significance.

Library science

Select works on libraries and archives, library and information science, bibliography, the book arts, the book trade, printing, and publishing.

Linguistics

Select works on language, dialects, and slang. Select authoritative works on aspects of grammar. Select descriptive and theoretical works on linguistics, including semiotics and artificial languages. Select works on language education, issues, and policy, especially with regard to minority languages. Select works on the history and development of language, particularly as it differs in usage from one country to another.

Literature

Select works on literary and dramatic history, theory, and criticism. Select significant essays, novels, plays, poetry, and short stories issued by prominent publishers or written by outstanding authors (e.g., those who have won awards or who have been favorably reviewed

by reputable critics). With regard to selecting plays, concentrate on plays that have been staged, emphasizing production in major theaters.

Do **not** select best sellers unless they have literary merit.

Do **not** select mass market fiction and romantic novels.

Children's literature

Select a representative sample (about 20) of the best new titles of literature for children of all ages, including all books that win prestigious awards. Select works that reflect current publishing trends, highlight the diversity of design and illustration, and reveal new interpretations of social and political themes.

Do **not** select reprints or translations of the classics.

Science fiction

Select a representative sample (about 10) of the best new examples of award winning science fiction and fantasy.

Medicine and health

Select books on the social, cultural, economic, historical, and political aspects of medicine. Also select books on public health and sanitation. Do **not** select books on veterinary medicine or on clinical medicine, including works on medical practice, techniques, and technology.

Military and naval science

Select works on military and naval forces, including history and customs, doctrine, force structure, strategy and tactics, defense conversion, and the political and social role of the armed forces.

Performing arts

Select works of research value on music, theater, and dance, including exhibition catalogs, published correspondence, substantive books about instructional methods, and books about production aspects of the theater, including acting, costume, direction, lighting, producing, and scenery. Do **not** select music scores or sound recordings.

Periodicals

Select one sample issue, preferably the first issue, of each newly published serial, annual, and periodical publication on all topics covered by this approval plan. It is important that you indicate SAMPLE COPY on the issue itself and on your invoice. If we wish to receive further issues, we will send you a subscription order.

Philosophy

Select works on philosophy, the history of philosophy, logic, speculative philosophy (including metaphysics, epistemology, methodology, ontology), aesthetics, ethics (including

ethical systems and the study and teaching of ethics), epistemology, and the philosophies of the various disciplines or branches of knowledge. Emphasize philosophers from your area and schools of thought that originated or prevail in your area.

Politics and government

Select works on political history, theory, and practice; on government administration, organization, and institutions; on political parties, their history and organization; on international relations, comparative politics, policy studies, and peace studies.

Psychology

Select works on psychology and books about psychologists of international renown. Do **not** select books on clinical psychology (including psychotherapy) or books that are exclusively or primarily devoted to the treatment of alcoholism, drug abuse, and other addictions.

Reference works

Select bibliographies, individual biographies and biographical reference books, dictionaries (but not pocket dictionaries), directories, encyclopedias, and statistical works on all topics that are covered by this approval plan. Also select reference works intended for use by professional practitioners (e.g., managers, accountants, scientists, scholars, writers).

Religion

Select works on theology and mythology, atheism and agnosticism, major religions and sects, the history of religious groups, the influence of religion, and government policy towards religion. Select critical editions of and commentaries on sacred books. Also select significant translations of those books into the language(s) of your area.

Do **not** select ephemeral materials, including tracts and evangelical treatises and inspirational, evangelical, or devotional literature.

Science and mathematics

Select works that contain *new knowledge or theories* developed or discovered by scientists in your area in mathematics and all branches of science, especially in the natural sciences relating to your area's flora, fauna, climate, and geology, including volcanology, seismology, and paleontology, etc. Select works on the philosophy and history of science, scientific theory and method, and governmental scientific policy.

Do **not** select works, particularly in mathematics and the physical sciences, at a level that would be treated uniformly in all countries and languages.

Sociology

Select theoretical and descriptive works dealing with society, the community, and the family in both rural and urban areas. Select works on criminology, penology, juvenile delinquency, and welfare. Select works on the status of racial, ethnic, religious, linguistic, and political

minorities. Select only the most authoritative works on etiquette, sexual mores, childcare, and home economics particularly if such works represent a new or different approach to traditional customs or attitudes.

Sports

Select only the most authoritative books on sports, especially those of reference value or those that serve to illustrate social and cultural aspects. Do **not** select books on physical fitness or popular works written for fans.

Technology

Select works in technological subjects such as aeronautics, manufacturing, and related fields. Also select works on infrastructure, including roads, ports, bridges, and telecommunications. Select works on the history of technology and on technology transfer. Do **not** select technical reports, standards and norms, individual patents or specifications, computer programming guides, maintenance manuals, and telephone directories.

Travel

Select only the most authoritative books on travel and tourism, especially those of reference value. Select travel guides at the national level unless they are published as periodicals. Select travel guides at the provincial and local levels only if they do not duplicate information contained in the national guides. Do **not** select books with little or no text that consist primarily of postcards or photographs of scenery or places to visit.

Women's studies

Select works on feminism, the women's movement, women's studies, the histories of major women's organizations, and the changing role of women in society.

Publications and Subjects To Be Excluded

Please **do not** select the materials described below. Supply excluded materials only if they are ordered by the Library and our approval plan orders bear the notation, NOTWITHSTANDING RESTRICTIONS. If they do not, please return them to us with your report and await our instructions.

If you are uncertain whether to supply a particular item, or if you would like to draw our attention to an excluded item that you think we should order, please offer it to us in writing or write an X next to its citation in any of the bibliographies, selection slips, or lists that you send for our review.

Books published outside of your country or countries

If a book names several cities of publication on the title page, supply it only if the primary place of publication (i.e., the one named first or otherwise distinguished by typography) is located in your country. Do **not** select any book that is also published or was once published in the United States or that is available from an exclusive distributor in the United States. If the Library wants to acquire such items, we shall first try to obtain them via copyright or purchase them from a domestic source.

Expensive publications

Do **not** select monographs complete in a single volume that cost more than \$500.00 or complete multi-part monograph sets that cost more than \$1,000.00 unless otherwise instructed.

Law

The Library's requirements for legal materials are provided for in a separate approval plan. Therefore, do **not** supply any legal materials on this account.

Non-book materials

Do **not** select audio cassettes, compact discs, phonograph records and tapes; filmstrips, motion pictures, slides, video cassettes; machine readable formats (e.g. CD-ROM, diskettes, databases on diskettes, computer programs); manuscripts; maps; or microforms. If the Library wants to purchase such items, we shall place firm orders or subscription orders for them, as appropriate. However, you may select books that are supplemented or complemented by such materials.

Non-commercial publications

Do **not** select publications or documents issued by the following non-commercial publishers, including those issued in cooperation with a commercial publisher, except as provided for in the Special Instructions:

- Local, provincial, national, or international governmental organizations
- Learned or professional societies and associations
- Universities and other educational institutions
- International organizations
- Banks, businesses, foundations, clubs, labor organizations, and political parties.

If the Library wants to acquire such items, we usually try to obtain them via exchange or gift.

Popular subjects

Do **not** select books on hobbies, pets, gardening, sex, pornography, success, careers, astrology, personal finances, coloring books, and self-help works.

Self-published works and vanity press publications

Do **not** select books published by firms that specialize in producing books at the author's expense and risk or books that are self-published. If the Library wants to acquire self-published items, we usually try to obtain them as gifts. This exclusion does not apply to small presses owned by private individuals or groups which publish only those works selected by their editors for their literary or bibliographical merit.

Special formats

Do **not** select pamphlets (i.e., books with fewer than 50 pages), large print books or miniature books (i.e., books less than 10 centimeters in height). Do **not** select loose-leaf publications. If the Library wants to purchase such updatable items, we shall place subscription orders for them.

Translations

Do **not** select translations except into English. If a book is published simultaneously in several editions by language, one of which is English, supply the English edition only. Otherwise, supply the edition in the major language spoken in the country of publication.

Unrevised editions

Do **not** select unrevised, reprinted, or facsimile editions of previously published works, unless they are accompanied by substantive new commentary or critical introductions. Do **not** select offprints and extracts of articles from journals and books.

<Appendix 3. Sample Approval Plan Business Guidelines>

Approval Plan Business Guidelines

General Conditions of This Order

Our budget

The amount you are authorized to spend is intended to cover both the cost of publications selected by you and the cost of the titles that we specifically request that you send us. If you determine that the amount we have authorized this year is not sufficient to supply publications based on our specifications or if you find before the end of the fiscal year that the cumulative cost of the material you have sent is approaching the total amount, please send us your estimate of the increase necessary as soon as possible, and we shall send you further instructions.

Publications are sent on approval

All publications are sent on approval. Titles that we approve and accept will be purchased by the library. The library may return without prior permission any duplicate or unwanted publications selected by you up to a total value of [5]% of the amount authorized for the fiscal year. Under applicable U.S. law, the vendor bears the risk of the possible loss of material sent on approval.

No assignment of this account number is allowed

Do not permit another supplier to send material quoting this account number. If you cannot obtain the material and ship it to us yourself, please inform us, and we shall order it directly from the supplier.

Duration of this agreement

This agreement covers the current fiscal year only, but is subject to annual renewal. It may also be terminated by either party after [30] days notice of termination to the other party. Our renewals of this agreement will take the form of an updated version of the letter of agreement that accompanies this approval plan.

Claims

We may send you approval plan claims. Please report on the status of these items (e.g., out-of-print, unavailable, not-yet-published) but do not send duplicates.

Your Correspondence

Address all dealer reports, offers, selection lists and other correspondence concerning this agreement to:

[ADDRESS]

Packing and Shipping Instructions

Packing

Pack materials in strong, protective, waterproof containers that do not exceed 50 pounds or 23 kilograms in weight. Secure the containers with strong tape or strapping. Accurately and plainly write your name and address on each container and address it to:

[ADDRESS]

Shipping

Send containers to the above address by the most cost effective means. Do not use a method of shipping that will incur customs charges.

Transportation costs

[LIBRARY NAME] will pay all regular transportation charges except when damaged publications are sent.

Insurance

[LIBRARY NAME] is not responsible for the loss or damage of publications while in transit and cannot reimburse you for the cost of insurance. Therefore, you are advised to insure each container for its full value at your own expense.

Invoice Instructions

To help us pay you promptly, please observe the following instructions carefully.

Separate invoices for different types of orders

Provide separate invoices for general and law approval plan materials. (If you also supply [LIBRARY NAME] with publications on firm orders and subscription orders, please provide separate invoices for these types of materials as well). If you handle more than one of our approval plans, please prepare separate invoices for publications supplied on each account, and, if possible, prepare separate invoices for your selections and for our approval plan orders. Please cite titles in alphabetical order.

Account or order number

Cite your account number on all invoices which list your selections. (Your account number appears on the letter of agreement you received from us.) Cite our approval plan order numbers on all invoices which list our orders. If you did not receive an approval plan order number from us, cite your account number instead.

Original invoice and copies

Prepare an original invoice and send it electronically to [EMAIL ADDRESS]. Or you may send your original invoice by airmail to:

[ADDRESS]

If you send the invoice electronically, DO NOT send a duplicate by airmail. Please choose one method or the other. This e-mail address is ONLY for invoices and credits. All other correspondence and statements should be sent directly to [OFFICE NAME] that manages your approval plan.

On your invoice, please also provide the shipping address that is cited in the Packing and Shipping Instructions above. This information will help [OFFICE NAME] direct your invoice to the section which is responsible for paying it.

Include a copy of the invoice in the package of books. Attach the second copy of the invoice to the outside of the package in an envelope labeled "INVOICE." This copy is for Customs. If it is missing, Customs will have to open the package.

One invoice per package

Please prepare one or more invoices per package rather than one invoice that covers several packages. Because the packages may not all arrive at the same time, this procedure will help us expedite your payments.

Charges for publications

List and identify as completely as possible each publication for which you claim payment and indicate its price. The cost of each item supplied should be as low as or lower than the cost charged to your most favored customer for comparable quantities under similar conditions.

Shipping charges

Please list shipping as a separate item on your approval plan invoices. If you must bill this charge separately, prepare a shipping invoice and identify the approval plan invoices to which it pertains. Attach a receipt for freight charges in excess of US\$50.

Currency of invoice and payment

Payment of your invoice will be made within 90 days of our receipt and acceptance of the material and invoice. You may bill in US\$. If your invoice is billing in a foreign currency, we will pay you in US\$ at the exchange rate in effect at the date of payment unless your invoice specifically instructs us to pay you in the foreign currency. We cannot reimburse you for bank charges or currency conversion charges.

Prompt payment

Payments will be made within 90 days of receipt and acceptance of the material and invoice.

Credits

If issuing a credit to the Library, please indicate the reason the credit was issued and cite the original invoice number to which the credit applies. Send the credit note electronically to [EMAIL ADDRESS]. Or you may send the credit note by airmail to:

[ADDRESS]

If you send the credit note electronically, DO NOT send a duplicate by airmail. Please choose one method or the other. This e-mail address is ONLY for invoices and credits. All other correspondence and statements should be sent directly to [OFFICE NAME] that manages your approval plan.

Statements of Accounts

Prepare quarterly statements of accounts listing invoices and credits issued to the library during the annual authorization period. Quarterly statements cover the following periods: [October 1 to December 31; January 1 to March 31; April 1 to June 30; and July 1 to September 30]. Each statement should include, at minimum: a) invoice or credit note number, b) invoice or credit note date, c) amount billed or credited on each invoice or credit note, d) total statement balance. Identify invoice payments that are fulfilled or overdue. All statements should be sent directly to [OFFICE NAME] that manages your approval plan.

Use of [LIBRARY NAME] Name in Advertising

The vendor agrees not to refer to awards from, purchases from or Agreements with [LIBRARY NAME] in commercial advertising in such a manner as to state or imply that the product or service provided is preferred by [LIBRARY NAME] or is superior to other products or services. The vendor also agrees not to distribute or release any information that states or implies that [LIBRARY NAME] endorses, uses, or distributes the vendor's products or services.

2.5. Acquisitions: Firm Orders

By Mikyung Kang⁵

The term ‘Firm order’ in library acquisitions usually refers to an order that is determined by title specifically, and orders placed for books or other items that are usually received and paid for one time only. Under this definition, firm orders are not made for approval plan material, blanket orders, standing orders, and/or subscriptions. In this chapter, firm orders include the following:

- one-time orders
- single-volume titles
- multi-volume sets when all volumes are expected to be received in one shipment

In general, firm ordering is the preferred method for acquisitions of Korean materials by the majority of overseas academic libraries than approval plans or blanket orders. One primary reason for using firm ordering is due to the current limited availability of approval plan services for Korean materials from the two Koreas and other East Asian countries.

Basically, the firm order process for Korean materials is not much different from firm ordering in mainstream acquisitions of Western language materials through relatively large scale vendors in the West, the main differences being limited data loading services and longer delivery time for international shipments.

The firm ordering process of Korean materials follows these general steps:

2.5.1 Selecting Materials

Bibliographers select Korean materials based on library users’ research interests and needs within each library’s collection development policy. For effective ways of handling the selection process, publication lists in Excel are often used by bibliographers in firm ordering, since at present no Korean book vendors have online interfaces designed for libraries’ direct firm ordering of Korean materials (e.g. YBP’s Gobi). However, Excel

⁵ Librarian for the Korean Collection, Harvard-Yenching Library, Harvard University

files are a basic and convenient tool for vendor communications and delivery of groups of selected titles by batch via email.

Machine-generated order email messages can be sent to book vendors title by title through a local library system if the system is set to send orders out by email. This method is rarely used for Korean materials due to the high risk of potential email loss.

When selecting titles of Korean materials, bibliographers use many tools to look for new and/or old titles available on the market, and the following are a few examples of effective tools:

2.5.2 New Publication Lists from Korean book Vendors

Currently, the following Korean book vendors provide Excel lists of new publications on a regular basis:

-- Materials from South Korea

1. Panmun Co., Ltd. (Pömmun Haksul Chöngbo, 범문 학술정보):

Provides a list on a weekly basis via email and print mailing once a month; the list contains information in Korean scripts and romanization of author, title, publication information, series title, ISBN, number of pages, price, and subject of each item.

2. Eulyoo Publishing Co., Ltd. (Üryu Munhwasa, 을유문화사):

Provides a list on a bi-weekly basis via email; the list contains Korean scripts and romanization of author, title, publication information, series title, ISBN, number of pages, price, and publishing date; divided by subject in each tab.

3. The Asian Culture Press (Asia Munhwasa, 아세아 문화사):

Provides a list on a bi-weekly basis via email; the list contains subject, title, author, publication information, ISBN, price, and series title in Korean scripts.

-- Materials from North Korea

1. Hong Longji (Beijing Sunyoung Scientific Technology Trade Co., Ltd.):

Provides new publication lists in Excel by requests via email; the list contains subject, title, author, price in euros, and publication information in Korean scripts.

2. Rainbow:

Provides available publication lists irregularly in text via e-mail.

2.5.3 Online Bookstore Lists

A few Korean online bookstores provide a function to generate selected titles in Excel for registered users. This is quite a useful tool for title selections, since online bookstore sites provide table of contents, book reviews, book jacket images, subject categories, detailed publication information, preview pages, etc. for each title. The following online bookstores provide the function to generate selected titles in Excel, so that the lists can be easily utilized for firm ordering:

1. Kyobo Mun'go **교보문고** <<http://kyobobook.co.kr/>>: Registration required to save selected items into 'Pogwanham 보관함' and to generate an Excel file of the selections; Excel lists contain basic publication information including author, title, series title, ISBN, format, date, page, price, subject, etc.
2. Aladin **알라딘** <<http://aladin.co.kr/>>: Registration required to save selected items into 'Pogwanham 보관함' and to generate an Excel file of the selections; the list contains basic publication information including author, title, series title, ISBN, format, date, number of pages, price, subject, etc.

2.5.4 Ordering

-- Selection of suppliers/vendors

Appendixes I-III show the vendor lists for Korean materials. Korean materials are published mainly in South Korea and North Korea, but also in China, Japan, North America, etc. as well. Appendix I is a list of the vendors which supply South Korean materials, while Appendix II is for North Korean materials. As listed in Appendix III, these online bookstores designed specifically for customers in the US are quite useful for rush orders for libraries in North America, since domestic delivery time is usually less than a week or so.

Korean language publications from China and Japan can be ordered through established vendors in China and Japan for Chinese and Japanese materials, in general, but the active vendors are selectively listed in Appendix II.

There are many local Korean bookstores in the Los Angeles, New York, and Chicago areas which cater to large Korean-American populations. Some of the local bookstores also supply Korean materials to academic and public libraries nearby. Those bookstores are not listed in this chapter.

The quality of service provided by each vendor listed in Appendix I-III can be addressed by experienced librarians in the Korean Studies field individually. The vendors listed in Appendix I-III have many years of experience in exporting books overseas, so they are well-versed in regards to shipping and invoicing for overseas libraries. The information is based on responses from the vendors through email surveys in March 2014.

-- Bibliographic record creation

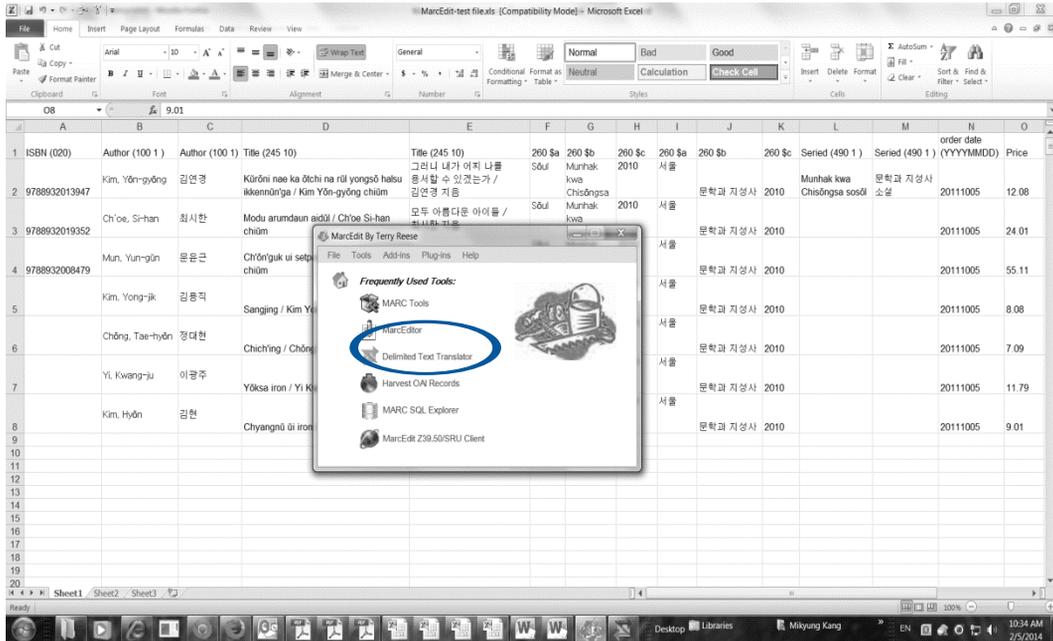
In general, a preliminary bibliographic record is created for each ordered title in library systems as a first technical step. Bibliographic records can be generated manually by a staff member title by title, and if any existing OCLC records are found, they can be utilized for ordering after exporting.

If no MARC records are available to use for firm ordering, an Excel list can be converted into MARC using MarcEdit.

Converting a selected publication list in Excel into a MARC file

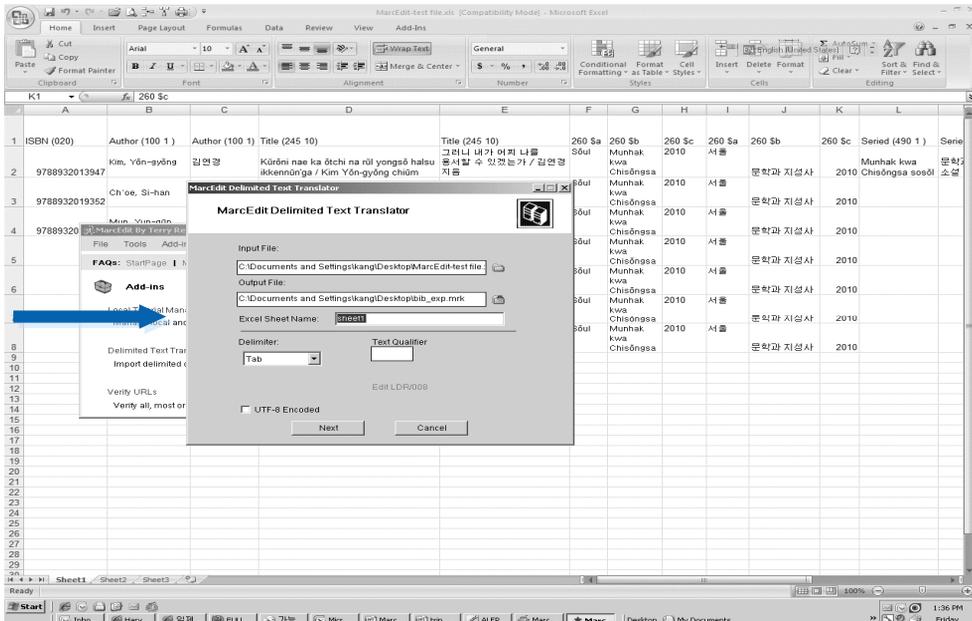
MarcEdit is a free software application that is downloadable from the following site: <http://marcedit.reeset.net/downloads>. It is possible to convert Excel files with publication information into MARC files, upload them into the library system, and use them when ordering. The following step-by-step instruction shows how to convert a publication list in Excel into a MARC file by using MarcEdit:

1. Download MarcEdit version 5.9 from the following site:
<http://marcedit.reeset.net/downloads>
2. Prepare an Excel list following the template format
[Note: Excel template and .mrd file (mapping template) should be matched]
3. Click '**Delimited Text Translator**' after opening MarcEdit



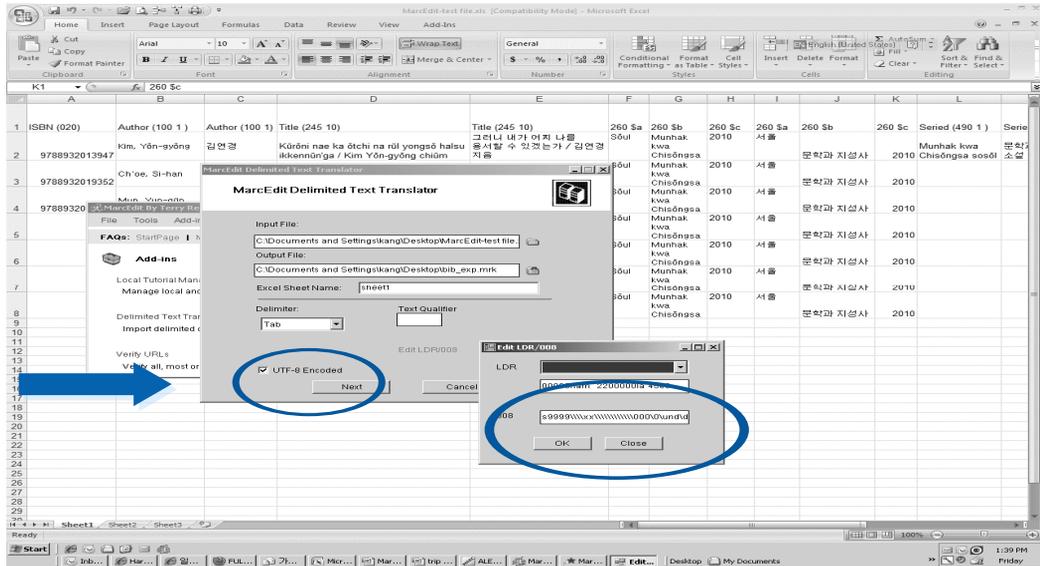
4. Input file: Excel template; Outfile: .mrk file

5. Excel sheet name: Sheet1



6. Edit fixed field: Change encoding level I to 5; '45e0' to 4500; date to 2011; country to ko; language to kor (note: somehow, one cannot save this fixed field setting as default, so one has to make these changes every time one converts)

7. Click “UTF-8 Encoded”



8. Load template: **.mrd** file (this mapping template can be edited and re-saved according to the Excel template; both format should be matched in order to create a MARC record)

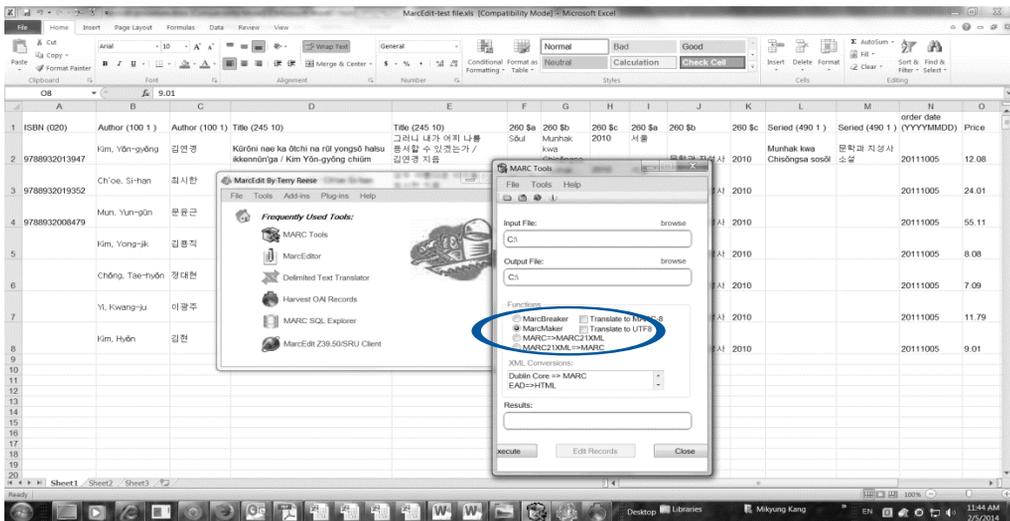
9. After loading template, click ‘finish’.

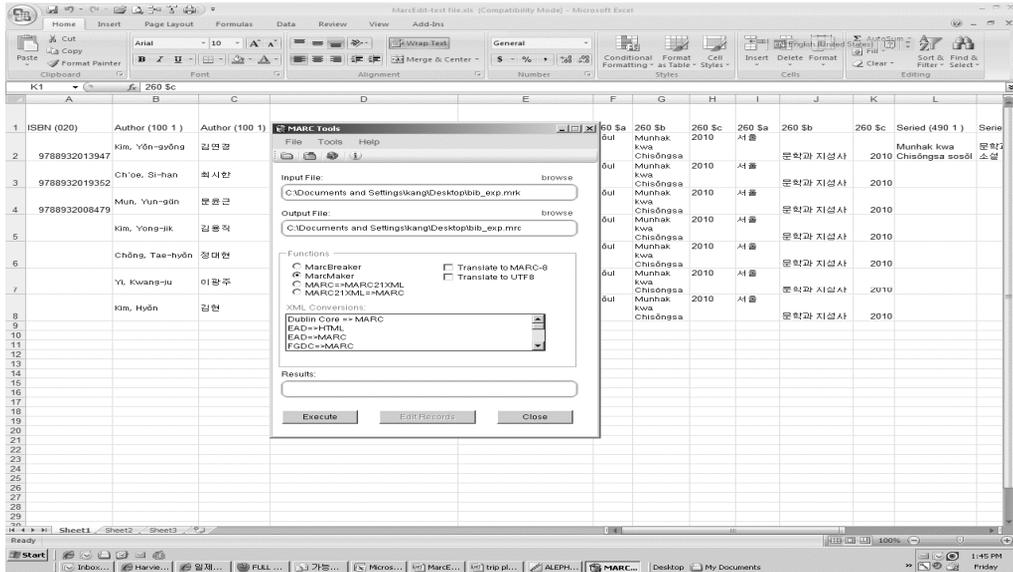
10. Click ‘MARC tools’ and then click ‘MarcMaker’

11. Input file: **.mrk**

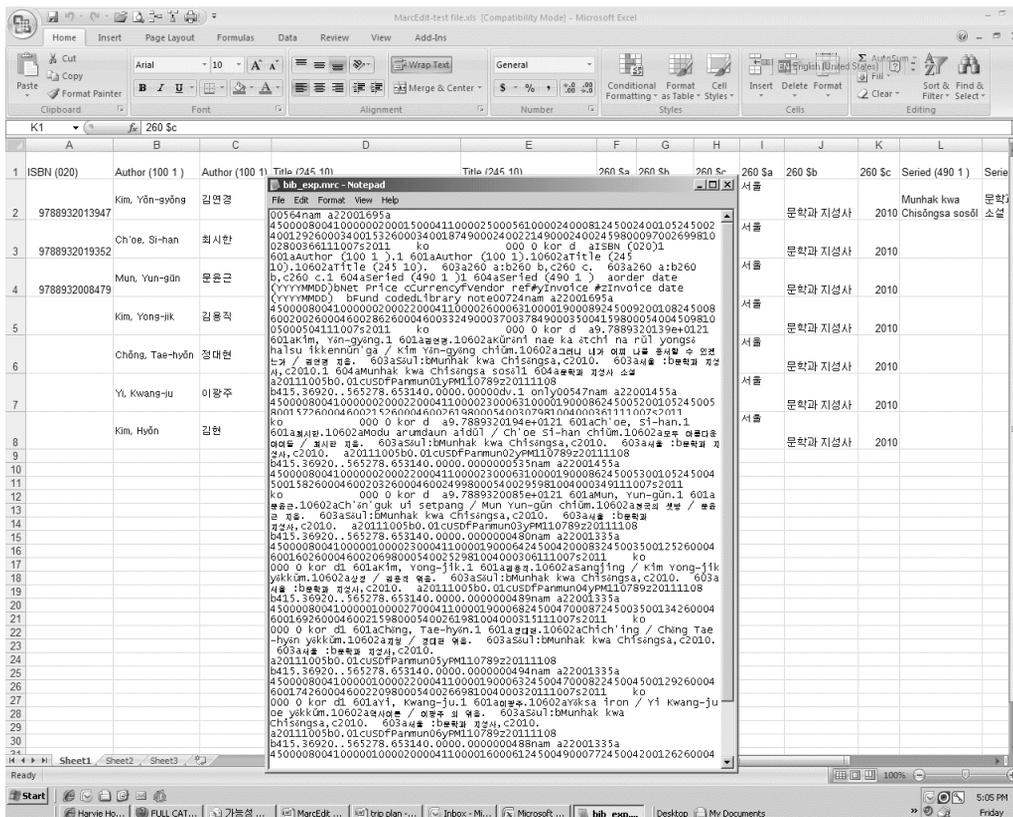
12. Output file: **.mrc**

13. Click ‘Excute’





A sample .mrc file (MARC) looks like this in the NotePad:



The MARC file can be imported into the library system using a batch loading process. Usually, the MARC record import function is found in the Cataloging Client, but some libraries need to go through their system's permission process to set up the import function, depending on each library's policy.

Advantages of this conversion process are as follows:

- Time effectiveness in batch processing of bibliographic record creation
- Readiness of selected titles with romanization in Excel templates which is provided by some vendors

Disadvantages of this conversion process are as follows:

- Need to set up the import function in the local library system (Cataloging client) for importing MARC files created through MarcEdit
- Simplified MARC fields and tags
- No details in MARC
- No flexibility in 1xx, 24x fields,
- Creation of the 100 field by default for any types of authors
- .mrd files (mapping template for conversion processing) should be identified separately for each format (book, DVD, etc.)

2.5.5 Data Loading Services

Currently, a few Korean book vendors are able to provide MARC files for firm orders. MARC files can be sent to the library system by FTP, and configured into the local system. The following records can be loaded into the library system through the data loading services by the vendor: bibliographic record, holding record, item record, order record, and invoice record with line items.

Through the data loading services, data from the vendor record is mapped to a library system, and when mapping, defined fields and tags may be all different depending each local library system's settings.

2.5.6 Appendixes: Vendor Lists

Appendix I: Vendors for South Korean materials

Vendor	Asian Culture Press	Eulyoo Publishing Co.	Kyungin Publishing Co.
Website	http://www.acp21.co.kr/	www.eulyoo.co.kr	http://kyungin.mkstudy.com/
Online shopping	YES	NO	NO
Address	1104-ho, 24, Dunchon-daero 388beon-gil, Jungwon-gu, Seongnam-si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea. 462-819	46-1 Susong-dong, Chongno-gu, Seoul 110-140, Korea	324-3, Mapo-dong, Mapo-gu, Seoul, Korea
Phone/	Tel:82-31-720-5211~2	Tel. +82-2-733-6934	Tel.82-2-718-4831
Fax	Fax:82-31-720-5213	Fax. +82-2-732-9154	Fx.82-2-703-9711
e-mail	acp@acp21.co.kr	eulyoo@chol.com	kyunginp@chollian.net wunderbal@naver.com
Contact Person	Ms. Eunjin Kim	Ms. Mijin Jung	Ms. So Young Kim
Language of Communications	Korean and English	Korean and English	Korean and English
Specialty	All materials	All materials	Korean History
Discount	NO	NO	10% D/C for members
Book Price	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice payment
Shipping charge	Actual shipping costs	Actual shipping costs	Actual shipping cost plus packing charge
Shipping method	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL for rush orders/Air mail for DVD orders	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL for rush orders	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL or airmail for rush orders
Service charge	NO	YES	No Packing fee, No Handling Charge
Approval plan	NO	YES	NO
Binding service	NO	NO	YES; at W10,000 per vol. (periodicals mainly)
Gov. materials	YES	YES	YES
Materials formats	all formats	all formats	all formats
New book info	Weekly lists by e-mail	Monthly lists by e-mail	Once a year for publisher's catalog; twice a year for Korean studies materials
Customers	Academic libraries	Academic libraries; public libraries	academic libraries; individuals
Other services			Free sample of reprint collections published by the publisher (Kyungin)

Vendor	Panmun Co., Ltd.	Taehaksa	KSI
Website	http://www.epanmun.co.kr/	www.taehak4.com	http://kstudy.com/
Online shopping	Under planning	NO	NO
Address	501 Wooree Venture Town. 466, Gangseo-ro Gangseo-gu, Seoul, 157- 754, Korea	498-8 P'aju Ch'ulp'an Tanji, Munbeol-ri, P'aju- si, Kyonggi-do, Korea	230, Heodong-gil , Paju- si, Gyeonggi-do, Korea
Phone/	Tel: 82 2 2063-0606	Tel. 82-32-955-7580	Tel.82-31-940-1173
Fax	Fax: 82 2 2063-0605	Fx.82-31-955-0910	Fx.82-31-940-1166
e-mail	panex@epanmun.co.kr	hkjee@dreamwiz.com	hgy@kstudy.com
Contact Person	Ms. Myo-jin Jeong	Mr. Jee, Hyung Gu	Ms. Ju Yeon Hong <jysingod@gmail.com>
Language of Communications	Korean and English	Korean and English	Korean and English
Specialty	All materials	All materials	KSI Publications
Discount	NO	NO	10% (Photoprint book : 20%)
Book Price	Fixed currency rate @ W1,100 or floating rate plus 15% handling charge	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice
Shipping charge	Actual shipping cost	Actual shipping cost	Actual shipping cost
Shipping method	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL or airmail for rush orders	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL or airmail for rush orders	Surface mail for regular orders
Service charge	YES	YES	NO
Approval plan	YES	NO	NO
Binding service	Yes at US\$6.00 per volume; mylar and cross binding	NO	NO
Gov. materials	YES	YES	NO
Materials formats	all formats	all formats, except periodicals	KSI publications and archiving CDs
New book info	Monthly by airmail/weekly by email	upon requests	upon requests
Customers	Univ, Public, research libraries, museums, art gallery, etc.	academic libraries	academic libraries
Other services	Standing orders; a few free gratis items; dataloading services;		Provision of free permanent access to KSI e-books with purchases of KSI publication titles

Vendor	Seoul Selection	Total Library Services	Dayeon Publishing Co.
Website	http://www.seoulselection.com/bookstore/	Under construction	
Online shopping	YES	NO	NO
Address	B1 Korean Publishers Association B/D, 105-2, Sagan-dong, Jongno-gu, Seoul, 110-190, Korea (branch office in Irvine, CA)	1425 Honeyhill Dr. Walnut, CA 91789	1109-1103, 126 Baeyang-ro, Deogyang-gu, Goyang-si, Gyeonggi-do, KOREA
Phone/	82-2-734-9565 (in Korea); 82-2-734-9565 (outside Korea); 949-981-3167 (in USA - Ms. Yang)	Tel. 909-816-3738 or 909-816-3001	82-70-4228-0723 / 010-9115-4831
Fax	82-2-734-9563	Fx. 909-594-7041	
e-mail	hank@seoulselection.com; seoulhank@gmail.com; fran@seoulselection.com	<total_libraryserv@hotmail.com>	hanallhp@hanmail.net
Contact Person	Mr. Hank Kim	Ms. Choonhee Rhim (Librarian)	Mr. Lee, Hwa-pyo
Language of Communications	Korean and English	Korean and English	Korean
Specialty			Old publications
Discount	15%	10% and up	NO
Book Price	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice	Negotiable	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice
Shipping charge	Actual shipping cost	Actual shipping cost	Actual shipping costs
Shipping method	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL or airmail for rush orders	Fedex	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL for rush orders/Air mail for DVD orders
Service charge	NO	NO	NO
Approval plan	NO	YES	NO
Binding service	NO	YES	NO
Gov. materials	YES	NO	YES
Materials formats	all formats	Monographs, DVDs	all formats
New book info	Weekly lists by e-mail	Book lists	
Customers	Academic libraries; public libraries	Academic, public, school, special libraries	University libraries
Other services	US bank account and W-9 form are available	Book supply, collection development, cataloging, and processing for shelf-ready Korean materials	

Appendix II: Vendors for Korean materials from North Korea and China

Vendor	Rainbow Trading Co.	Hong Longji (Beijing Sunyoung Scientific Technology Trade Co., Ltd.)	ASIA JOURNAL COMPANY	CIBTC (China international book trading corporation)
Website	www.rainbow-trading.co.jp	www.dprk-book.com	http://www.asiajournal.co.kr/	http://www.cibtc.com.cn/gtweb/enaction.do
Online shopping	Yes	No	Yes	No
Address	Kou 820-2, Sakawa-cho, Takaoka-gun, Kochi-pref. 789-1201, Japan	Rm. 406-18#, 172 Beiyuan Road, Chaoyang District, Beijing, CHINA 100101	#903 Classic Tower 493-5 Dapsimni 1-dong, Dongdaemun-gu, Seoul 130-805, Korea	35, Chegongzhuang Xilu, P.O.Box399_T, Postal Zone: 100048 Beijing, China
Phone	Tel./Fx. (81)-889-20-9990	Tel : (0086-10) 8485-3011, 8485-3012	Tel: 82-2-2215-7204	010-68433037
/Fax		Fax : (0086-10) 8485-3853	Fax: 82-2-2215-7209	010-68414694
Contact Person	Mr. MIYAGAWA Jun <miyagawa@rainbow-trading.co.jp>; <info@rainbow-trading.co.jp>	Mr. Hong, Longji <hong99@vip.sohu.com> <hong99@vip.sina.com>	Ms. Jo, Yoon-Hwa <asia@asiajournal.co.kr>	Mr. Xiao Zhifei <tsg@mail.cibtc.com.cn>
Specialty	Korean Materials from North & South Korea and North east area of China	Korean Materials from North Korea and China	Korean Materials from North Korea and China	Korean Materials from North Korea and China
Language of Communications	English, Korean, Japanese	Korean	Korean, English (e-mail)	English
Discount	case by case	No	No	No
Book Price	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice in EURO	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice	Apply daily currency rate on the date of invoice
Shipping	EMS for books protection and your tracking/ others selected	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL or airmail for rush orders	Surface mail for regular orders/ DHL or airmail for rush orders	Surface mail for regular orders/DHL or airmail for rush orders
Shipping method	Apply Sea mail fee even if shipped by EMS in case of large order	Actual shipping cost	Actual shipping cost	Actual shipping cost
Service Charge			Bank charges (under \$1,000)	
Approval Plan	no	no	No	yes
Binding Service	no	no	Yes (additional cost)	no
Materials formats	Books, DVDs	all formats including serial subscriptions	Journal, Books, DVDs	books, DVDs
New book info	irregularly by email, HP	irregularly by email	North Korean Books (by e-mail)	no
Customers	academic libraries, scholars and manias for North Korea	academic libraries	Academic libraries, Government agency	academic libraries
Other services	deal with rare North Korean publications and goods			

Appendix III: Online vendors for Korean Materials

Vendor	US Aladin	AladdinUS (Bandi Book US)
Website	http://us.aladin.co.kr/home/welcome.aspx	http://www.aladinusa.com/about.html ; http://www.bandibookus.com/front/main.do
Online shopping	Yes	Yes

2.6. Gift and Exchange Program

By Helen Kim⁶

Yunah Sung⁷

2.6.1 Introduction

Gifts and exchange constitute an important acquisitions source of materials that support the teaching and research programs in the field of Korean Studies. Historically, donated materials and the publications received via exchange programs have served as the foundation of Korean Studies collection in many academic libraries in North America.

The main purpose of acquiring materials via donation is to collect resources with less cost than purchasing them. The types of materials are as various as printed books and journals including newspapers, audio and visual materials, artworks and handicrafts, etc., but this chapter mainly describes librarians' involvement with receiving printed books and journals, and audio and visual materials for the library collection. Other types of gifts should be handled by the library or the institution's Development Offices.

Generally, a librarian needs to be aware of a few things before accepting donations. One should check to see whether there is a gift book policy at either the institution level or the library level. If there is not, one needs to discuss the issues with one's supervisor regarding the guidelines one should follow before receiving donations. At the same time, the collection development policy also should be checked. One should find out if a gift in kind agreement form exists in one's institution. If not, the librarian should again ask his/her supervisor whether one should be created.

In general, these are not acceptable as gifts:

- Gifts to which the donor has attached conditions or restrictions, such as housing, classification, and use of the gifts,
- Materials which duplicate existing holdings,
- Photocopied materials or copies of original audio/video productions,

⁶ Korean Librarian, Asian Library, University of British Columbia

⁷ Korean Studies Librarian, Asia Library, University of Michigan

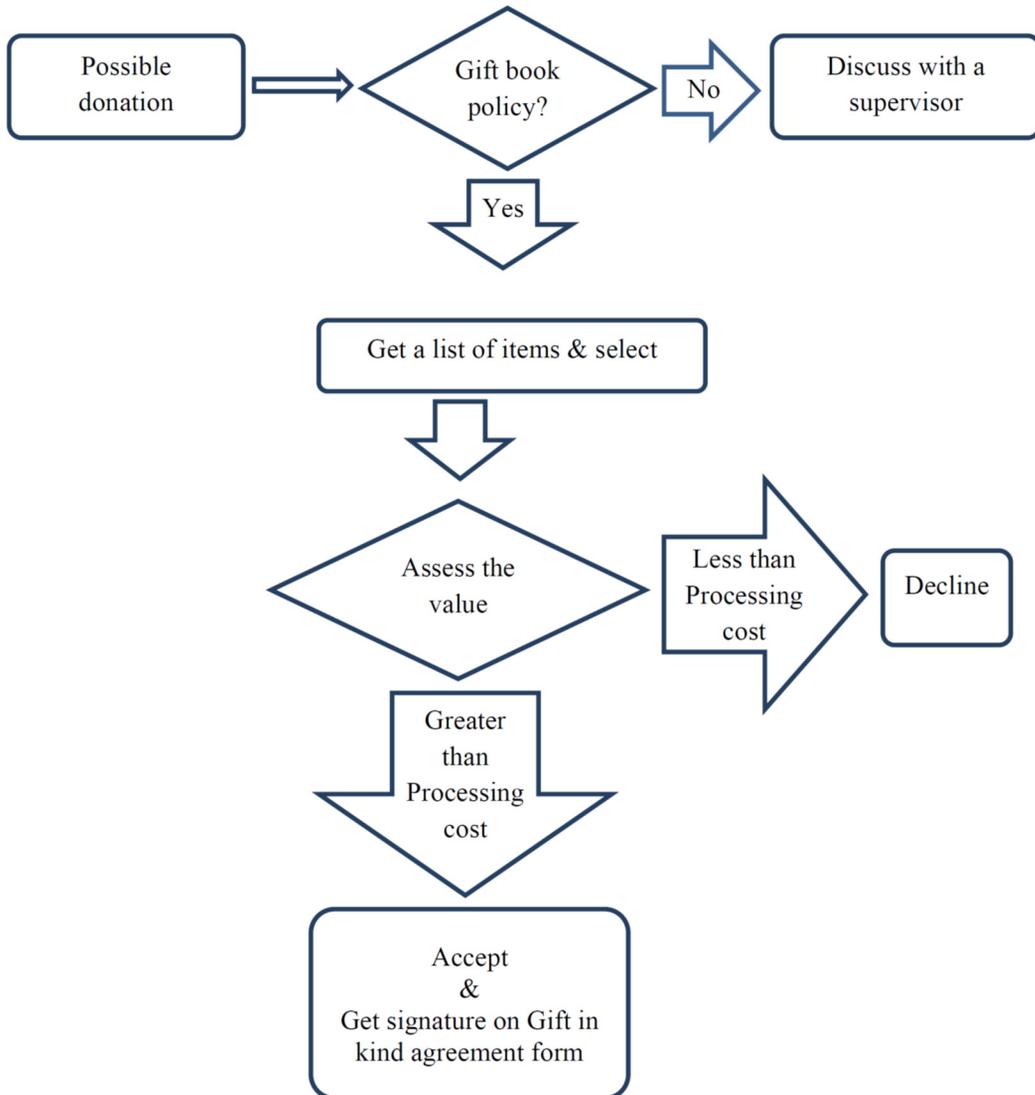
- Damaged and/or brittle materials,
- Materials that may be affected by mildew or mold,
- Periodicals, unless the full range of issues from the first to recent issues are included, and unless continuing issues can be acquired.

One should have the designated library personnel send an acknowledgment letter to the donor. The letter should note the number of volumes accepted, but it should not list the individual titles or the value of the donation.

A record of correspondence relating to gifts needs to be maintained, along with such information as the names of donors, the dates material is received, the number of items, and a brief description of each donation.

Generally speaking, donations are more suitable to a smaller library that has sufficient space to house gift materials. To help those who are interested in the acquisition of gift materials, the flowchart below may be a useful model.

This chapter contains a list of institutions in Korea that have been providing scholarly publications to academic libraries in North America via gift and exchange programs. It is highly advised to contact each institution to verify a scope of the program and available materials. The format of the publication is important as a majority of journals have been published electronically. One should check whether a gift/exchange journal comes only in print, or if it is also available in electronic format. If it is an e-journal, one should find out whether it is an open access journal, or if it is available from a subscription based e-journal database.



2.6.2 List of Possible Donors and Partners

Name of Institution		Homepage	Publication list / Program Information		
in English	in Korean		1	2	3
Academy of East Asian Studies	성균관대학교 동아시아학술원	http://aeas.skku.edu/	대동 문화 연구 (Taedong munhwa yŏn'gu; ISSN 1225-3820)	유교 문화 연구 (Yugyo munhwa yŏn'gu; ISSN 1598-1754)	SungKyun Journal of East Asian Studies (ISSN 1598-2661)
Academy of Korean Studies	한국학중앙연구원	http://intl.aks.ac.kr/english/portal.php	장서각 (Changsŏgak; ISSN 1229-7755)	정신 문화 연구 (Chŏngsin munhwa yŏn'gu; ISSN 1225-4576)	The review of Korean studies (ISSN 1229-0076)
Advancement Center for Korean Studies	한국국학진흥원	http://www.koreastudy.or.kr/	국학 연구 (Kukhak yŏn'gu; ISSN 1598-8082)	안동학 연구 (Andonghak yŏn'gu; ISSN 1598-5369)	
Asiatic Research Institute	고려대학교 아세아문제연구소	http://www.asiaticresearch.org/	아세아 연구 (Asea yŏn'gu; ISSN 1226-4385)		
Center for Korean Studies	고려대학교 한국학연구소	http://korstudy.org/	한국학 연구 (Han'gukhak yŏn'gu; ISSN 1225-195X)		
Ewha Womans University Library	이화여자대학교도서관	http://lib.ewha.ac.kr/	The Department of Information Processing is in charge of Gift/Exchange program.		
Ewha Institute of Unification Studies	통일학 연구원, 이화여자대학교	http://tongil.ewha.ac.kr/	Journal of peace and unification (ISSN 2233-9671)		
Hanyang Economic Research Institute	한양대학교 경제연구소	http://heri21.hanyang.ac.kr/	Journal of economic research (ISSN 1226-4261)		
Institute for Far Eastern Studies	경남대학교 극동문제연구소	http://ifes.kyungnam.ac.kr/kor/ifes_main.aspx	한국 과 국제 정치 (Han'guk kwa kukche chŏngchi; ISSN 1225-3006)	현대 북한 연구 (Hyŏndae Pukhan yŏn'gu = North Korean studies review)	Asian perspective (ISSN 0258-9184)

Name of Institution		Homepage	Publication list / Program Information		
in English	in Korean		1	2	3
Institute for Korean Studies, Yonsei University	국학연구원, 연세대학교	http://kukhak.yonsei.ac.kr	국학 총서 (Kukhak ch'ongsö)	동방 학지 (Tongbang hakchi; ISSN 1226-6728)	
Institute for Military History Compilation, Ministry of National Defense, Korea	군사편찬연구소, 대한민국 국방부	http://www.imhc.mil.kr	군사 (Kunsa; ISSN 1598-317X)	E-books can be downloaded.	
Institute for National Security Strategy	국가안보전략연구소	http://www.inss.re.kr/app/main/kr.act	국제 문제 연구 (Kukche munje yön'gu; ISSN 1598-7531)	정책 연구 (chöngch'aek yön'gu)	The Journal of East Asian Affairs (ISSN 1010-1608)
Institute for Peace Affairs	평화문제연구소	http://www.ipa.re.kr/	통일 문제 연구 = The Korean Journal of Unification Affairs (Tongil munje yön'gu; ISSN 1225-7478)	통일 한국 = The Unified Korea (Tongil Han'guk; ISSN 1225-1194)	Many books on the unification have been published.
Institute for the Study of Religion, Sogang University	종교연구소, 서강대학교	http://isr.sogang.ac.kr/index2.asp	한국 종교 연구 (Han'guk chonggyo yön'gu; ISSN 1229-3407)	Journal of Korean Religions (ISSN 2093-7288)	The Institute has been published Religious Studies Series.
Institute for the Translation of Korean Classics	한국고전번역원	http://www.itkc.or.kr/itkc/Ind ex.jsp	고전 사계 (Kojön sagye; ISSN 2233-8624)	민족 문화 (Minjok munhwa; ISSN 1738-4648)	The Institute has been published a number of translated Korean classics.
Institute of Asia Culture Studies, Hallym University	아시아문화연구소, 한림대학교	http://web.hallym.ac.kr/~asia/	동 아시아 비평 = East Asia Review (Tong Asia pip'yöng; ISSN 1229-0327)	아시아 문화 (Asia munhwa; ISSN 1225-2034)	
Institute of the Humanities, Yonsei University	인문학연구원, 연세대학교	http://inmun.yonsei.ac.kr/	인문 과학 (Inmun kwahak; ISSN 1229-6201)	The Institute has 4 monographic series on culture and literature.	
Jogye Order of Korean Buddhism	대한불교조계종 사회 복지 재단, 사회복지법인	http://www.koreanbuddhism.net/	불교사회복지연구 (Pulgyo sahoe pokchi yön'gu)	불교사회복지편람 (Pulgyo sahoe pokchi p'yöllum)	

Name of Institution		Homepage	Publication list / Program Information		
in English	in Korean		1	2	3
Kim Daejung Presidential Library & Museum, Yonsei University	김대중 도서관, 연세대학교	http://www.kdjlibrary.org/	The Institution has been publishing a monographic series of "Kim Dae-jung Presidential Library and Museum".		
King Sejong Memorial Society	세종대왕기념사업회	http://www.sejongkorea.org/	The Society has a number of publications on Korean history, culture, and translated classics.		
Korea Development Institute (KDI)	KDI 한국개발연구원	http://www.kdi.re.kr/	KDI 경제 동향 = Monthly economic trends (KDI Kyongje tonghyang)	KDI 북한 경제 리뷰 = KDI review of the North Korean economy (KDI Pukhan kyongje ribyu)	Economic bulletin (ISSN 2287-7266)
Korea Foundation (KF)	한국 국제 교류 재단	www.kf.or.kr	The foundation supports in-depth research on Korea and enhances understanding of Korea by providing various Korea-related publications and audiovisual materials to overseas universities, libraries, and research institutes. The foundation also provides access to electronic data for students and faculty involved with Korean studies at institutions abroad.		
		http://en.kf.or.kr/?menu=602	Distribution of Resources for Korean Studies: Distribution of various publications in Korean and foreign languages and multimedia materials to universities, public libraries, research institutes and cultural and arts facilities overseas.		
		http://en.kf.or.kr/?menu=603	Support for Korean Studies e-Resources: Providing support to selected universities to assist with the payment of the subscription/user fees required to access online Korean Studies resources.		
		http://en.kf.or.kr/?menu=604	Korean Collections Consortium of North America (KCCNA): Offering 1:1 matching-funds support to consortium member universities so that each member library can continue to systematically build up its collection of research materials in the designated subject areas of the Korean Studies discipline.		
		http://en.kf.or.kr/?menu=605	KF-KOSSDA Social Science Data Service: Offering free access to the Korean Social Sciences Data Archive (KOSSDA) online social sciences database for Korea-related students and research specialists.		

Name of Institution		Homepage	Publication list / Program Information		
in English	in Korean		1	2	3
Korea Institute for International Economic Policy	대외경제정책연구원	http://www.kiep.go.kr	Journal of East Asian economic integration (ISSN 2234-8867)	Monographic series, such as Policy analyses, Policy references, and KIEP opinions, are also available in pdf.	
Korea Institute for National Unification	통일연구원	https://www.kinu.or.kr/site/etc_05_01.jsp	월간북한동향 (Wŏlgan Pukhan tonghyang)	통일 정책 연구 (Tongil chŏngch'aek yŏn'gu; ISSN 1229-6112)	International Journal of Korea Unification Studies (ISSN 1229-6902)
Korea Labor Institute (KLI)	KLI 한국 노동 연구원	http://www.kli.re.kr/kli_home/main/main.jsp	국제 노동 브리프 = International labor brief (Kukche nodong bŭrip'ŭ; ISSN 1599-8355)	노동 정책 연구 (Nodong chŏngch'aek yŏn'gu; ISSN 1598-270X)	월간 노동 리뷰 = Monthly labor review (Wŏlgan nodong ribyu; ISSN 1738-5121)
Korean Cultural Research Institute, Ewha W. University	한국문화연구원, 이화여자대학교	http://kcri.ewha.ac.kr/	한국문화연구 (Han'guk munhwa yŏn'gu; ISSN 1598-4176)	The Institute has been publishing monographic series, including lhwa yŏn'gu ch'ongsŏ and lhwa Han'guk munhwa yŏn'gu ch'ongsŏ.	
Korean Educational Development Institute	한국 교육 개발원	https://www.kedi.re.kr	교육개발 (Kyoyuk kaebal; ISSN 1228-291X)	교육 정책 포럼 (Kyoyuk chŏngch'aek p'orŏm; ISSN 1739-4325)	KEDI journal of educational policy (ISSN 1739-4341)
Korean Film Archive (KOFA)	한국영상자료원	http://www.koreafilm.or.kr/	KOFA has been distributing Korean classic movies, independent movies, film education DVDs, and Korean film history related materials to overseas' libraries.		
Korean Film Council (KOFIC)	영화진흥위원회	http://www.kofic.or.kr/kofic/business/main/main.do	한국 영화 (Han'guk yŏnghwa; ISSN 2093-2391)	한국 영화 연감 (Han'guk yŏnghwa yŏn'gam)	Korean cinema today (ISSN 2092-5158)
Korean Library Association	한국도서관협회	http://www.kla.kr/jsp/main.do	도서관 문화 = KLA bulletin (Tosŏgwan munhwa; ISSN 1225-5521)	한국도서관연감 (Han'guk tosŏgwan yŏn'gam; ISSN 2005-484X)	
Korean National	유네스코 한국 위원회	http://eng.unesco.or.kr/wp/	Korea journal (ISSN 0023-3900)	Korean social science journal	

Name of Institution		Homepage	Publication list / Program Information		
in English	in Korean		1	2	3
Commission for UNESCO				(ISSN 1225-0368)	
Korean Publishers Association	대한출판문화협회	http://www.kpa21.or.kr/	출판 문화 = Korea Publishers Association journal (Ch'ulp'an munhwa; ISSN 1227-1985)	출판 저널 (Ch'ulp'an chŏnŏl; ISSN 1227-1802)	한국 출판 연감 (Han'guk ch'ulp'an yŏn'gam; ISSN 1227-1977)
Korean Women's Development Institute	한국여성정책연구원	http://eng.kwdi.re.kr/index.do	여성 연구 (Yŏsŏng yŏn'gu)	젠더 리뷰 (Chendŏ ribyu; ISSN 1599-8266)	GSPPR (Gender studies and policy review; ISSN 2005-5919)
Korean Women's Institute, Ewha W. University	한국 여성 연구원, 이화여자대학교	http://kwi.ewha.ac.kr/	여성학 논집 (Yŏsŏnghak nonjip; ISSN 1598-7698)	The Institute has been publishing a number of monographs.	
Kyujanggak Institute for Korean Studies, Seoul National University	규장각 한국학연구원, 서울대학교	http://kyujanggak.snu.ac.kr/	규장각 (Kyujanggak; ISSN 1975-6283)	한국문화 (Han'guk-munhwa; ISSN 1226-8356)	Seoul Journal of Korean Studies (ISSN 1225-0201)
Literature Translation Institute of Korea (LTI)	한국문학번역원	http://www.klti.or.kr/main.do	List: books from Korea (ISSN 2005-2790)	LTI has been distributing translated Korean literature works to overseas' libraries.	
Ministry of Culture, Sports and Tourism	문화체육관광부	http://www.mcst.go.kr/main.jsp	음악 산업 백서 = Music (Ŭmak sanŏp paeksŏ)		
Ministry of Unification	통일부	http://www.unikorea.go.kr/index.do	북한 이해 (Pukhan ihae; ISSN 1229-7259)	월간 북한 동향 (Wŏlgan Pukhan tonghyang; no ISSN)	통일 문제 이해 (Tongil munje ihae; ISSN 1229-7267)
Nammyung Studies Research Institute, Kyongsang University	남명학 연구소, 경상대학교	http://nammyung.web-bi.net/	남명학 연구소 보 (Nammyŏnghak yŏn'guso po)		
National Assembly Library	국회도서관	http://www.nanet.go.kr/	국회 도서관 연간 보고서 (Kukhoe Tosŏgwan yŏn'gan pogosŏ)	국회 도서관 보 (Kukhoe Tosŏgwan po; ISSN 0027-8572)	

Name of Institution		Homepage	Publication list / Program Information		
in English	in Korean		1	2	3
National Folk Museum of Korea	국립민속박물관	http://www.nfm.go.kr/language/english/main.jsp	국제 저널 무형 유산 (Kukche chŏnŏl muhyŏng yusan; ISSN 2092-9560)	민속학 연구 (Minsokhak yŏn'gu; ISSN 1229-8662)	International journal of intangible heritage (ISSN 1975-3586)
National Institute of Korean History	국사 편찬 위원회	http://www.history.go.kr/	역사의 창 (Yŏksa ūi ch'ang)	한국사 연구 휘보 (Han'guksa yŏn'gu hwibo; ISSN 0257-9383)	
National Library of Korea	국립중앙도서관	http://www.nl.go.kr/	국립 중앙 도서관 연보 = Annual report of the Central National Library (Kungnip Chungang Tosŏgwan yŏnbo; ISSN 1598-2270)	도서관 = Bulletin of Central National Library (Tosŏgwan; ISSN 1011-2073)	해외 한국학 도서관 동향 보고서 = Trends in overseas Korean studies libraries (Haeoe Han'gukhak tosŏgwan tonghyang pogosŏ; ISSN 2092-6073)
			The International Cooperation & Public Relations Team (국제교류홍보팀) under the Planning & Training Department (기획연수부) is in charge of the gifts and exchange of library materials.		
National Research Institute of Cultural Heritage	국립문화재연구소	http://www.nrich.go.kr/	보존 과학 연구 (Pojon kwahak yŏn'gu; ISSN 1976-3077)	한국 고고학 저널 = Journal of Korean archaeology (Han'guk kogohak chŏnŏl)	Journal of Korean Archaeology
Northeast Asian History Foundation	동북아역사재단	http://www.historyfoundation.or.kr/	동북아 역사 논총 (Tongbuga yŏksa nonch'ong; ISSN 1975-7840)	Journal of Northeast Asian History (ISSN 1976-3735)	The Journal of Territorial and Maritime Studies (ISSN 2288-6834)
Overseas Koreans Foundation	재외 동포 재단	http://www.okf.or.kf	재외 동포 문학 의 창 (Chaeoe tongp'o munhak ūi ch'ang)		

Name of Institution		Homepage	Publication list / Program Information		
in English	in Korean		1	2	3
PEN International - Korea PEN	국제 펜 한국 본부	http://www.penkorea.or.kr/	펜 뉴스 (P'en nyusü)	펜문학 (P'en munhak)	
Seoul National University Library	서울대학교중앙도서관	http://library.snu.ac.kr	Contact the Gift & Exchange (기증교환실), which is administrated by the Division of Technical Services (수서정리과), for detailed information on currently available services.		
Sogang Institute for East Asian Studies	서강대학교 동아연구소	http://www.eastasia.kr/eastasian_en_index.aspx	동아 연구 = East Asian Studies (Tonga yŏn'gu; ISSN 1225-3308)	TRaNS: Trans -Regional and -National Studies of Southeast Asia (ISSN 2051-3658)	
Sogang University Institute for Business Research	서강대학교 경영연구소	http://hompi.sogang.ac.kr/sjmb/	서강 경영 논총 (Sögang kyöngyöng nonch'ong)		
The Bank of Korea	한국은행	http://www.bok.or.kr	계간 경제 분석 = Quarterly economic analysis (Kyegan kyöngje punsök. ISSN: 1226-7570)	조사 통계 월보 (Chosa t'onggye wölbo. ISSN: 1975-4906)	Annual report (ISSN: 0067-3706)
Toegye Studies Research Institute, Andong University	퇴계학 연구소, 안동대학교	011-82-54-820-5267	퇴계학 (Toegyehak)	퇴계학 자료 총서 (Toegyehak charyo ch'ongsö)	
Yonhap News Agency	연합뉴스	http://www.yonhapnews.co.kr/#v1	고향의 향기 (Kohyang ü hyanggi. ISSN: 2093-2642)	연합 연감 (Yönhap yŏn'gam)	Vantage Point (ISSN: 1228-517X)

Chapter 3

Cataloging

3.1. Introduction

By Erica Chang¹

The new cataloging code, Resource Description and Access (RDA), was implemented officially on March 31, 2013 by the Library of Congress. Many research libraries in North America have implemented or are in the process of implementing it. RDA is based on the Functional Requirements for Bibliographical Records (FRBR) developed by the International Federation of Library Associations (IFLA). It emphasizes four user tasks: find, identify, select, obtain. RDA is not confined to a particular encoding schema for cataloging. Since MARC is the most commonly used encoding schema, the cataloging chapters are written following RDA and MARC format.

Earlier editions of the Handbook were published by the Committee on Korean Materials in 2002 and 2008 (<http://www.eastasianlib.org/ckm/koreanlibrarianship.html>). While those editions were based on AACR2, they remain good sources of basic information for cataloging Korean language materials. The earlier editions covered two kinds of materials: monographs and serials; the current edition has been expanded to accommodate more diversified content types: textual monographs, textual serials, scores, sound recordings, video recordings, cartographic materials, and electronic resources. Many RDA training materials are available on the web, provided by the Library of Congress and the Program for Cooperative Cataloging. Therefore, the focus of this handbook is to illustrate how to catalog according to RDA using Korean examples. The section on textual monographs

¹ Cataloging Librarian, University of Hawaii

includes instructions for creating authorized access points and relationship designators. The other sections present typical examples of each format and explain unique and important points in cataloging the format. For example, globes are not touched upon in the section on cartographic resources because they are encountered relatively infrequently. Each section includes important reference tools for the format, format-specific instructions, RDA core elements and tags, most frequently used content, media, carrier types (33x fields), most frequently used relationship designators, and examples of typical bibliographic data for the material type. It is recommended that this edition be used with the two earlier editions but bear in mind that some of the cataloging rules and romanization rules have changed since 2008. This manual is a starting point for cataloging in RDA. Catalogers are encouraged to consult the RDA Toolkit and online training materials. RDA instructions are regularly updated. The online version of this manual will be updated as the need arises. One way to keep abreast of changes is to monitor the RDA list. Subscribe by sending rda-l@infoserv.nlc-bnc.ca.

Important RDA instructions that are applicable to every format are listed in the following subsection to avoid redundancy.

3.1.1 Notes

Parallel fields are not always provided due to space limitations.

indicates a blank in the position of indicators.

\$ indicates subfield delimiter.

Examples do not show every field in a record.

\$a is not indicated if it is the first subfield in a field.

3.1.2 Important Changes with RDA for All Formats

Capitalization

Follow local guidelines if available, or follow Appendix. A (similar to AACR2 (using upper and lower case appropriately), or record as it appears on the resource
Journal of Korean archeology or JOURNAL OF KOREAN ARCHEOLOGY

Abbreviations

Many abbreviations have been eliminated in RDA. Use spelled-out forms, except terms indicated in App. B.5 and B.7.

p. => pages

col. ill. => color illustrations

sn. => silent

t.p. => title page

no. => number

pt. => part

Exceptions: dimensions and durations - hour, minute, inch -> hr., min., in.

There are additional exceptions in music.

Latin abbreviations

Do not use.

et al. => [and ... others]

S.l. => [Place of publication not identified]

s.n. => [publisher not identified]

Coding RDA

fixed field (Leader/18), Desc: i

Put '\$e rda' in 040 between \$b eng (language of cataloging) and \$c (inputting library's OCLC symbol).

040 \$a HUH \$b eng \$e rda \$c HUH

Parallel title (245 = \$b) 2.3.3

A parallel title can come from anywhere within the resource. It does not have to be from the same source as title proper.

If the parallel title 'Flower of salt' appears on page 4 of cover

245 00 Sogŭm ũi kkot = \$b Flower of salt

246 31 Flower of salt

Statement of responsibility (245 \$c) 2.4.2.2

If a statement of responsibility appears anywhere within the resource, brackets are not used. If supplied from outside, bracket it.

Place of publication (264 #1 \$a) 2.8.2

Supply information if known or if it can be determined, rather than using [Place of publication not identified]

Include both local and larger jurisdiction if present.

264 #1 Kyōnggi-do P'aju-si

Supply larger jurisdiction as an option if considered helpful.

264 #1 Ch'ōngsong-gun [Kyōngsang-bukto].

If a place name is given in Korean and English, use the Korean form if title proper is in Korean.

Publisher (264 #1 \$b) 2.8.4.6, 2.8.4.7

If a publisher name is in Korean and English, take Korean name if the title proper is in Korean. If the publisher of a resource is unknown, supply [publisher not identified].

264 #1 \$b [publisher not identified]

Date of publication (264 #1 \$c) 2.8.6

Record date as it appears.

264 #1 \$c 2013.

If only a copyright date is available on a resource, infer the publication date from the copyright date and enclose in brackets rather than using [date of publication not identified].

264 #1 \$c [2013]

Infer a publication date from foreword, preface, etc. in a resource.

Supply a date in brackets rather than using [date of publication not identified] if the date is known, but does not appear in the resource. Use a question mark if not certain.

264 #1 \$c [2013?]

If the date is a non-Gregorian or non-Julian calendar date, convert it to the Gregorian or Julian calendar and provide it in brackets following the date on the resource.

264 #1 \$c Tan'gi 4346 [1998]

The copyright date can be recorded separately in addition to the publication date. Use the symbol ©. (264 #4 \$c ©2013, \$c only without ending period). See Sound recording section for phonogram date ®.

Extent (300 \$a)

Use vocabulary from RDA Table 6.1 for carrier types (e.g., volume, audio disc, videodisc, videocassette, sheet, online resource, object, microfiche, microfilm reel, etc.) or record commonly used terms (e.g., CD, DVD, CD ROMs).

No rule of three

RDA does not limit to three the number of entities to transcribe in 245 \$c or the number of added access points. See Textual printed monographs section 3.3.9.

Content, Media, Carrier type (336, 337, 338)

Do not use GMD; instead, use 33X fields. Use terms from controlled vocabulary list (Table 6.1 for 336, Table 3.1 for 337, 3.3.1.3 for 338). If a resource consists of more than one component, indicate each component separately by repeating each field and adding \$3 with an appropriate term. See Textual printed monographs section 3.3.10.

Series (490 1# and 8xx)

If there is more than one series, record each separately. If a series statement appears in two languages, record the language of title proper as an authorized form in 8xx. Provide \$x (ISSN) in 8xx if available.

490 1# Munhak ũi t'amgu = \$a Research on literature, \$x 0955-0569 ; \$v 1
830 #0 Munhak ũi t'amgu ; \$v 1. \$x 0955-0569. [made-up title]

Compilations (two or more works with or without collective title)

Do not enter under the first work. Provide a 7XX for each work or the primary work. See Textual printed monographs section 3.3.7 and 3.3.8.

Relationship designators and linking entries

Relationships between creators/contributors and resources are recorded in 100, 110, 700, and 710 in \$e and in 111 and 711 in \$j. Relationships between resources are indicated using 76X-78X with \$i. The citation is taken from descriptive data in the related resource. Subfields are removed within an element. See Textual printed monographs section 3.3.11. Relationships between persons, families, corporate bodies are indicated in authority records. PCC recommends that relationship designators be provided wherever possible. Use appropriate terms from Appendix I, J, and K, respectively, for the cases listed above. Reciprocal relationships can be made (online vs print version (776), Korean vs English edition (775), microform vs print (776), etc. For earlier vs later title (780, 785), main vs supplementary (770, 772), there is no need to use \$i. Instead, use appropriate indicators.

3.2. Romanization

By Erica Chang²

There are several romanization systems used to transliterate the Korean language. The Revised Romanization of Korean has been used in South Korea since 2000. The most widely used romanization system outside of Korea is the McCune-Reischauer System. It was developed in 1937 by George M. McCune and Edwin O. Reischauer. The American Library Association and the Library of Congress follow the McCune-Reischauer System with some modifications (ALA-LC Romanization system for Korean language; hereafter, the MR System). The MR System is used for searching, indexing, and sorting of the bibliographic and authority records in library catalogs and in citations of bibliographies. The MR system has been revised several times. The current version was issued in 2009.

It is a 65-page document and available at

<http://www.loc.gov/catdir/cpsa/romanization/korean.pdf>.

The MR System is a phonetic transcription system, that is, the romanization is based on pronunciation. The System contains rules for romanization, word division, capitalization, and punctuation. A table indicates how to transcribe each consonant and vowel when it is positioned in the initial, medial and final word positions and provides examples. Hyphens are used for personal names, jurisdictional names, numerals, etc. The first letter of last names, forenames, corporate names, and titles of publications are capitalized.

When romanizing Korean words, word division should be done first because spelling and capitalization can vary depending on word division (ex. Nambuk vs. Nam-Puk). The basic rule of word-division is to separate each part of speech: noun, pronoun, adjective, adnominal adjective, adverb, verb, particle, numeral, exclamation, etc. Compound nouns should be separated into binary elements when it does not alter the original meaning.

After deciding on word division, the romanization table at the end of MR System should be consulted. The table contains basic rules for romanizing Korean words. It is necessary to consult the main part of the MR System for detailed explanations and exceptions.

² Cataloging Librarian, University of Hawaii

The authorized dictionary for contemporary pronunciation is P'yojun Kugŏ Taesajŏn (표준 국어 대사전) by Kungnip Kugŏ Yŏn'guwŏn (국립 국어 연구원) available at <http://stdweb2.korean.go.kr/main.jsp>. When romanization rules and pronunciations differ, pronunciation takes precedence. As an example, 평가 would be romanized as “p'yŏngga” according to the basic table. But the P'yojun Kugŏ Taesajŏn indicates its pronunciation as “**평가**”, therefore, the exception rule dictates the romanization of 평가 as “p'yŏngka.”

Word division is sometimes difficult due to the complexity of the rules. Compound nouns are especially tricky. For example, Han'gugin (한국인) and changmikkot (장미꽃) are romanized as a single word as they are shown in the examples of the rule. However, Han'guk sae (한국 새), and Han'guk kkot (한국 꽃) are normally romanized separately according to the Library of Congress. For these reasons, the 65-page MR System needs to be consulted when romanizing Korean words.

There are a few automatic transliterating tools for the Korean language, but their output requires manual review. A handy tool is Joel Hahn's Korean2Latin macro, available at <http://www.hahnlibrary.net/libraries/oml/connex.html>. It works on OCLC's Connexion client. The macro provides a paired romanized field following non-Latin field information. It accommodates the basic table correctly, however, manual review is needed as the macro cannot handle the exceptional rules of the MR System.

With the 2009 revision of the MR System, the Library of Congress issued an Excel file that lists frequently used words according to the revised rules. It is available at <http://goo.gl/h0zO1P> as part of KoCa.pbworks.com.

The rules do not cover every case that occurs in publications. KoCa, the Korean Cataloging Wiki, contains many useful links to facilitate cataloging of Korean language materials. It contains a Romanization and Word division section. A subsection provides romanizations for debatable words. Users can send questions on the site (membership required). A Romanization Review Committee, formed under the auspices of the Committee on Korean Materials, Council on East Asian Libraries, discusses debatable words and reaches a consensus. Those words are listed on the 'finalized words list' on KoCa along with brief explanations.

Consistent romanization in the library community is important for record retrieval in the cooperative environment. The goal of the romanization section of the KoCa wiki is to create an extensive list of ambiguous and debatable words to facilitate cataloging of Korean language materials.

3.3. Textual Printed Monographs

By Jee-Young Park³

3.3.1 PCC Core Elements in RDA

Title (245), Analytic titles and titles of individual contents (505, 7XX), Parallel title proper (245), Other title (245), Variant title (246), First statement of responsibility (245 \$c), Edition (250), First place of publication, First publisher's name, Date of publication, Series statement and numbering, Extent (300), 33X

3.3.2 Translations of Work by Single Author (Translation Only)

041, 100, 240 \$l, 245, 700 \$e translator, 700 1# \$i Translation of:

041 1# kor \$h ita

100 1# Stilton, Geronimo, \$e author.

240 10 Quinto viaggio nel regno della fantasia. \$l Korean

245 10 판타지 세계 대지진 과 사라진 요정 공주 / \$c 글 제로니모 스틸턴 ; 옮긴이 성 초림.

245 10 P'ant'aji segye taejjin kwa sarajin yojŏng kongju / \$c kŭl Cheronimo Sŭt'ilt'ŏn ; omgini Sŏng Ch'o-rim.

700 1#성 초림, \$e translator.

700 1# Sŏng, Ch'o-rim, \$e translator.

700 1# \$i Translation of: \$a Stilton, Geronimo. \$t Quinto viaggio nel regno della fantasia.

3.3.3 Translations of Work by Single Author (Translations + Original)

041, 100, no 240, 245, 546, 700 12 \$a \$t (without \$l for original), 700 12 \$a \$t (with \$l for translated language)

041 1# chi \$a kor \$h chi

³ Korean Studies Librarian, University of Chicago

100 1# 顔之推, \$d 531-591, \$e author.

100 1# Yan, Zhitui, \$d 531-591, \$e author.

245 10 안 씨 가훈 / \$c 안 지추 저 ; 차 복순 한역.

245 10 An Ssi kahun / \$c An Chi-ch'u chō ; Ch'a Pok-sun hanyök.

546 ## In Korean, with original text in Chinese.

700 1# 차 복순, \$e translator.

700 1# Ch'a, Pok-sun, \$e translator.

700 12 \$i Container of (expression): \$a 顔之推, \$d 531-591. \$t 顔氏家訓.

700 12 \$i Container of (expression): \$a Yan, Zhitui, \$d 531-591. \$t Yan shi jia xun.

700 12 \$i Container of (expression): \$a 顔之推, \$d 531-591. \$t 顔氏家訓. \$l Korean.

700 12 \$i Container of (expression): \$a Yan, Zhitui, \$d 531-591. \$t Yan shi jia xun. \$l Korean.

3.3.4 Simultaneous Publications in Different Languages

Provide 130 or 1XX/240 as a preferred title based on the original language. If original language cannot be determined, use the title of the first received resource. No specific relationship designator is available; therefore do not give linking entries. No 041. Give same base call number and add 13 for English, 163 for Japanese.

(Korean edition-original language)

245 00 독도 는 한국 땅 이다.

245 00 Tokto nŭn Han'guk ttang ida.

(English edition)

130 0# 독도 는 한국 땅 이다. \$l English

130 0# Tokto nŭn Han'guk ttang ida. \$l English

245 10 Dokdo is Korean territory.

(Japanese edition)

130 0# 독도 는 한국 땅 이다. \$l Japanese

130 0# Tokto nŭn Han'guk ttang ida. \$l Japanese

245 10 Tokuto wa Kankoku no ryōdo de aru.

3.3.5 Revised Editions

a) Same title— if a creator and the title remains the same, indicate the new edition in 250

(Original work)

100 1# 김 훈, \$d 1948- \$e author.

100 1# Kim, Hun, \$d 1948- \$e author.

24510 칼 의 노래 / \$c 김 훈.

24510 K'al ũi norae / \$c Kim Hun.

250 ## 초판.

250 ## Ch'op'an.

264 #1 서울 : \$b 생각 의 나무, \$c 2001.

264 #1 Sŏul : \$b Saenggak ũi Namu, \$c 2001.

300 ## 389 pages : \$b illustrations (some color), maps ; \$c 23 cm

(Revised edition)

100 1# 김 훈, \$d 1948- \$e author.

100 1# Kim, Hun, \$d 1948- \$e author.

245 10 칼 의 노래 / \$c 김 훈.

245 10 K'al ũi norae / \$c Kim Hun.

250 ## 개정판.

250 ## Kaejŏngp'an.

264 #1 서울 : \$b 생각 의 나무, \$c 2008.

264 #1 Sŏul : \$b Saenggak ũi Namu, \$c 2008.

300 ## 449 pages, 11 unnumbered pages : \$b illustrations (chiefly color), maps ; \$c 20 cm

b) Different title whether the content is revised or not— if creator is the same (and the work covers the same scope, contents), the preferred title is based on the original title because it is a new expression of the same work.

100, 240 (title of original work), 245, 250. Optionally provide 500 (Revision of the author's ---) and/or 775 08 \$i Revision of: \$a \$t \$d \$z \$w.

(Original work)

100 1#임 용한, \$e author.

100 1# Im, Yong-han, \$e author.
 245 10 난세 에 길 을 찾다 / \$c 임 용한 지음.
 245 10 Nanse e kil ūl ch'atta / \$c Im Yong-han chiŭm.
 250 ## 초판.
 250## Ch'op'an.
 264 #1 서울 특별시 : \$b 시공사, \$c 2009.
 264 #1 Sŏul T'ŭkpyŏlsi : \$b Sigongsa, \$c 2009.

(Revised edition)

100 1# 임 용한, \$e author.
 100 1# Im, Yong-han, \$e author.
 240 10 난세 에 길 을 찾다
 240 10 Nanse e kil ūl ch'atta
 245 10 시대 의 개혁가들: \$b 역사 의 변화 를 선택 한 사람들 / \$c 임 용한 지음.
 245 10 Sidae ūi kaehyŏkkadŭl : \$b yŏksa ūi pyŏnhwa rŭl sŏnt'aek han saramdŭl / \$c Im Yong-han chiŭm.
 250 ## 2 판.
 250 ## 2-p'an.
 775 08 \$i Revision of: \$a 임 용한 \$t 난세 에 길 을 찾다. \$b 초판 \$d 서울 특별시 : 시공사, 2009 \$z 9788952755001 \$w (DLC) 2010384975 \$w (OCoLC)610210912
 775 08 \$i Revision of: \$a Im, Yong-han. \$t Nanse e kil ūl ch'atta \$b Ch'op'an. \$d Sŏul T'ŭkpyŏlsi : Sigongsa, 2009 \$z 9788952755001 \$w (DLC) 2010384975 \$w (OCoLC) 610210912

3.3.6 Errors in Title Proper

Do not correct in 245, put correct one in 246 \$i Corrected title: \$a

245 10 \$a 노인 복지 프로그램 개발 의 실제 / \$c 권 중돈.
 245 10 \$a Noin pokchi p'ŭrosŭraem kaebal ūi silche / \$c Kwŏn Chung-don.
 246 #1 \$i Corrected title: \$a 노인 복지 프로그램 개발 의 실제
 246 #1 \$i Corrected title: \$a Noin pokchi p'ŭrogŭraem kaebal ūi silche

3.3.7 Compilations by a Single Author

For compilations where the preferred title is a collective title beginning with “Works” or “Works. Selections”, no date is required unless needed to break conflict.

Is it known by a title? RDA agrees, but LC usually does not. To follow LC practice, enter under creator (1XX) + conventional collective title (240) (as a preferred title) \$a Works. or \$a Works. \$k Selections. \$a Plays. \$k Selections). It does not matter whether the title is distinctive. Do not use 240 for the first work. No date is provided unless it is needed to break a conflict.

If a collective title is available on the title page, provide 505 and 700 12 (first one required). If there is no collective title, 505 is not necessary. Just provide 700 12 (first one required). Separate different works by a semicolon in 245.

RDA core element for a compilation: give the predominant or first named work; giving access points for other works is optional.

(Collective title)

100 1# 김 사랑, \$d 1914-1950, \$ author.

100 1# Kim, Sa-ryang, \$d 1914-1950, \$ author.

240 10 Novels. \$k Selections

245 10 김 사랑 작품집 / \$c 김 사랑 지음 ; 임 헌영 엮음.

245 10 Kim Sa-ryang chakp'umjip / \$c Kim Sa-ryang chiŭm ; Im Hŏn-yŏng yŏkkŭm.

505 0# 빛 속 에 -- 칠현금.

505 0# Pit sok e – Ch'irhyŏn'gŭm.

700 1# 임 헌영, \$e editor.

700 1# Im Hŏn-yŏng, \$e editor.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 김 사랑, \$d 1914-1950. \$t 빛 속 에.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Kim, Sa-ryang, \$d 1914-1950. \$t Pit sok e.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 김 사랑, \$d 1914-1950. \$t 칠현금. *

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Kim, Sa-ryang, \$d 1914-1950. \$t Ch'irhyŏn'gŭm. *

* 2nd added entry is optional.

(No collective title)

100 1# 심 연옥, \$e author.

100 1# Sim, Yŏn-ok, \$e author.

240 10 Works. \$k Selections

245 10 한산 세모시 짜기 ; 청양 춘포 짜기 / \$c 글 심 연옥 ; 사진 서 헌강.

245 10 Hansan semosi tchagi ; Ch'öngyang ch'unp'o tchagi / \$c kŭl Sim Yŏn-ok ; sajin Sŏ Hŏn-gang.

700 1# 서헌강, \$e illustrator.

700 1# Sŏ, Hŏn-gang, \$e illustrator.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 심연옥.\$t 한산 세모시 짜기.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Sim, Yŏn-ok. \$t Hansan semosi tchagi.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 심연옥.\$t 청양 춘포 짜기. *

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Sim, Yŏn-ok. \$t Ch'öngyang ch'unp'o tchagi.

*adding the 2nd added entry depends on the cataloger's judgment.

3.3.8 Compilations by Multiple Authors

Do not make an authorized access point based on the first work.

Enter under the title proper of the first work in 245. Generally do not use a conventional collective title (130) unless the preferred title conflicts with another work. An access point for 1st or significant work is required in 700 12. Other added access points are optional.

If there is a collective title, provide 505 for individual entries and 700 12. If there is no collective title, 505 is not necessary; provide 700 12 (analytical name/title access point) for the 1st or important work.

(Collective title)

245 00 중국 교포 작가 우수 중편 모음 / \$c 리원길 外 ; 중국 작가 협회 연변 분회 편.

245 00 Chungguk kyop'o chakka usu chungp'yŏn moŏm / \$c Yi Wŏn-gil oe ; Chungguk Chakka Hyŏphoe Yŏnbyŏn Punhoe p'yŏn.

505 0# 이향 / 리원길 -- 해당화 야 해당화 / 김재국 -- 도시의 곤혹 / 최홍일 -- 흘러가는 마을 / 고신일 -- 동네 사람들 / 리혜선 -- <볼셰위크>의 이미지 / 정세봉.

505 0# Ihyang / Yi Wŏn-gil -- Haedanghwa ya haedanghwa / Kim Chae-guk -- Tosi ũi konhok / Ch'oe Hong-il -- Hŭllŏ kanŭn maŭl / Ko Sin-il -- Tongne saramdŭl / Yi Hye-sŏn -- <Polszewik'ü> ũi imiji / Chŏng Se-bong.

700 12 \$i Contains (work): \$a 리원길. \$t 이향.

700 12 \$i Contains (work): \$a Yi, Wŏn-gil. \$t Ihyang. * required

710 2# 延边作家协会, \$e editor.

710 2# Yanbian zuo jia xie hui, \$e editor.

(No collective title)

245 00 자유종 / \$c 이 해조. 은세계 / 이 인직. 설중매 / 구 연학. 추월색 / 최 찬식.

245 00 Chayujong / \$c Yi Hae-jo. Ŭnsegye / Yi In-jik. Sŏlchungmae / Ku Yŏn-hak.
Ch'uwŏlsaek / Ch'oe Ch'an-sik.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 이 해조, \$d 1869-1927. \$t 자유종.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Yi, Hae-jo, \$d 1869-1927. \$t Chayujong. **

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 이 인직, \$d 1862-1916. \$t 은세계.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Yi, In-jik, \$d 1862-1916. \$t Ŭnsegye. **

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 구 연학. \$t 설중매.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Ku, Yŏn-hak. \$t Sŏlchungmae. **

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a 최 찬식, \$d 1881-1951. \$t 추월색.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Ch'oe Ch'an-sik, \$d 1881-1951. \$t Ch'uwŏlsaek. **

* Separate different works by period and one space. ** optional

3.3.9 Collaborations: 'No Rule of Three' in 245 \$c

If there are more than three creators in the statement of responsibility, enter under the creator who is principally responsible for the work (1XX). If there is no principal creator, enter the first named creator. Providing 700 access points for other authors is optional. Transcribe each entity in the statement of responsibility, or record [and x others], where x is the number (in English) of remaining authors.

100 1# 변 정욱, \$e author.

100 1# Pyŏn, Chŏng-uk, \$e author.

245 1# 통신 서비스 결합 판매 에 관한 이론적 연구 / \$c 변 정욱, 김 정현, 김 상택,
오 기석, 강 인규.

245 1# T'ongsin sŏbisŭ kyŏrhap p'anmae e kwanhan ironjŏk yŏn'gu /\$c Pyŏn Chŏng-uk,
Kim Chŏng-hyŏn, Kim Sang-t'aek, O Ki-sŏk, Kang In-gyu.

700 1# 김 정현, \$e author.

700 1# Kim, Chŏng-hyŏn, \$e author.

And provide access points for the other three authors.

Or

100 1# 변 정욱, \$e author.

100 1# Pyŏn, Chŏng-uk, \$e author.

245 1# 통신 서비스 결합 판매 에 관한 이론적 연구 / \$c 변 정욱 [and four others].

245 1# T'ongsin sŏbisŭ kyŏrhap p'anmae e kwanhan ironjŏk yŏn'gu /\$c Pyŏn Chŏng-uk
[and four others].

3.3.10 Books with Accompanying Non-print Media

If the accompanying material is substantial, provide 300 \$e for accompanying media (use common terms or terms in carrier type, 3.3) and separate 33X fields with \$3 with a term to designate accompanying materials. If a book contains a substantial number of illustrations, add only another 336 \$a still image \$2 rdacontent.

Provide 006 and 007 for accompanying materials if it is substantial portion

100 1# 강 정연, \$e author.

100 1# Kang, Chŏng-yŏn,\$e author.

245 10 드로잉 트레이닝 : \$b 펜 도구 연습 부터 수준 높은 일러스트레이션 까지 / \$c 강 정연 지음.

24510 Tŭroing t'ŭreining : \$b p'en togu yŏnsŭp put'ŏ sujun nop'un illŏsŭt'ŭreisyŏn kkaji / \$c Kang Chŏng-yŏn chiŭm.

300 ## 339 pages : \$b color illustrations ; \$c 27 cm + \$e 1 CD-ROM (4 3/4 in.)

336 ## \$3 book \$a text \$2 rdacontent

337 ## \$3 book \$a unmediated \$2 rdamedia

338 ## \$3 book \$a volume \$2 rdacarrier

336 ## \$3 CD-ROM \$a computer program \$2 rdacontent

337 ## \$3 CD-ROM \$a computer \$2 rdamedia

338 ## \$3 CD-ROM \$a computer disc \$2 rdacarrier

3.3.11 Reprints

Reprint- Catalog based on reprint. Dates, Type of date in fixed field, 100, 245, 250, 264, 490. Provide call number for original with a.

775 08 \$i Reprint of (manifestation): \$a \$t \$d \$h \$z \$w

(Reprint)

Form of item: r Fixed field date: r, 2011, 1928

245 00 中等 朝鮮語 作文 / \$c 朝漢文 敎員會 編纂 ; 구 자황, 문 혜윤 편.

245 00 Chungdŭng Chosŏnŏ changmun / \$c Cho-Hanmun Kyowŏnhoe p'yŏnch'an ; Ku Cha-hwang, Mun Hye-yun p'yŏn.

264 #1 경기도 광명시 : \$b 경진, \$c 2011.

264 #1 Kyōnggi-do Kwangmyōng-si : \$b Kyōngjin, \$c 2011.

500 ## Reprint: originally published by Cho-Hanmun Kyowōnhoe. Sōul : Ch'angmunsa, 1928, with new interpretation.

775 08 \$i Reprint of (manifestation): \$t 中等 朝鮮語 作文 \$d 서울 : 彰文社, 1928 \$h 2, 4, 227 p. ; 22 cm \$w (OCoLC)40330906

775 08 \$i Reprint of (manifestation): \$t Chungdŭng Chosōnō changmun \$d Sōul : Ch'angmunsa, 1928 \$h 2, 4, 227 p. ; 22 cm \$w (OCoLC)40330906

3.3.12 Commentaries

a. If the commentary is presented as a new work, enter under the AAP for commentator and commentary. (ex. Comprehensive and exhaustive commentary on the ---)

b. If the commentary is simply an edition, treat it as an expression.

(ex. James Joyce's Dubliners : an illustrated edition with annotations)

(Example for a)

100 1# 김 용옥, \$d 1948- \$e author.

100 1# Kim, Yong-ok, \$d 1948- \$e author.

245 10 중용 한글 역주 / \$c 도올 김용옥 지음.

245 10 Chungyong Han'gŭl yōkchu / \$c Tool Kim Yong-ok chiūm.

630 04 中庸.

630 00 Zhong yong.

(Example for b)

Creator is the artist even though about 2/3 of the resource is commentary by Wolhee Choe about the art and thoughts of Ukchin Chang. – English original and Korean translation in the resource (two expressions)

041 ## kor \$a eng \$h eng

100 1# 장 옥진, \$d 1917-1990, \$e artist, \$e author.

100 1# Chang, Uk-chin, \$d 1917-1990, \$e artist, \$e author.

- 245 10 Golden ark : \$b the paintings and thoughts of Ucchin Chang / \$c introduction, commentaries, and translations by Wolhee Choe = 장 옥진 의 그림 과 세계 / 그림 장 옥진, 글 최 월희.
- 245 10 Golden ark : \$b the paintings and thoughts of Ucchin Chang / \$c introduction, commentaries, and translations by Wolhee Choe = Chang Uk-chin ūi kŭrim kwa segye / kŭrim Chang Uk-chin, kŭl Ch'oe Wŏr-hŭi.
- 700 1# 최 월희, \$d 1937- , \$e writer of added commentary, \$e writer of introduction, \$e translator.
- 700 1# Choe, Wolhee, \$d 1937-, \$e writer of commentary, \$e writer of introduction, \$e translator.
- 700 12 장 옥진, \$d 1917-1990. \$t Golden ark.
- 700 12 Chang, Uk-chin, \$d 1917-1990. \$t Golden ark.
- 700 12 \$i Translation of: \$a 장 옥진, \$d 1917-1990. \$t Golden ark. \$l Korean.
- 700 12 \$i Translation of: \$a Chang, Uk-chin, \$d 1917-1990. \$t Golden ark. \$l Korean.

3.3.13 Additions

If the authorized access point for a work (creator if any + preferred title) is identical to the authorized access point for a different work, provide a qualifier such as form, place of publication, date of publication, issuing body, etc. to make the authorized access point of the item being cataloged unique. Provide additions to the item in hand, not the existing record. Use terms from Table 6.1 (6.9.1.3). Provide a reciprocal linking entry if applicable.

(Date): series statement conflicts with other series

<Existing work>	<Item in hand>
100 1# 이 청준, \$e author.	100 1# 이 청준, \$e author.
100 1# Yi, Ch'ŏng-jun, \$e author.	100 1# Yi, Ch'ŏng-jun, \$e author.
245 10 가면 의 꿈 /\$c 지은이 이 청준.	245 10 가면 의 꿈 /\$c 지은이 이 청준.
245 10 Kamyŏn ūi kkum / \$c chiŭni Yi Ch'ŏng-jun.	245 10 Kamyŏn ūi kkum / \$c chiŭni Yi Ch'ŏng-jun.
800 1# 이 청준. \$t Works ; \$v 3. *	800 1# 이 청준. \$t Works. \$f2010 ; \$v 7. *
800 1# Yi, Ch'ŏng-jun. \$t Works ; \$v 3.	800 1# Yi, Ch'ŏng-jun. \$t Works. \$f2010 ; \$v 7.
*v.3 of 이청준 문학전집, 2002, 열림원	v. 7 of 이청준전집, 2011, 문학과 지성사

(Corporate body): title conflicts with title of other work.

<Existing work>

245 10 한류, 아시아를 넘어 세계로

245 10 Hallyu, Asia rül nŏmŏ segye ro

264 #1 서울시 :\$b 한국 문화 사업 교류 재단, \$c 2009.

264 #1 Sŏul-si :\$b Han'guk Munhwa Saŏp Kyoryu Chaedan, \$c 2009.

<Item in hand>

130 0#한류, 아시아를 넘어 세계로 (Taehan Min'guk Kukhoe Tosŏgwan) *

130 0# Hallyu, Asia rül nŏmŏ segye ro (Taehan Min'guk Kukhoe Tosŏgwan)

245 10 한류, 아시아를 넘어 세계로 = \$b The Korean wave / \$c 편집인 고 인철 의회
정보 실장 ; 편집 실무진 김 정란 [and four others].

245 10 Hallyu, Asia rül nŏmŏ segye ro = \$b The Korean wave / \$c P'yŏnjbibin Ko In-ch'ŏl
Ŭihoe Chŏngbo Silchang ; p'yŏnjip silmujin Kim Chŏng-nan [and four others].

264 #1 서울시 :\$b 국회 도서관, \$c 2011.

264 #1 Sŏul-si :\$b Kukhoe Tosŏgwan, \$c 2011.

*Use authorized form as qualifier.

(Content type): If author published a book and the item in hand is an audio-book with same title by the author.

< book>

100 1# 이 상진, \$e author.

100 1# Yi, Sang-jin, \$e author.

245 10 북풍 노래. <made-up title>

245 10 Pukp'ung nŏrae.

<CD>

100 1#이 상진, \$e author.

100 1# Yi, Sang-jin, \$e author.

240 10 북풍 노래. \$s Spoken word

240 10 Pukp'ung nŏrae. \$s Spoken word

245 10 북풍 노래.

245 10 Pukp'ung nŏrae.

3.3.14 Dissertations or Theses

264 #0 (manuscript)

264 #1 (published thesis)

a. Original text - Use 502 for degree, conferred school, and date.

100 1# 鄭容郁, \$e author.

100 1# Chǒng, Yong-uk, \$e author.

245 10 1942-47 년 美國 의 對韓 政策 과 過渡 政府 形態 構想 / \$c 정 용욱.

245 10 1942-47-yǒn Miguk ūi taehan chǒngch'aek kwa kwado chǒngbu hyǒngt'ae kusang /
\$c Chǒng Yong-uk.

264 #0 \$c 2014. Or 264 #1 \$a Sǒul : \$b Sǒul Taehakkyo Taehagwǒn Kuksa Hakkwa, \$c 2014.

502 ## \$b Ph. D. \$c Sǒul Taehakkyo Taehagwǒn Kuksa Hakkwa \$d 1996.

* Cataloger's judgment. Only the date is core.

b. Published thesis - revised version of the author's thesis

Treat as a new work. Provide 500 note.

100 1# Kim, Tong-sik, \$d 1962-

245 10 Pukhan taenam chollyak ui silch'e.

500 ## Originally presented as the author's thesis (doctoral)—Pukhan Taehagwǒn
Taehakkyo, 2013.

3.3.15 Sacred Scriptures

Use the preferred title for the work.

130 0# Bible. \$l Korean. \$s Revised New Korean Standard. \$f 2008.

245 10 뉴 인터프리터 스테디 바이블 : \$b 성경 전서 표준 새 번역 개정판.

245 10 Nyu int'öp'urit'ö sūt'ödi Paibül : \$b Sǒnggyǒng chǒnsǒ p'yojun sae pǒnyök
kaejǒngp'an.

3.3.16 Official Communications

If the resource is an official communication issued by the head of state, etc., the authorized access point is constructed with the title of the official and the preferred title of the work.

110 1# Korea (South). \$b President (1993-1998 : Kim)

240 10 Speeches

245 10 金 泳三 大統領 演說 文集.

245 10 Kim Yŏng-sam Taet'ongnyŏng yŏnsŏl munjip.

3.3.17 Conferences

Names do not need to contain words like 회의, 미팅, 페스티벌, 전시회, 탐험, 경기, 토너먼트, etc. to be a named conference. Drop year and number of the conference from subfield \$a. Retain frequency. If the name of the conference appears in Korean and English, choose Korean if Korean is the official language of the body. If the name does not convey the idea of corporate body, add a qualifier (Conference). Enter the conference subordinately if the name includes the entire name of the higher body (11.2.2.14.6)

Additions: If a location is used (no rule of three; separate with semicolon), use authorized form minus cataloger's note, and substitute comma for parenthesis. If an institution name is used as a location of the conference, use the preferred name for the institution, minus any additions used in the institution's authorized access point.

(Example 1)

111 2#전국 역사학 대회 \$n (53rd : \$d 2010 : \$c Koryŏ Taehakkyo)

111 2# Chŏn'guk Yŏksahak Taehoe \$n (53rd : \$d 2010 : \$c Koryŏ Taehakkyo)

245 10 고려, 조선 시대의 주거와 마을 :\$b 第 53 回 全國 歷史學 大會 考古 學部 發表 資料集.

245 10 Koryŏ, Chosŏn sidae ūi chugŏ wa maül :\$b Che 53-hoe Chŏn'guk Yŏksahak
Taehoe Kogo Hakpu palp'yo charyojip.

(Example 2)

(subordinate body) includes the name of the parent body

110 2# 서울 대학교. \$b 통일 평화 연구원. \$b 학술 회의 \$d (2012 : \$c Seoul, Korea)

110 2# Sŏul Taehakkyo. \$b T'ongil P'yŏnghwa Yŏn'guwŏn. \$b Haksul Hoeüi \$d (2012 : \$c Seoul, Korea)

245 10 북한 주민 통일 의식 과 북한 사회 변동 : \$b 2012 북한 이탈 주민 조사 결과 발표.

245 10 Pukhan chumin t'ongil üisik kwa Pukhan sahoe pyŏndong : \$b 2012 Pukhan it'al chumin chosa kyŏlgwa palp'yo.

3.3.18 Frequently Used Relationship Designators

Work level: author, artist, compiler, and photographer

Expression level: editor, translator, illustrator, writer of added commentary, sponsoring body, issuing body, host institution, degree granting institution

3.4. Textual Printed Serials

By Erica Chang⁴

3.4.1 References

RDA, CONSER Cataloging Manual, CONSER Editing Guide, CONSER RDA core elements, CONSER MARC21 to RDA core elements, CONSER RDA Cataloging checklist, RDA and serials cataloging (Ed Jones. Chicago : ALA, 2013), Provider-neutral E-resource MARC record guide.

These guidelines follow CONSER practice.

3.4.2 CONSER RDA Core Elements

Type: a BLvl: s lang: kor (008), Title (245), parallel title (246 11), minor title change (246 1# \$i), current frequency (310), Description based on note combined with the source of title (588), Latest issue consulted (588), mode of issuance (008), language of expression (008, 041, 546), preferred title for the work (130 or 1XX/240), content type (336), media type (337), carrier type (338), relationship designator (\$e)

Fixed field (008): type: a BLvl: s con:|| fre: a reg: r lang: kor ctry: ko S/L: 0 Desc: i
*codes are examples

Preferred source: title page, cover, caption, masthead, colophon, another source within the resource

ISSN (022): \$a correct \$y incorrect \$z cancelled

Title proper (245 \$a, \$n, \$p): Omit date, number, name that vary and use mark of omission [...] to indicate the omission. Correct obvious typographical errors.

Parallel title (245 \$b): Do not record parallel title in 245 = \$b. Instead, record it in 246 11.

Statement of responsibility (245 \$c): Do not provide if authority record is available or is being created.

⁴ Cataloging Librarian, University of Hawaii

Publication statement (264 #1): Only the first place of publication and publisher are required. Provide date only if first or last issue is available, \$c 1992- , \$c -2008. Supply approximate date if no date is given on the first or last issue, [2009?]-. Omit if date cannot be approximated. Copyright date is not required for serials. Do not omit hierarchy from publisher name.

Extent (300 \$a): Provide \$a for ceased serials in all formats. Always provide carrier term for tangible, continuing non-print serials (ex. CD-ROMS), \$a 11 computer discs. However, providing carrier term for continuing serials in other formats is optional (ex. volumes)

Current frequency (310): Biennial, annual, semiannual, quarterly, weekly, five issues a year, etc.

Numbering (362 1#): If known, always start with “Began with ...”

\$a Began with Che 1-kwŏn che 1-ho (1992-yŏn 3-wŏl).

\$a Began with 1 (2001); ceased with 20 (2005).

If there is whole numbering (t'onggwŏn), use it with equal sign.

\$a Began with Che 1-kwŏn che 1-ho (1992-yŏn 3-wŏl) = t'onggwŏn 1-ho.

If there is only whole numbering and chronological designation, use whole numbering as numeric designation, \$a T'onggwŏn 1-ho (1992-yŏn 3-wŏl). If the 1st issue indicates ‘ch'angganho’ and no other numbering appears and numbering started from 2nd issue, use the numbering inferred from the 2nd issue and record it in brackets. ‘Ch'angganho’ does not go in 362, it goes in 515.

362 1# Began with [Che 1-ho] (1992).

515 ## First issue called “ch'angganho.”

Issuing body (550): Use 550 for complex note, otherwise, RDA prefers multiple 264s.

550 ## \$a Published 1948-1949 by Chosŏn Ŭnhaeng Chosabu ; <1955>- by Han'guk Ŭnhaeng Chosabu. (provide 710 for both entries)

264 11 \$3 1948-1949: \$a Chosŏn Ŭnhaeng Chosabu

264 31 \$3 <1955>-: \$a Han'guk Ŭnhaeng Chosabu

Complexity note (580): Explains complex situation for title changes. \$a Has supplements; odd numbered years have title: Top'yo ro ponŭn yosong t'onggye; and, even numbered years have title: Chiyŏk yŏsŏng t'onggye; and Chiyŏk sŏng inji t'onggye, <2010->

Description based on note (588): Provide even if 1st issue is available. Combine with the source of title.

\$a Description based on: Che 1-kwŏn che 1-ho (1992-yŏn 3-wŏl); title from title page.

Latest issue consulted note (588): \$a Latest issue consulted: Che 3-kwŏn che 1-ho (1995-yŏn 6-wŏl).

Content, media, carrier types (33X) most frequently used:

Print: 336 text \$2 rdacontent, 337 unmediated \$2 rdamedia, 338 volume \$2 rdacarrier

Relationship designators (\$e) most frequently used: issuing body, sponsoring body, host institution, author.

3.4.3 Creator

Person is rarely creator for serials

Corporate body is creator if the resource is about internal directory, policies, operations, collective activities (19.2.1.1). Enter under corporate body in 110 or 111.

110 2# 국가 과학 기술 위원회 (Korea)

110 2# Kukka Kwahak Kisul Wiwŏnhoe (Korea)

245 10 국가 과학 기술 위원회 연감.

245 10 Kukka Kwahak Kisul Wiwŏnhoe yŏn'gam.

Generally, enter under **preferred title** (130 or 245)

245 00 영화 관객 성향 조사.

245 00 Yŏnghwa kwan'gaek sŏnggyang chosa.

3.4.4 Authorized Access Point

When a serial title has the same title as another resource or a similar title, (not only serials, but also other types of resources), a qualifier should be provided to make the title unique. Choices of qualifiers are place, corporate body, date, etc. in parentheses in 130 or 240. Provide a qualifier only to the item in hand.

3.4.5 Different Works with Same Title

245 00 日本 研究. <= Existing title

245 00 Ilbon yŏn'gu

264 #1 Pusan, Korea : #b Pusan Taehakkyo Ilbon Munje Yŏn'guso

130 0# 日本 研究 (Seoul, Korea) <= Newly received title

130 0# Ilbon yŏn'gu (Seoul, Korea) * place used as qualifier

245 10 日本 研究.

245 10 Ilbon yŏn'gu.

264 #1 Sŏul : \$b Koryŏ Taehakkyo Ilbon Yŏn'gu Sent'ŏ

3.4.6 Language Edition (Translation)

Needs uniform title with \$l – use authorized access point of the original language title. Reciprocal linking entry is required.

245 00 한국 문학 번역원. <= Korean edition - original

245 00 Han'guk Munhak Pŏnyŏgwŏn.

775 08 \$i English edition: \$t Han'guk Munhak Pŏnyŏgwŏn. English. LTI Korea newsletter \$w (OCoLC)51557682

130 0# 한국 문학 번역원. \$l English <= English edition - translation

130 0# Han'guk Munhak Pŏnyŏgwŏn. \$l English

245 10 LTI Korea newsletter.

775 08 \$i Korean edition: \$t Han'guk Munhak Pŏnyŏgwŏn \$w (OCoLC)51502324

3.4.7 Language Edition (Simultaneous Editions)

Catalog the same way as a translation, but the authorized access point should be based on language edition received first. Reciprocal linking entry is required.

245 00 韓國 傳統 造景 學會 誌. <= Korean edition (received first)
 245 00 Han'guk Chǒnt'ong Chogyǒng Hakhoe chi.
 775 08 \$i English edition: \$t Han'guk Chǒnt'ong Chogyǒng Hakhoe chi. English. Journal
 of Korean Institute of Traditional Landscape Architecture. \$b International
 edition \$w (DLC) 2011235482 \$w (OCoLC)542902145

130 0# 韓國 傳統 造景 學會 誌. \$l English <= (English edition)
 130 0# Han'guk Chǒnt'ong Chogyǒng Hakhoe chi. \$l English.
 245 10 Journal of Korean Institute of Traditional Landscape Architecture.
 250 ## International edition.
 775 08 \$i Korean edition: \$t Han'guk Chǒnt'ong Chogyǒng Hakhoe chi \$x 1738-236X \$w
 (OCoLC)62298398

3.4.8 Title Change

Major vs minor title change: If any addition, deletion, or change of words occurs within the first 5 words of title, consider it a major change, and create a new record. Use 780, 785 with indicators 00, rather than using \$i.

245 00 한국 도시 연감. <= Earlier title
 245 00 Han'guk tosi yǒn'gam.
 264 #1 [Seoul] : \$b 내무부
 264 #1 [Seoul] : \$b Naemubu * If the date of the first and last issues are not available, do
 not give 264 \$c.
 785 00 \$t Han'guk tosi t'onggye \$w (DLC) 2011212081 \$w (OCoLC)746930538
 245 00 한국 도시 통계. <= Later title
 245 00 Han'guk tosi t'onggye.
 264 #1 [Seoul] : \$b 행정 안전부 지역 발전 정책국 지역 경제과
 264 #1 [Seoul] : \$b Haengjǒng Anjoñbu Chiyök Palchǒn Chǒngch'aekku Chiyök
 Kyǒngjekwa
 780 00 \$t Han'guk tosi yǒn'gam \$w (DLC) 78647772 \$w (OCoLC)4507495

3.4.9 Reprints

Cataloging is based on the reprint, but the information about the original publication is recorded in Leader/07:s, 008/06 (DtSt), 008/07-14 (Dates). Also provide information about the original in a linking entry field. The numbering in the record reflects the numbering for the reprint.

Note: If the reproduction is in the same format as original (print), use 775, if different format (microform or online, etc.), use 776.

245 00 송화강. <= Original work
245 00 Songhwagang.
264 #1 哈尔滨市 : \$b 松花江杂志社 , \$c 1959-
264 #1 Ha'erbin Shi : \$b Songhuajiang za zhi she, \$c 1959-
362 1# Began with 총 제 1 기 (1959, 5, 20).
362 1# Began with ch'ong che 1-ki (1959, 5, 20).
775 08 \$i Reprinted as: \$t Songhwagang \$d Soul-si : Söuöl Ch'ulp'ansa, 2006 \$h 18
volumes : illustrations ; 25 cm \$w (OCOLC)262681953

245 00 송화강. <= Reprint
245 00 Songhwagang.
264 #1 서울시 : \$b 서우얼 출판사, \$c 2006.
264 #1 Söul-si : \$b Söuöl Ch'ulp'ansa, \$c 2006.
300 ## 18 volumes : \$b illustrations ; \$c 25 cm
362 1# Began with 제 1 권; ceased with 총목차.
362 1# Began with che 1-kwön; ceased with ch'ongmokch'a.
775 08 \$i Reprint of (manifestation): \$t Songhwagang \$d Ha'erbin Shi : Songhuajiang za
zhi she \$m Began with ch'ong che 1-ki (1959, 5, 20) \$n Monthly \$w
(OCOLC)68004436

3.4.10 Supplements, Accompanying Materials

1. If supplements have their own numbering and are themselves continuing resources, catalog them separately with a reciprocal linking field in each record.

In 770 and 772 fields, 08 \$i is not needed because the tag displays the note, "Has supplement" or "Supplement to." Use indicators 0# in both records.

245 00 한국 신문 방송 연감. <= Parent serial
 245 00 Han'guk sinmun pangsong yŏn'gam.
 770 0# \$t 한국 언론인 인명 사전 \$w (DLC) 2011211953 \$w (OCoLC)713374979
 770 0# \$t Han'guk ōllonin inmyŏng sajŏn \$w (DLC) 2011211953 \$w (OCoLC) 713374979

245 00 한국 언론인 인명 사전. <= (Supplement serial)
 245 00 Han'guk ōllonin inmyŏng sajŏn.
 772 0# \$t 한국 신문 방송 연감 \$w (DLC) 80641588 \$w (OCoLC)6836381
 772 0# \$t Han'guk sinmun pangsong yŏn'gam \$w (DLC) 80641588 \$w (OCoLC)6836381

2. If supplements use the main serial numbering, give a note in 525 or 300 \$e

245 00 영화 관객 성향 조사
 245 00 Yŏnghwa kwan'gaek sŏnghyang chosa.
 300 ## volumes ; \$c 28 cm + \$e CD-ROMs (sound, color ; 4 3/4 in.) * CD-ROM accompanies each issue.
 525 ## Some issues accompanied by a supplement: 영화 관객 성향 조사 부록 CD.

3. A special issue of serial issue – catalog as monograph with 730 for the main serial title.

In the main serial record, no indication about the special issue is necessary. Make a note in 500.

245 00 Incheon : \$b 동 아시아 랜드마크 로 높이 날다. <= (Supplement record)
 245 00 Incheon : \$b Tong Asia laendŭmak'ŭ ro nop'i nalda.
 300 ## 193 pages : \$b color illustrations ; \$c 23 cm *no period unless a series statement follows.
 500 ## “신 동아 2009 년 6 월호 별책 부록.”
 730 0# 신 동아.
 730 0# Sin tonga.

3.4.11 Relationship Designators

710 2# 고려 대학교. \$b 일본 연구 센터, \$e issuing body.
 710 2# Koryŏ Taehakkyo. Ilbon Yŏn'gu Sent'ŏ, \$e issuing body.

3.5. Moving Image Materials

By Erica Chang⁵

3.5.1 Reference

RDA, Online Audiovisual Catalogers (OLAC) web site at www.olacinc.org

3.5.2 RDA Cataloging for DVD-Video in Monograph Format

Bold-faced information represents sample values.

Create a new record if there are differences in the following areas: black and white vs. color, VHS vs. DVD, publication date, dubbed vs. subtitled, different edition, video characteristics, broadcast standard, presentation format, etc.

007 v \$b d \$d c \$e v \$f a \$g i \$h z \$i q multicolored, DVD, Sound on medium, Videodisc as medium for sound, Other dimensions, Surround sound

Fixed field: Type: **g** BLvl: **m** DtSt: **s** TMat: **v**

DtSt: Use ‘**p**’ if the DVD contents are unchanged from the original film release. Use ‘**s**’ if the DVD has supplementary content, subtitles, closed captioning, etc. because it is treated as a new edition. Use ‘**t**’ if you record the copyright date in Date 2 and publication date in Date 1, even if both dates are the same.

Time: Only for the main feature, not for supplementary content. Record time in minutes. **120**

Lang: Original sound track or dubbed language sound track **kor**

Ctry: Country of publication. **ko**

020 ## ISBN if present, 10 or 13 digits

024 3# \$a 8809090262983 EAN. 13 digits. Korean DVDs carry EANs below the barcodes. They start with 880.

⁵ Cataloging Librarian, University of Hawaii

024 8# \$a che 2007-KDVD0108-ho Other standard identifier

028 42 \$a SPD 2074 \$b Spectrum DVD Videorecording number is usually found on the spine of the container. \$a number \$b publisher. * \$b should match 264 \$b.

Many Korean DVDs do not carry this number.

033 ## \$a 20100910 \$b 7904 \$c S478 \$p Kungnip Minsok Kugagwŏn

*7904 : South Korea S478: Seoul

\$a formatted date/time (yyyymmdd(hhmm)) of capture or broadcast \$b geographic classification area code \$c geographic classification subarea code associated with the item \$p place of event

Provide if applicable. (Related field: 518)

041 1# \$a kor \$j eng \$j kor

\$a language of original sound track code and dubbed sound track

\$h language of original sound track; use if a different code is given in \$a

\$j language of subtitles

First indicator is usually 1 if there are multiple sound tracks, subtitles, dubbing. Subfield \$a should match Lang in fixed field.

043 ## \$a a-ko--- Use for non-fiction film.

046 ## \$k 2004 Year of original release or production. For production over multiple years, use \$k for beginning year and \$l for ending year.

130 0# Authorized access point

- a. If a title conflicts with another resource entered under the same title, use 'Motion picture', or 'Television program' in parentheses in 130. (e.g., for book vs. DVD)
- b. If a motion picture is released with a different title in the same language, use the authorized access point for the original title.

130 0# T'aegŭkki hwinallimyŏ (Motion picture) *original film title

245 10 Tae guk gi = \$b The brotherhood of war. *DVD title

245 00 Hanbando /\$c chejak, KnJ Ent'ŏt'einmŏnt'ŭ ; kamdok, Kang U-sŏk ; kakpon, Kim Hŭi-jae, Yi Hyo-ch'ŏl ; p'ŭrodyusŏ, Chŏng Sŏn-yŏng.

Moving image works are usually entered under title. For statement of responsibility, only director, production company, producer, screenwriter of the original motion picture should be put in 245 \$c.

For a video containing multiple works without a collective title, transcribe multiple works in 245 00 \$a 1st title /\$c statement of responsibility. 2nd title / statement of responsibility. Provide **730 02 \$i Container of (work): \$a** AAP for each individual work or for the first or significant work.

246 1# \$i Title on container: \$a

246 1# \$i Also known as: \$a

246 1# \$i English title: \$a

246 31 \$a Parallel title

246 30 \$a Portion of title

Moving image works often go by a number of titles.

250 ## Director's cut Information for various versions.

257 ## Korea (South) \$2 naf Country of original production, not country of publication. If a Korean motion picture is produced as a DVD in China, record Korea (South) in 257.

264 #1 Söul : \$b Spectrum DVD, \$c 2010.

If a publisher name appears in both English and Korean (ex. Spectrum DVD or Süp'ekt'üröm Tibidi), prefer the form of publisher name given in the same source as the title proper. For example, if the title is taken from the disc label and the publisher's name appears only in English on the disc label, record the English form. If both forms appear on the label, record the form that is in the same language as the title proper.

264 \$c #0 production date **#1** publication date **#2** distribution date **#3** manufacture date **#4** copyright date. Publication date is required, and if not present will need to be inferred, usually from the copyright date. If copyright date is also provided, use 't' in DtSt in fixed field.

300 ## 1 videodisc (approximately 120 min.)

1 videodisc (29 min.; 40 min.) for two works in a resource.

Use the carrier term from 3.3.1.3 and duration. Spell-out words except hr., min.

300 ## \$b sound, or silent, color, black and white, or color with black and white sequences)

300 ## \$c 4 3/4 in.

306 ## hhmss \$a 020000 (related fields: time in the fixed field, 300 \$a, 500)

336 ## two-dimensional moving image \$b tdi \$2 rdacontent

337 ## video \$b v \$2 rdamedia

338 ## videodisc \$b vd \$2 rdacarrier

340 ## \$b 4 3/4 in. dimensions

344 ## digital \$b optical \$g surround or stereo \$h Dolby \$2 rda

344 ## \$h Dolby Digital 5.1

Sound characteristics \$a type of recording \$g configuration of playback channels

\$h special playback characteristics

345 is used only for projected films.

346 ## laser optical \$b NTSC or PAL \$2 rda

Video characteristics \$a video format \$b broadcast standard

347 ## video file \$b DVD video \$e region 3 or all regions \$2 rda

Digital file characteristics \$a file type \$b encoding format \$e regional encoding

380 ## Motion picture or Television program or Documentary film

500 ## 1.8:1 widescreen

Projection characteristics of moving image \$a presentation format

546 ## Korean, with optional subtitles in English and Korean.

518 ## \$o Recorded \$d 2010 September 10 \$p Kungnip Minsok Kugagwŏn, Seoul

\$d date of event; year, month, day \$o other event information \$p place of event

511 1# An Sŏng-gi, Kim Hye-su. Names of cast members.

508 ## Cinematography, Chōng Il-sōng; music, Kim Su-ch'öl; editor, Pak Sun-dōk.
Cinematography, editor, music, etc.

500 ## Title from disc label.

Source of title is mandatory if the title is not taken from the title frame or title screen.

500 ## Originally released as a motion picture in 2010. (related fields: 046, 257)

500 ## Special features include interviews, music video, trailer, and photo gallery.

500 ## Based on the novel of the same title by Cho Chōng-nae.

(related field: 700 \$a \$t)

500 ## Anamorphic wide screen 2.35:1 or 1.85:1, full screen (1.33:1), letterboxed

Aspect ratio

505 0# Disc 1: Movie -- Disc 2: Documentary -- Disc 3: Special feature.

Formatted contents for multiple discs with individual titles.

520 ## Brief objective summary

521 ## For age 15 and older or For all.

Audience note

586 ## Award

6XX for Fiction DVD

651 #0 Korea (South) \$x History \$y Yōsun Rebellion, 1948 \$v Drama. Topic

The two genre headings below are mandatory.

655 #7 Feature films. \$2 lcft or Short films Always provide for feature films

655 #7 Fiction films. \$2 lcft Always provide for fiction films

655 #7 Fiction television programs. \$2 lcft Always provide for fiction television programs

Additionally provide any appropriate form/genre headings from Library of Congress Genre/Form Thesaurus (LCGFT) for moving images.

655 #7 Film adaptations. \$2 lcgft

655 #7 Detective and mystery films or Historical films. \$2 lcgft Major genre term

6XX for non-fiction DVD

650 #0 Murder \$z Korea (South) Topic

655 #7 Non-fiction films. \$2 lcgft Always provide for non-fiction films

655 #7 Non-fiction television programs. \$2 lcgft Always provide for television programs.

Additionally provide any appropriate form/genre headings from LCGFT

Documentary films, documentary television programs, Historical films, etc.

700 1# Im, Kwŏn-t'aek, \$e film director.

700 1# Chŏng, Sŏn-yŏng, \$e producer.

700 1# Kim, Hŭi-jae, \$e screenwriter.

700 1# Kim, Hye-su, \$d 1970- \$e actor.

700 1# \$i Motion picture adaptation of (work): \$a Cho, Chŏng-nae, \$d 1943- \$t T'aebaek sanmaek.

710 2# Kim Ki-dŏk P'illŭm (Firm), \$e production company.

If a DVD contains more than one work, provide analytical entries for all works in 730 02.

730 02 \$i Container of (work) :\$a preferred title.

3.5.3 RDA Cataloging for Carriers Other Than DVD-Video

Videocassette

007 v \$b f \$d c \$e b \$f a \$g h \$h o \$i m multicolored, VHS, Sound on medium, Videotape as medium for sound, ½ in. dimensions, Monaural sound

300 ## 1 videocassette (35 min.) : \$b sound, color ; \$c 13 mm

336 ## two-dimensional moving image \$b tdi \$2 rdacontent

337 ## video \$b v \$2 rdamedia

338 ## videocassette \$b vf \$2 rdacarrier
340 ## \$b ½ in.
344 ## analog \$b magnetic \$g mono \$2 rda no 345, 347
346 ## VHS \$b NTSC \$2 rda

Blu-ray

007v \$b d \$d c \$e s \$f a \$g i \$h z \$i s
300 ## 1 videodisc (50 min.) : \$b sound, color ; \$c 4 ¾ in.
336 ## two-dimensional moving image \$b tdi \$2 rdacontent
337 ## video \$b v \$2 rdamedia
338 ## videodisc \$b vd \$2 rdacarrier
340 ## \$b 4 ¾ in.
344 ## digital \$b optical \$g stereo \$2 rda
347 ## video file \$b Blu-ray \$e all regions \$2 rda

Streaming video

007 v \$b z \$d c \$e z \$f a \$g z \$h z \$i z 007 \$a c \$b r \$d c \$e n \$f a
300 ## 1 online resource (45 min.) : \$b sound, color
336 ## two-dimensional moving image \$b tda \$c rdacontent
337 ## computer \$b c \$2 rdamedia
338 ## online resource \$b cr \$2 rdacarrier
344 ## digital \$g stereo \$2 rda
346 ## \$b NTSC \$2 rda
347 ## streaming video file \$b QuickTime \$2 rda

3.5.4 Example

Type: g ELvl: i Sree: d Lang: kor BLvl: m Time: 112 Ctry: ko
Desc: i TMat: v Tech: l DtSt: s Dates: 2007

007 v \$b d \$d c \$e v \$f a \$g I \$h z \$i q
040 ## HUH \$b eng \$e rda \$c HUH
024 3# 8809090262983

024 8# che 2007-KDVD0108-ho
041 1# kor \$j eng \$j kor
043 ## a-ko---
046 ## \$k 2006
245 00 극락도 살인 사건 /\$c 각본, 감독, 김 한민 ; 제작사, (주) 케이디 미디어 ;
프로듀서, 최 두영, 최 지용.
245 00 Kǔngnakto sarin sakǒn /\$c kakpon, kamdok, Kim Han-min ; chejaksa, (chu) K'eidi
Midiö ; p'ürodyusö, Ch'oe Tu-yöng, Ch'oe Chi-yong.
246 1# At head of title in container: \$a Misüt'eri ch'urigük
257 ## Korea (South) \$2 naf
264 #1 [Seoul] : \$b chejak, (Chu) K'eidi Midiö : \$b konggüp, (Chu) Emk'ei P'ikch'yösü,
\$c 2007.
300 ## 2 videodiscs (112 min.) :\$b sound, color ; \$c 4 ¾ in.
336 ## two-dimensional image \$b tdi \$2 rdacontent
337 ## video \$b v \$2 rdamedia
338 ## videodisc \$b vd \$2 rdacarrier
340 ## \$b 4 ¾ in.
344 ## digital \$g surround \$h Dolby \$2 rda
344 ## \$h Dolby digital 5.1
346 ## laser optical \$b NTSC \$2 rda
347 ## video file \$b DVD video \$e region 3 \$2 rda
380 ## Motion picture.
500 ## 2.35:1 widescreen.
500 ## Title from disc label.
546 ## In Korean, with optional subtitles in English and Korean.
511 1# 박 해일, 박 솔미, 성 지루, 최 주봉.
511 1# Pak Hae-il, Pak Sol-mi, Söng Chi-ru, Ch'oe Chu-bong.
508 ## cinematography, 김 용흥 ; editor, 신 민경 ; music, 방 준석.
508 ## cinematography, Kim Yong-hǔng ; editer, Sin Min-gyöng ; music, Pang Chun-sök.
500 ## Originally released as a motion picture in 2006.
500 ## Disc 1 has optional commentary with director, producer and actors.
500 ## Disc 2 contains special features (114 min.) including: making of the movie, film of
photoshoot and trailer.

520 ## In 1986, a group of men are fishing while listening to a live broadcast of the Asian Games. One of their poles snags on a big clamper, and the owner pulls on it delightedly. The decomposed head of a guy lands in the kettle where ramen noodles are boiling.

521 ## For age 15 and older.

650 #0 Murder \$x Investigation \$v Drama.

650 #0 Serial murders \$z Korea (South) \$v Drama.

655 #7 Feature films. \$2 lcgft

655 #7 Fiction films. \$2 lcgft

655 #7 Detective and mystery films. \$2 lcgft

700 1# 김 한민, \$e director, \$e screenwriter.

700 1# Kim, Han-min, \$e director, \$e screenwriter.

700 1# 최 두영, \$e producer.

700 1# Ch'oe, Tu-yŏng, \$e producer.

700 1# 최 지용, \$e producer.

700 1# Ch'oe, Chi-yong, \$e producer.

700 1# 박 해일, \$d 1977- \$e actor.

700 1# Pak, Hae-il, \$d 1977- \$e actor.

700 1# 박 솔미, \$e actor.

700 1# Pak, Sol-mi, \$e actor.

700 1# 성 지루, \$e actor.

700 1# Sŏng, Chi-ru, \$e actor.

700 1# 최 주봉, \$e actor.

700 1# Ch'oe, Chu-bong, \$e actor.

7102# 케이디 미디어, \$e production company.

710 2# K'eidi Midiö, \$e production company.

710 2# 엠케이 픽처스, \$e sponsoring body.

710 2# Emk'ei P'ikch'yösü, \$e sponsoring body.

3.6. Sound Recordings

By Eunseung Oh⁶

3.6.1 References

RDA, MLA (Music Library Association) best practices for music cataloging: using RDA and MARC21 (MLA BP) (<http://goo.gl/WQ9UC4>)

MLA provisional best practices for using LCMPT (<http://goo.gl/K2xAiS>)

Types of Compositions for Use in Music Uniform Titles (<http://goo.gl/qy5aur>)

Due to space limitations, non-Latin fields are not included in the examples below.

Capitalization: Do not capitalize mediums of performance (ex. piano, kayagŭm) and numeric designation of a musical work (ex. no., op.)

Abbreviations: Use abbreviations for numeric designations and durations (ex. no., op., hr., min.). Use ‘stereo’ or ‘mono’. They are not considered abbreviations, therefore they do not end in a period.

3.6.2 Musical Sound Recordings

007 s \$b d \$d f \$e s (or ‘m’ for mono) **\$g g \$h n \$i n \$k m \$m e \$n d** < -- CD

007 s \$b s \$d l \$e s (or ‘m’ for mono) **\$g j \$h l \$i c \$k p \$m c \$n e** < -- cassette

006 m (form of material), **o** (form of item), **h** (type of computer file) < -- streaming audio requires 006 (computer file) and two 007s (electronic, sound recording) below.

007 c \$b r \$d n \$e n \$f s

007 s \$b z \$d z \$e s (or **m, q, s, u, z**) **\$f n \$g n \$h n \$i n \$m e \$n d** (or **a, b, e, u, z**)

Fixed field (008): Type: j (musical sound recording) **Lang: kor** or **zxx** (no sung or spoken text)

DtSt: s (single date), **r** (reissues of sound recordings in the same or different medium) **Comp:**

fm (folk music, folk songs), **pp** (popular music), **mu** (multiple forms) related field: **047**

⁶ Korean Technical Services Librarian, Stanford University

Preferred source of information

Prefer the disc label over the container or program notes. If information is taken from outside of the resource, bracket it.

Sound recording issue numbers (028 02)

MLA BP recommends providing identifiers for a set and for individual parts. Give each identifier with qualification. If there are more than three identifiers for individual parts, give a span. Transcribe the issue number as it appears in \$a. The 028 \$b (publisher) usually matches 264 \$b.

028 02 \$a SYNCD-035 \$b Sinnara \$q (set)

028 02 \$a SYNCD-036 \$b Sinnara \$q (disc 1)

028 02 \$a SYNCD-037 \$b Sinnara \$q (disc 2)

028 02 \$a SYNCD-035-SYNCD-039 \$b Sinnara

Provide other identifiers if available. ex. ISBNs (020), UPCs (024 1#) and EANs (024 3#) which are 13-digit numbers starting with 880.

Date/time and place of an event (033 00)

Place and time that the music is recorded

033 00 \$a 199303-- \$b 7904 \$c S478 \$b and \$c are country and city LC classification number \$b 7904 – South Korea, \$c S478 – Seoul. (related field: 518)

041 ## \$d kor \$g eng \$d sung or spoken text, \$e librettos, lyrics, \$g program notes

Form of musical composition code (047 ##)

Record 047 when code ‘**mu**’ is used in ‘comp’ in fixed field. (ex. **bd**: ballads, **ff**: folk music (including folk songs, etc., **cb**: chants, other, **op**: operas, **pp**: popular music, **sg**: songs)

047 ## fm \$a cb

Title (245)

Title proper (245 \$a)

Transcribe the title as it appears on the source of information. If a collective title appears on the container but not on the disc label, record the collective title.

245 00 30-yōndae kiak hapchu sōnjip.

245 00 Han obaengnyōn, Kūmgangsan t'aryōng.

Parallel title (245 \$b, 246 31)

The parallel title can be taken from any place within the resource without bracketing it.

100 10 Kim, Su-ch'ō, \$d 1957- \$e composer, \$e arranger, \$e performer.

240 10 Instrumental music. \$k Selections. \$f 2004

245 10 Pullim sori = \$b Sound of invocation / \$c Kimsoochul.

246 31 Sound of invocation

Other title information (246 1# \$i)

Other title information may be recorded in 246 if considered important.

246 1# \$i Subtitle on container: \$a Buddhist meditation music of Korea

Statement of responsibility (245 \$c)

Composers (persons, families or corporate bodies) responsible for the creation of a work are recorded in the 245 field. Performers, narrators, presenters and performing groups are given in 511 or 505. If, however, the role of a performer or performing group goes beyond mere performance (as is true for popular, jazz, and world music), then record the performer or group in 245 \$c.

100 1# Yun, Yun-sōk, \$d 1937- \$e composer, \$e performer. *creator

245 10 Ajaeng sanjo / \$c Yun Yun-sōk.

511 0# Yun Yun-sōk, ajaeng ; Kim Ch'ōng-man, changgo.

245 00 Kyōnggi sinawi wa Namdo sinawi. *no creator

Publication statement (264)

Name of Publisher (264 #1 \$b)

If an audio recording bears both the name of the publishing company and the name of a subdivision of that company or a trade name or brand name used by that company (i.e., a “label” for audio recordings), give the name of the subdivision or trade name or brand name as the name of the publisher.

264 #1 [Seoul] : \$b Sinnara, \$c 1993.

(On the label: Sinnara, (chu) K'ing Rek'odŭ)

Date of publication (264 #1 \$c)

Do not substitute a phonogram or copyright date for the date of publication. MLA BP says to record the phonogram date in separate 264 if available even if it is the same as publication date. Record © or the word ‘phonogram’. Date Type in 008 should be ‘t’ if providing both dates.

008 DtSt: t Dates: 2012, 2012

264 #1 [Seoul] : \$b Sinnara, \$c 2012.

264 #4 \$c ©2012

Extent: type of unit, duration (300 \$a, 306), dimensions (300 \$c)

Record the carrier type or a term in common usage such as CD or compact disc. Record duration as it appears on the resource if readily available. Provide 306 by converting the time to hr., min., sec. RDA uses metric measurements but LC uses inches (with abbreviation) to record dimensions for audio discs.

300 ## 1 audio disc (65 min., 15 sec.) ; \$c 4 3/4 in.

<- CD

306 ## 010515

300 ## 2 audio discs (98 min.) ; \$c 3/4 in.

306 ## 004615 \$a 005145

300 ## 1 audiocassette (87 min.) : \$b 3 3/4 ips, mono ; \$c 7 1/4 x 3 1/2 in., 1/4 in. tape.

← cassette

300 ## 1 online resource (1 audio file) :\$b digital, stereo

← streaming audio

856 40 \$3 1 streaming audio file (mono or stereo) \$u http://

Content/Media/Carrier type (336, 337, 338)

Record multiple terms by repeating the fields.

336 performed music \$b prm \$2 rdacontent ← CD

337 audio \$b s \$2 rdamedia

338 audio disc \$b sd \$2 rdacarrier

336 performed music \$b prm \$2 rdacontent ← cassette

337 audio \$b s \$2 rdamedia

338 audiocassette \$b ss \$2 rdacarrier

336 performed music \$b prm \$2 rdacontent ← streaming audio

337 computer \$b c \$a audio \$b s \$2 rdamedia

338 online resource \$b cr \$2 rdacarrier

Sound and Digital characteristics (344, 347)

Do not add “Compact disc” note in 500. Instead, use 344, 347 fields.

344 \$a digital \$g stereo \$2 rda *other possible value for \$g - **\$g mono \$g surround**

← CD

347 \$a audio file \$b CD audio \$2 rda

344 \$a analog \$g stereo \$h Dolby-B encoded \$2 rda ← cassette

344 \$a digital \$g stereo ← streaming audio

347 \$a audio file \$b MP3 \$2 rda

Medium of performance (382 01)

Use controlled vocabulary from the “Provisional best practices for using LCMPT” \$a medium: voice (or kayagŭm, kŏmun'go, haegŭm, changgo, tanso, etc.) \$n number of medium \$s total numb of medium \$2 lcmt

\$a voice \$a kŏmun'go \$n 1 \$a \$n 1 \$s 2 \$2 lcmt

Notes (5XX)

Source of title note (500): MLA routinely supplies this element

Nature of content (500)

Language note (546, 500): MLA routinely record language.

546: primary language content

500: accompanying text, provide just before 505.

Performers, narrators and presenters (511 0#): name, function/instrument

Place and date of capture (518): \$o other event information \$p specific institution city \$d year, month, day, time. Remixing information is not as important as capture information.

Contents note (505)

500 ## Title from disc label.

500 ## Folk music.

546 ## Sung in Korean.

511 0# Paek Hye-suk, kayagŭm ; Pak Yŏng-ho, taegŭm ; Yun Mun-suk, haegŭm ; changgu, Yi Tu-wŏn.

518 ## \$o Recorded \$d 2012 October 10-12 \$p Hoon Studio, Seoul.

500 ## Lyrics and program notes in English inserted in container.

505 00 \$t Sae t'aryŏng \$g (7:50) -- \$t Changsŭng t'aryŏng \$g (3:46) -- \$t Samgo ch'oryŏ \$g (16:08).

505 00 \$g Disc 1. \$t Pullim sori ka \$g (7:55) – \$t Pullim sori na \$g (6:07) -- \$g Disc 2. \$t Yasang \$g (4:55) -- \$t Hoesang \$g (6:47) -- * the rest are omitted due to space limitations.

Access points (1XX, 7XX)

Creators and added creators are recorded in 1XX and 7XX fields. Contributors are recorded in 7XX fields.

Commonly used relationship designators for creators: composer, adapter. Commonly used relationship designators for contributors: performer, vocalist, instrumentalist, singer, conductor, writer of accompanying materials, narrator, presenter, arranger of music.

100 1# Yun, Yun-sök, \$d 1937- \$e composer, \$e performer.

700 1# Kim, Ch'öng-man, \$d 1946- \$e instrumentalist.

(For this example, the performer function as a creator since the performance of sanjo requires significant creativity and improvisation)

Compilations

Compilations by one creator

A compilation is named with the creator and the preferred title or conventional collective title. For the complete works of a composer in various forms, use “Works” in 240. For complete works of a composer in one form, use a collective title by broad medium, by specific medium, or by single type. For broad medium, use Chamber music, Choral music, Instrumental music, Keyboard music, Vocal music. For a specific medium, use a term from LCSH (ex. Ajaeng music, Kayagŭm music, Haegŭm music, etc.). For incomplete works of a composer in various forms, use “Works. \$k Selections” in 240 field or in 700 \$t.

For incomplete works of a composer in a single form, add “Selections” to a collective title by broad medium, by specific medium, or by single type. Conventional collective titles in music are listed at “Types of Compositions for Use in Music Uniform Titles”. If the appropriate term is not there, use the LCSH genre/form term.

If there is a collective title in 245, use 505 to bring out the titles of the individual works. Regardless of whether or not there is a collective title, an added access point for the 1st work or predominant work is required. Add access points for all works and performers if feasible.

100 1# Hwang, Pyöng-gi, \$d 1936- \$e composer, \$e performer.

240 10 Works. \$k Selections

245 10 Hwang Pyöng-gi chakp'umjip. \$n che-3 = Hwang Byung-ki masterpieces. \$n vol. 3.

100 1# Hwang, Pyöng-gi, \$d 1936- \$e composer, \$e performer.

240 10 Kayagŭm music. \$k Selections. \$f 1974 *one medium. \$f for breaking conflict with other work

245 10 Ch'imhyangmu / \$c Hwang Pyōng-gi kayagŭm moŭmjip. *collective title
511 1# Hwang Pyōng-gi, kayagŭm ; An Hye-ran, changgo.

505 0# Sup -- Pom.

700 1 \$i An, Hye-ran, \$e instrumentalist.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Hwang, Pyōng-gi, \$d 1936- \$t Sup.

*1st access point is required

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Hwang, Pyōng-gi, \$d 1936- \$t Pom. * optional

Compilations by more than one creator

The compilation is named by its preferred title, not by a performer.

245 00 Sanjo kihaeng. * collective title

511 1# Han Chu-hwan, taeg ŭm ; Pang T'ae-gun, hojok ; Han Pom-su, t'ungso.

505 00 \$t Taegŭm sanjo /\$r Han Chu-hwan -- \$t Hojök sanjo / \$r Pang T'ae-gŭn --
\$t T'ungso sanjo / \$r Han Pöm-su.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Han, Chu-hwan. \$t Taegŭm sanjo.

*1st access point is required

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Pang, T'ae-gŭn. \$t Hojök sanjo.

700 12 \$i Container of (work): \$a Han, Pöm-su. \$t T'ungso sanjo.

3.6.3 Non-Musial Sound Recordings

Fixed field: **Rec_Type:** i (non-musical sound recording)

Content/Media/Carrier type (336, 337, 338)

(Audiobook on compact disc)

336 spoken word \$b spw \$s rdacontent

337 audio \$b s \$2 rdamedia

338 audio disc \$b sd \$2 rdacarrier

(A compact disc with sounds of animals)

336 sounds \$b snd \$2 rdacontent

337 audio \$b s \$2 rdamedia

338 audio disc \$b sd \$2 rdacarrier

Notes (5XX)

Language note (546,500): optional. Combine with 041 field

Performer, narrator and presenter (511)

Artistic and/or technical credit (508)

Place and date of capture (518)

Contents note (505)

Summary of content (520)

Commonly used relationship designators for creators: author, interviewer, interviewee

Commonly used relationship designators for contributors: performer, narrator

3.6.4 Example

Type: j ELvl: I Lang: kor BLvl: m Comp: fm AccM: bdhk Ctry: ko Part: n TrAr: n

Desc: I FMus: n DtSt: t Dates: 2003, 2003

007 s \$b d \$d f \$e u \$f n \$g g \$h n \$i n \$j m \$k m \$l n \$m e \$n d

040 ## HUH \$b eng \$e rda \$c HUH

028 02 KICP-066 \$b Kungnip Munhwajae Yŏn'guso

041 0# \$d kor \$e kor \$g eng \$g kor

043 ## a-kr--- \$a a-ko---

245 00 강원도 민요 = \$b Kangweon-do minyo, folksongs of Gangweon province.

245 00 Kangwŏn-do minyo = \$b Kangweon-do minyo, folksongs of Gangweon province.

246 31 Kangweon-do minyo, folksongs of Gangweon province

264 #1 서울시 : \$b 국립 문화재 연구소, \$c 2003.

264 #1 Sŏul-si : \$b Kungnip Munhwajae Yŏn'guso, \$c 2003.

264 #4 \$c ©2003

300 1 audio disc ; \$c 4 3/4 in. + \$e 1 booklet (22 pages : illustrations ; 12 cm).

306 ## 000712 \$a 000047 \$a 000116 \$a 000035 \$a 000054 \$a 000050 \$a 001147

*The rest are omitted due to the space limitations.

336 ## performed music \$b prm \$2 rdacontent

336 ## text \$b txt \$2 rdacontent

337 ## audio \$b s \$2 rdamedia

337 ## unmediated \$b n \$2 rdamedia

338 ## audiodisc \$b sd \$2 rdacarrier

338 ## volume \$b nc \$2 rdacarrrier

344 ## digital \$2 rda

347 ## audio files \$b CD audio \$2 rda

490 1# Korean traditional music collection = \$a 국립 문화재 연구소 소장 자료 시리즈 ; \$v 27

490 1# Korean traditional music collection = \$a Kungnip Munhwajae Yŏn'guso sojang charyo sirijŭ ; \$v 27

500 ## Title from disc label.

546 ## Sung in Korean.

511 0# Kim Nan-hong, ch'ang ; kim Kye-sŏn, taegŭm, kayagŭm, changgo.

518 ## \$o Recorded \$p Unsan-ni, Myŏngju-gun, Kangwŏn-do, Korea \$d 1963 August 20-29.

500 ## Program notes by Kim Hye-jŏng in Korean, with English translation by Haeiman in accompanying booklet in container.

505 00 \$g Disc 1. \$t Kangnung sijip sari \$g (7:12) -- \$t Arirang \$g (00:47) -- \$t Chajangga \$g (1:16) -- \$t Chongson arirang / \$r Kim Ok-sim \$g (1:42). *some are omitted due to space limit.

650 #0 Folk songs, Korean \$z Korea (South) \$z Kangwŏn-do.

650 #0 Folk music \$z Korea (South) \$z Kangwŏn-do.

700 1# 김 난홍, \$e singer.

700 1# Kim, Nan-hong, \$e singer.

700 1# 김 계선, \$e instrumentalist.

700 1# Kim, Kye-sŏn, \$e instrumentalist.

700 1# 김 옥심, \$e singer.

700 1# Kim, Ok-sim, \$e singer.

700 1# 김 혜정, \$e writer of added commentary.

700 1# Kim, Hye-jŏng, \$e writer of added commentary.

710 2# 국립 문화재 연구소 (Korea), \$e issuing body.

710 2# Kungnip Munhwajae Yŏn'guso (Korea), \$e issuing body.

830 #0 Korean traditional music collection ; \$v 27.

3.7. Scores

By EunHee Nah⁷

3.7.1 References

Best Practices for Music Cataloging (Music Library Association) <http://goo.gl/OgNYXR>

Provisional Best Practices for Using LCMPT <http://goo.gl/W4UqOY>

Traditional Korean music: 악학궤범

3.7.2 Traditional Korean Music and Scores

Traditional Korean music is called kugak (국악), and it can be divided into four groups: imperial court music, literati class music, folk music and religious music. The various musical styles and forms are reflective of the country's history, which is colorful and full of fascinating tales.

Korean songs can be divided into six groups: kagok (가곡), kasa (가사), sijo (시조), minyo (민요), p'ansori (판소리) and ch'anggŭk (창극). The first three were written and sung by intellectuals and the others were by and for commoners. Ch'anggŭk evolved from p'ansori in the early 20th century for theater.

Religious music was influenced by shamanism, Buddhism, and Confucianism. Cheryeak (제례악) is Confucian ritual music. Chongmyo cheryeak (종묘 제례악) commemorated kings and rulers, and Munmyo cheryeak (문묘 제례악) commemorated Confucian scholars.

The kugak scores are written using traditional Korean music notation. One exception is folk music, which was passed down among players without scores. There are about sixty traditional Korean string, wind, and percussion instruments.

⁷ Korean Cataloger, Harvard University

One of the most widely used musical notation systems in traditional scores is chǒngganbo (정간보), which was created by King Sejong and his music scholars in the early 15th century. It is a grid system in which each cell contains characters that denote precise performance indications and rhythms. The score is to be read from top to bottom and right to left, similar to traditional Korean books. In the case of multiple instruments, the score contains multiple columns per measure or phrase.

Beginning in the late 20th century, musicians trained in western music started composing traditional-style music using western staff notation as well as converting traditional scores to western staff notation. In recent years, live performances of folk music and shaman music have been transcribed in scores in an effort to preserve Korea's musical heritage.

RDA guidelines for cataloging in traditional music have not been fully developed. Future updates and best practices need to be monitored.

3.7.3 RDA Fields for Scores

245 Preferred source of information is title page, cover, caption, masthead, colophon, in that order

33x fields for content, media, and carrier type

336 notated music \$2 rdacontent

337 unmediated \$2 rdamedia

338 volume \$2 rdacarrier

338 sheet \$2 rdacarrier

382 01 Medium of performance terms for music.

5xx for music notes

500 form of music. (ex. Hymns, folk music)

546 language of printed text

546 \$b form of music notation (RDA7.13). (ex. Staff notation, letter notation, graphic notation, number notation, tablature (chǒngganbo))

3.7.4 RDA Relationship Designators

RDA Appendix I (Between Persons/Families/Corporate bodies and Works)

arranger of music; composer; editor; librettist; lyricist; transcriber; translator, writer of added commentary; writer of added lyrics

RDA Appendix J (Between Works and Expressions)

adaptation of (expression); adaptation of (work); adapted as (expression); adapted as (work); contained in (expression); contained in (work); container of (expression); contain container of (work); libretto (expression); libretto (work); libretto based on (expression); libretto based on (work); libretto for (expression); libretto for (work); musical setting of (expression); musical setting of (work); musical setting (expression); musical setting (work); musical variations (expression); musical variations (work); musical variations based on (expression); musical variations based on (work); reproduction of (manifestation); reproduction of (item)

3.7.5 Examples

1. Score in tablature notation, chŏngganbo (정간보)

Type: c Comp: zz Desc: i FMus: l DtSt: s Dates: 2004
040 ## <library symbol> \$b eng \$e rda \$c <library symbol>
020 ## 8956381674
043 ## a-kr---
050 #4 M1816 \$b .C4517 2004
245 00 종묘 제례악 (全) / \$c 국립 국악원.
245 00 Chongmyo cheryeak (chŏn) / \$c Kungnip Kugagwŏn.
250 ## 초판.
250 ## Ch'op'an.
264 #1 서울 : \$b 민속원, \$c 2004.
264 #1 Sŏul : \$b Minsogwŏn, \$c 2004.
300 ## 1 score (202 pages) ; \$c 30 cm
336 ## notated music \$b ntm \$2 rdacontent

337 ## unmediated \$b n \$2 rdamedia
 338 ## volume \$b nc \$2 rdacARRIER
 382 01 instrumental ensemble \$a singer \$2 lcmpt
 500 ## Traditional Korean instrumental ensemble; includes songs.
 500 ## Korean chŏngganbo notation.
 546 ## \$b Tablature.
 650 #0 Jongmyo jeryeak \$v Scores.
 650 #0 A'ak \$v Scores.
 710 2#국립 국악원 (Korea), \$e issuing body.
 710 2# Kungnip Kugagwŏn (Korea), \$e issuing body.

2. P'ansori in staff notation

Type: c BLvl: m Comp: zz Lang: kor Ctry: ko Desc: i FMus: l LTxt: a DtSt: s Dates: 2002
 040 ## <library symbol> \$b eng \$e rda \$c <library symbol>
 020 ## 9788975983184
 041 1# kor \$a eng \$h kor
 050 #4 M1817 \$b .P35 2002
 100 1# 박 녹주, \$e composer.
 100 1# Pak, Nok-chu, \$e composer.
 245 10 동편제 흥보가 : \$b 중요 무형 문화재 제 5 호 판소리 / \$c 박 녹주 바디 ; 한 농선
 소리 ; 김 영옥 채보 ; 박 미정 영역.
 245 10 Tongp'yŏnje Hŭngboga : \$b chungyo muhyŏng munhwajae che 5-ho p'ansori / \$c Pak
 Nok-chu padi ; Han Nong-sŏn sori ; Kim Yŏng-ok ch'aebo ; Pak Mi-jŏng yŏngyŏk.
 246 30 흥보가
 246 30 Hŭngboga
 264 #1 광주 광역시 : \$b 전남 대학교 출판부, \$c 2002.
 264 #1 Kwangju Kwangyŏksi : \$b Chŏnnam Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, \$c 2002.
 300 ## 1 score (147 pages) ; \$c 31 cm
 336 ## notated music \$2 rdacontent
 337 ## unmediated \$2 rdamedia
 338 ## volume \$2 rdacARRIER
 382 01 voice \$n 1 \$a drum \$n 1 \$s 2 \$2 lcmpt

546 ## In Korean, with librettos also in English.

546 ## \$b Staff notation.

500 ## Includes index.

630 04 흥보가 \$v Librettos.

630 00 Hüngboga \$v Librettos.

650 #0 P'ansori \$v Scores.

700 1# 한 농선, \$e composer (expression)

700 1# Han, Nong-sŏn, \$e composer (expression)

700 1# 김 영옥, \$e transcriber.

700 1# Kim, Yŏng-ok, \$e transcriber.

700 1# 박 미정, \$e translator.

700 1# Pak, Mi-jŏng, \$e translator.

3. Collection of folk songs in staff notation

Type: c Comp: fm Desc: i FMus: l

040 ## <library symbol> \$b eng \$e rda \$c <library symbol>

020 ## 9788932601823

043 ## a-kr---

050 #4 M1816 \$b .H3636 1992

100 1# 김 점도, \$ 1935- \$e compiler, \$e arranger of music.

100 1# Kim, Chŏm-do, \$d 1935- \$e compiler, \$e arranger of music.

245 10 한국 신민요 대전집 : \$b 속요, 만요, 신민요, 창가 수록 / \$c 김 점도 편.

245 10 Han'guk sinminyo taejŏnjip : \$b sogyo, manyo, sinminyo, ch'angga surok / \$c Kim Chŏm-do p'yŏn.

264 #1 서울 특별시 : \$b 삼호 출판사, \$c 1992.

264 #1 Sŏul T'ŭkpyŏlsi : \$b Samho Ch'ulp'ansa, \$c 1992.

300 ## 1 score (541 pages) ; \$c 26 cm

336 ## notated music \$b ntm \$2 rdacontent

337 ## unmediated \$b n \$2 rdamedia

338 ## volume \$b nc \$2 rdacarrier

382 01 singer \$2 lcmtpt

500 ## Folk songs.
500 ## Includes chord symbols; unacc.
546 ## \$b Staff notation.
650 #0 Folk music \$z Korea.
650 #0 Folk songs, Korean.

4. Training pieces in staff notation for learning kayagŭm

Type: c Lang: kor BLvl: m Comp: fm AccM: s Ctry: ko Desc: i FMus: l LTxt: n
DtSt: s Dates: 2003

040 ## <library symbol> \$b eng \$e rda \$c <library symbol>

020 ## 9788959163922050 #4 MT654.K4 \$b S66 2012

100 1# 송 지희, \$e author.

100 1# Sŏng, Chi-hŭi, \$e author.

245 10 소리 와 함께 배우는 가야금 교본 / \$c 송 지희 지음.

245 10 Sori wa hamkke paeunŭn kayagŭm kyobon / \$c Sŏng Chi-hŭi chiŭm.

246 30 가야금 교본

246 30 Kayagŭm kyobon

250 ## 1 판.

250 ## 1-p'an.

264 #1 서울 : \$b 예솔, \$c 2012.

264 #1 Soul : \$b Yesol, \$c 2012.

300 ## 1 score (122 pages) : \$b illustrations (some color) ; \$c 26 cm + \$e 1 CD

336 ## \$3 score \$a notated music \$b ntm \$2 rdacontent

336 ## \$3 CD \$a performed music \$2 rdacontent

337 ## \$3 score \$a unmediated \$b n \$2 rdamedia

337 ## \$3 CD \$a audio \$2 rdamedia

338 ## \$3 score \$a volume \$b nc \$2 rdacarrier

338 ## \$3 CD \$a audiodisc \$2 rdacarrier

382 01 kayagŭm \$n 1 \$s 1 \$2 lcmpt

546 ## \$b Staff notation.

504 ## Includes bibliographical references (page 123).

650 #0 Kayagŭm \$v Studies and exercises.

650 #0 Kayagŭm music. (for CD)

3.8. Maps

By Hee-Sook Shin⁸

3.8.1 References

1. RDA and Cartographic materials: Mapping a New Route by Paige Andrew at <http://www.ala.org/alcts/confevents/upcoming/webinar/cat/092811>
2. GSLIS UIUC Cartographic Resources created by Bobby Bothmann (RDA Toolkit)

3.8.2 Fields for Maps

008 Type: **e** CrTp: **a** (single map), **e** (atlas) Relf: **a** (contours), **b** (shading), **c** (gradient and bathymetric tints, **g** (spot heights)

007 Use for print and online maps, including atlases. Do not use for microform maps or globes (use 007 microform and 007 globe)

e.g. 1 printed color map

007 ## a \$b j \$d c \$e a \$f n \$g z \$h n (\$b j is two-dimensional map)

300 ## 1 map : \$b color ; \$c 50 x 80 cm

e.g. Atlas containing colored printed maps

007 ## a \$b d \$d c \$e a \$f n \$g z \$h n (\$b d is atlas)

300 ## 1 atlas (48 pages) : \$b color maps ; \$c 28 cm

034 Cartographic mathematical data, including scale, projection and/or coordinates.
Enter a corresponding field 255 for each 034 field.

e.g. **034 1# a \$b 7500** (first indicator 1 is single scale, \$a a is linear scale)

255 ## Scale 1:7,500. 1 cm. = 75 m.

⁸ Korean Studies Librarian, Columbia University

034 1# a \$b 8000 \$d E1265612 \$e E1270140 \$f N0373316 \$g N0373005 (\$d,e,f,g are coordinates)

255 ## Scale 1:8000 \$c (E 126°56'12"--E 127°01'40"/N 37°33'16"--N 37°30'05").

052 ## Geographic classification code that represents the geographic area and the geographic subarea and populated place name covered by an item. GCC consists of a four- to six-digit number from the LCC range G3190-G9980.

e.g. **052 ## 7904 \$b S478:3Y6** (7904-city and town, etc. S478-Seoul S478:3Y6-Yongsangu)
651 #0 Yongsan-gu (Seoul, Korea) \$v Maps.

052 ## 7900 (South Korea including maps of Korea as a whole)

052 ## 7905 (North Korea)

651 #0 Korea (South) \$v Maps.

651 #0 Korea (North) \$v Maps.

19.2.1.1.1 Corporate bodies other than those merely responsible for the publication or distribution of cartographic resources are considered to be creators.

110 2# 영진 문화사, \$e cartographer.

110 2# Yŏngjin Munhwasa, \$e cartographer.

2.3.2.8.2 Scale - if the title proper of a cartographic resource includes a statement of the scale, include that statement as part of the title proper.

e.g. **245 10 서울 1:7,500 道路 地圖 : \$b 미리 보는 서울 未來 地圖**

245 10 Sŏul 1:7,500 toro chido : \$b miri ponŭn Sŏul, mirae chido

255 (chap. 7- 7.25 (255 \$a), 7.26 (255 \$b), 7.4 (255 \$c): LC/PCC core element

Record coordinates in the following order: westernmost extent of area covered (longitude), easternmost, northernmost, southernmost. Record using degrees (°), minutes ('), seconds ("). Precede coordinates by W, E, N, S.

Provide "Scale not given" if no scale is given, and is not available from outside the resource.

If the scales within one map vary and are known, record the smallest and largest scales separated by a hyphen, e.g. 1:15,000-1:25,000. If not known, provide "Scale varies." If the resource consists of more than one map and the main maps are of more than one scale, record each separately or use "Scales differ."

e.g. 1 colored printed map
255 ## Scale 1:1,050,000. 1 cm = approximately 10 km \$c (E 123°08'--E 132°12'/N 42°45'--N 33°07').
255 ## Scale 1:70,000. 1 cm = 700 m.
255 ## Scales differ.
255 ## Scale not given.

300 (chap. 3 and 7 – 3.4.2 (300 \$a), 3.11.2-3 (300 \$b), 3.5.2 (300 \$c))
e.g. **300 ## 1 map : \$b color ; \$c 25 x 15 cm (height x width measured within the neatline)**
300 ## 2 maps on 1 sheet : \$b both sides, color ; \$c each 35 x 50 cm, sheet 53 x 76 cm, folded in cover 24 x 17 cm (if appropriate, record more than one set of dimensions and specify the areas separated by a comma)
300 ## 1 map : \$b color ; \$c 107 x 72 cm, sheet 110 x 79 cm, folded in cover 24 x 17 cm
300 ## 1 atlas (3 volumes)
300 ## 1 atlas (326 pages) : \$b color maps ; \$c 28 cm
300 ## 1 atlas (174 pages) : \$b color illustrations, color maps ; \$c 36 cm

e.g. Electronic atlas
255 ## Scale not given.
300 ## 1 atlas (6 volumes) : \$b illustrations, maps (some color)

33X fields

336 Content Type
336 ## cartographic image

337 Media Type
337 ## unmediated
337 ## computer
337 ## microform

338 Carrier Type
338 ## sheet
338 ## volume
338 ## object

e.g. 1 printed color map
336 ## cartographic image \$2 rdacontent
337 ## unmediated \$2 rdamedia
338 ## sheet \$2 rdacarrier

e.g. Atlas containing colored printed maps
336 ## cartographic image \$2 rdacontent
337 ## unmediated \$2 rdamedia
338 ## volume \$2 rdacarrier

e.g. E-atlas containing color maps
336 ## cartographic image \$2 rdacontent
337 ## computer \$2 rdamedia
338 ## online resource \$2 rdacarrier

546 Language
e.g. **041 0# kor \$a eng**
546 ## In Korean, with title, legend, and selected place names also in English.

500 Notes
e.g. **500 ## Map covers entire Korean Peninsula.**
500 ## Relief shown by shading and spot heights. Depths shown by gradient tints.
500 ## “실내 환경 정리용 (행정)”—cover.
500 ## Based on maps at scale 1:50,000 by Kukt'o Chiri Chǒngbowŏn.
500 ## Includes world map inset.
500 ## Includes schematic inset continuation maps of subway lines from Pyǒngjǒm to Sinjang, and from Mangwǒlsa to Soyosan.
500 ## “GPS iyong toro chosa.”
500 ## “Toro kyot’ong chǒngbo sangsedo, sudokwǒn, 1:100,000.”
500 ## “Digital 신평. GPS 이용 도로 조사.”
500 ## “Chuyo sigado surok.”

Appendix 1: Relationship designators between persons/families/corporate bodies and resources - recommended core cartographic designators by cartographic community.

Work level: artist, cartographer, designer, compiler, issuing body

Expression level: surveyor, draftsman

Manifestation level: engraver, lithographer, printer

3.8.3 Examples

1 printed color map in a case

Type: e ELvl: i Srce: d Relf: bcg Lang: kor BLvl: m Ctry: ko CrTp: a Indx: 0

Desc: i DtSt: s Dates: 1994, #####

007 a \$b j \$d c \$e a \$f n \$g z \$h n
040 ## ZCU \$b eng \$e rda \$c ZCU
066 ## \$c \$1
020 ## 8985784064
020 ## 9788985784061
034 1# a \$b 1050000 \$d E1230800 \$e E1321200 \$f N0424500 \$g N0330700
043 ## a-kr---
050 #4 G7900 1994 \$b .S66
052 ## 7900
079 ## ocn8579006095
049 ## ZCUA
110 2# 성지 문화사, \$e cartographer.
110 2# Sŏngji Munhwasa, \$e cartographer.
245 10 대한 민국 전도 / \$c 편집 겸 발행인 최 형규.
245 10 Taehan Min'guk chŏndo / \$c p'yŏnjip kyŏm parhaengin Ch'oe Hyŏng-gyu.
246 3# 최신판 大韓 民國 全圖
246 3# Ch'oesinp'an Taehan Min'guk chŏndo
246 3# 최신판 대한 민국 전도
246 3# 大韓 民國 全圖
246 3# Taehan Min'guk chŏndo
246 1# \$i Spine title on case: \$a 대한 민국 전도 (행정)
246 1# \$ Spine title on case: \$a Taehan Min'guk chŏndo (haengjŏng)
250 ## 최신판.
250 ## Ch'oesinp'an.
255 ## Scale 1:1,050,000. 1 cm = approximately 10 km \$c (E 123°08'--E 132°12'/N 42°45'--N 33°07').

- 264 #1 서울 특별시 : \$b 성지 문화사, \$c 1994.
- 264 #1 Söul T'ükpyölsi : \$b Söngji Munhwasa, \$c 1994.
- 300 ## 1 map : \$b color ; \$c 107 x 72 cm, sheet 110 x 79 cm, folded in cover 24 x 17 cm
- 336 ## cartographic image \$2 rdacontent
- 337 ## unmediated \$2 rdamedia
- 338 ## sheet \$2 rdacarrier
- 500 ## "실내 환경 정리용 (행정)"--Cover.
- 500 ## "Sillae hwan'gyöng chöngniyong (haengjöng)"--Case.
- 500 ## Map covers entire Korean peninsula.
- 500 ## Relief shown by shading and spot heights. Depths shown by gradient tints.
- 500 ## Includes world map inset.
- 500 ## "우리 나라 편 (2)"--Case.
- 500 ## "Uri nara p'yön (2)"--Case.
- 651 #0 Korea \$v Maps.
- 655 #7 Maps. \$2 lcgft
- 700 1# 최 형규, \$e compiler.
- 700 1# Ch'oe, Hyöng-gyu, \$e compiler.

Print atlas containing color maps

Type: e ELvl: i Sree: d Relf: ag Lang: kor BLvl: m Ctry: ko CrTp: e Indx: 1

Desc: i DtSt: s Dates: 2009, #####

- 007 a \$b d \$d c \$e a \$f n \$g z \$h n
- 040 ## ZCU \$b eng \$e rda \$c ZCU
- 066 ## \$c \$1
- 020 ## 8987163717
- 020 ## 9788987163710
- 034 0# a
- 041 0# kor \$a eng
- 043 ## a-ko---
- 050 #4 G2331.P2 \$b Y65 2009
- 052 ## 7901
- 079 ## ocn708396798
- 049 ## ZCUA

- 110 2# 영진 문화사, \$e cartographer.
- 110 2# Yǒngjin Munhwasa, \$e cartographer.
- 245 10 新 한국 정밀 지도 : \$b 도로 · 행정 · 관광 · 총괄편.
- 245 10 Sin Han'guk chǒngmil chido : \$b toro, haengjǒng, kwan'gwang, ch'onggw'al p'yǒn.
- 246 30 한국 정밀 지도
- 246 30 Han'guk chǒngmil chido
- 246 3# 신 한국 정밀 지도
- 246 3# Sin Han'guk chǒngmil chido
- 250 ## 수정판.
- 250 ## Sujǒngp'an.
- 255 ## Scales differ.
- 264 #1 서울 특별시 : \$b 영진 문화사, \$c 2009.
- 264 #1 Sǒul T'ŭkpyŏlsi : \$b Yǒngjin Munhwasa, \$c 2009.
- 300 ## 1 atlas (223 pages) : \$b color maps ; \$c 31 cm
- 336 ## cartographic image \$2 rdacontent
- 337 ## unmediated \$2 rdamedia
- 338 ## volume \$2 rdacarrier
- 546 ## In Korean, with selected place names also in English.
- 500 ## Relief shown by contours and spot heights.
- 500 ## Cover title.
- 500 ## Includes indexes.
- 650 #0 Roads \$z Korea (South) \$v Maps.
- 651 #0 Korea (South) \$x Administrative and political divisions \$v Maps.
- 655 #7 Atlases. \$2 lcgft

3.9. Online Textual Resources (Remote Access Resources)

By Erica Chang⁹

This section follows PCC Provider-Neutral E-Resource guidelines (<http://www.loc.gov/aba/pcc/scs/documents/PCC-PN-guidelines.html>) and the separate record approach. It covers cataloging of online reproductions of print resources.

Provider-neutral model: Describe the digital manifestation using all appropriate elements. However, provide information for the original publication as indicated below. Provider-neutral record does not contain information specific to any one particular provider, with the exception of citing the package and format upon which the record description was based (588). Provider names are not added to preferred titles as qualifiers, given as authorized access points or mentioned in issuing body notes. Notes about access restrictions, format, or system requirements specific to particular providers also are not given.

Add a 730 title access point or 7XX author/title added entry when the title of the original differs. When a serial changes from one media type to another, e.g., CD-ROM to online, print to online, give a qualifier in parentheses, e.g., (CD-ROM, online). Simultaneous editions or reproductions of a serial in different media, as is common with Korean e-serials, are regarded as manifestations of the same work, therefore no additions are required. Give the original print information in 776 \$i Print version: \$a, \$t, \$b, \$d, \$h, \$z, \$w as applicable. Give appropriate 856 fields.

Create a new record either by deriving the original print record on OCLC if available or by viewing the online resource (see 588 note).

3.9.1 Monographs

Mandatory fields: 006, 007, 008, 020, 040 \$a \$b \$c \$e, 050 for BIBCO, 245 \$a, 264 \$a \$b \$c, 300 \$a, 336, 337, 338, 588, 776.

⁹ Cataloging Librarian, University of Hawaii

006: **mod** 007:**cr** (006 is for additional characteristics for computer file aspect, 007 is physical characteristics for computer file)

Fixed Field: type:**a** BLvl:**m** Form:**o** Desc:**i** DtSt:**s** Dates: 2009 (date for original publication)

020 \$z **9788956263830** Provide ISBN for e-book in \$a, however, Korean e-resources usually don't carry ISBN for online edition. If ISBN for print only is available, provide it in \$z.

040 \$a [library symbol] \$b **eng** \$e **rda** \$e **pn** \$c [library symbol]

043 **a-ko---**, **a-kn---**, **a-kr---**

100 1# **Kim, Yong-hui, \$d 1963- \$e author.**

245 10 **Han'guk hyōndae siō ūi t'ansaeng / \$c Kim Yong-hui.**

250: **Ch'op'an.** Provide information from the original print.

264: **Sōul-si : \$b Somyōng Ch'ulp'an, \$c 2009.** Provide information from the original print publication.

Add another 264 for manufacturing information for online manifestation if desired.

264 #3 \$c **printing 2012**

300: \$a **1 online resource (376 pages) : \$b illustrations.** Provide information for online manifestation.

33X (content, media, carrier type)

336 \$a **text \$2 rdacontent**

337 \$a **computer \$2 rdamedia**

338 \$a **online resource \$2 rdacarrier**

347 \$a **text file \$b PDF \$2 rda** (digital file characteristics)

588 \$a **Description based on online resource; title from PDF title page (Nuri Media, viewed January 31, 2014).**

Or 588 \$a **Description based on print version record.**

776 08 \$i **Print version: \$a Kim, Yong-hui, 1963- \$t Han'guk hyōndae siō ūi t'ansaeng. \$b Ch'op'an \$d Sōul-si : Somyōng Ch'ulp'an, 2009 \$h 376 p. ; 23 cm. \$z 9788956263830 \$w (DLC)2009426911 \$w (OCoLC)368047724**

856 40 \$u <http://overseas.bookrail.co.kr/common/swfViewer.asp?idx=N1112294>

3.9.2 Monograph Example

Type: a ELvl: i Srce: d Lang: kor Blvl: m Form: o Conf: 0 Ctry: ko Cont: b LitF: 0 Indx:
0 Desc: i DtSt: s Dates: 2005, #####
006 mod
007 cr
040 ## HUH \$b eng \$e rda \$e pn \$c HUH
020 ## \$z 9788956261768
043 ## a-ko---
050 #4 PL957.5.F45 \$b K57 2005
100 1# 김 복순, \$e author.
100 1# Kim, Pok-sun, \$e author.
245 10 페미니즘 미학 과 보편성 의 문제 = \$b The problems of feminist aesthetics and
universality /\$c 김 복순.
245 10 P'eminijŭm mihak kwa pop'yŏnsŏng ūi munje = \$b The problems of feminist
aesthetics and universality /\$c Kim Pok-sun.
246 31 Problems of feminist aesthetics and universality
250 ## 1 판.
250 ## 1-p'an.
264 #1 서울시 : \$b 소명 출판, \$c 2005.
264 #1 Sŏul-si : \$b Somyŏng Ch'ulp'an, \$c 2005.
264 #3 printing 2012
300 ## 1 online resource (512 pages)
336 ## text \$b txt \$2 rdacontent
337 ## computer \$b c \$2 rdamedia
338 ## online resource \$b cr \$2 rdacarrier
347 ## text file \$b PDF \$2 rda
504 ## Includes bibliographical references (pages 505-512).
588 ## Description based on online resource; title from PDF title page (Nuri Media,
viewed December 20, 2013).
650 #0 Korean literature \$y 20th century \$x History and criticism.
650 #0 Feminism and literature \$z Korea (South)
650 #0 Women in literature.

776 08 Print version: \$a Kim, Pok-sun. \$t P'eminijum mihak kwa pop'yönsöng üi munje.
\$b 1-p'an \$d Söul-si : Somyöng Ch'ulp'an, 2005 \$h 512 p. ; 23 cm \$z 9788956261768 \$w
(OCOLC)76824664
856 40 \$u <http://overseas.bookrail.co.kr/common/swfViewer.asp?idx=N112281>

3.9.3 Serials

Mandatory fields: 006, 007, 008, 040 \$a, \$b, \$c, \$e, 245 \$a, 264 \$a, \$b, \$c, 300 for
ceased serial, 336, 337, 338, 588, 776

006: **mod** 007: **cr** (006 is for additional characteristics for computer file aspect, 007 is
physical characteristics for computer file)

Fixed Field: type: **a** BLvl: **s** Form: **o** Desc: **i** DtSt: **c** Dates: **2010** (date for original
publication. Dates should match with information in 362.

022 \$z ; Provide ISSN for e-serial in \$a, however, Korean e-serials usually don't carry
ISSN for online edition. If ISSN for print only is available, provide it in \$y.

040 [library symbol] \$b **eng** \$e **rda** \$e **pn** \$c [library symbol]

043 **a-ko---**, **a-kn---**, **a-kr---**

264: Provide information from the original print publication.

300 **## 1 online resource** or **1 online resource (25 volumes)**.

300 is optional but mandatory for ceased serials.

33X: content, media, carrier type

336 **## text \$2 rdacontent**, 337 **## computer \$2 rdamedia**, 338 **## online resource \$2
rdacarrier**

362 1# **Began with Che 1-chip (2010)** when the first volume is available in hand. **Print
began in 2010**. Or 362 1# **Print began with Che 1-chip (2010)**. Use the beginning and
ending dates of the print manifestation rather than the beginning and ending dates of
issues available from any specific provider. Match with dates in the fixed field.

588 **## Description based on: Che 1-chip (2010); title from journal home page (Nuri
Media website, viewed January 31, 2014)**.

Or 588 ## Description based on print version record.

588 ## Latest issue consulted: Che 5-chip (2014) (viewed January 31, 2014).

776 08 \$i Print version: \$t Chŏn'guk saöpch'e chosa pogosŏ \$x 1559-0605 \$w
(OCOLC)399658701

856 40 \$u

3.9.4 Serial Example

Type: a ELvl: i Srce: d Lang: kor Blvl: s Form:o Conf: # Freq: a Ctry: ko S/L: 0
Regl: r Alph: k Desc: i DtSt: c Dates: 2010, 9999

006 mod 007 cr

022 ## \$z 1559-0605

043 ## a-ko---

245 00 전국 사업체 조사 보고서. <= Online version

245 00 Chŏn'guk saöpch'e chosa pogosŏ.

246 11 Report of the census on establishments

264 #1 대전 :\$b 통계청, \$c 2009-

264 #1 Taejŏn :\$b T'onggyech'ŏng, \$c 2009-

300 ## \$a 1 online resource

336 ## text \$b txt \$2 rdacontent

337 ## computer \$b c \$2 rdamedia

338 ## online resource \$b cr \$2 rdacarrier

310 ## Annual

362 1# Began with 제 1 집 (2010)-

362 1# Began with Che 1-chip (2010)-

588 ## Description based on: Che 1-chip (2010); title from journal home page (Nuri Media website, viewed January 31, 2014).

588 ## Latest issue consulted: Che 5-chip (2014) (viewed January 31, 2014).

776 08 \$i Print version: \$t Chŏn'guk saöpch'e chosa pogosŏ \$x 1559-0605 #w
(OCOLC)399658701

856 40 \$u (provide specific one, if not specific, use \$3 for provider name).

If title is changed, provide 780 and 785 accordingly.

3.10. RDA Tools and Resources

By Jee-Young Park¹⁰

BOOKS

- Oliver, Chris. *Introducing RDA: A Guide to the Basics*. Chicago: American Library Association, 2010.
- Maxwell, Robert. *Maxwell's Handbook for RDA: Explaining and Illustrating RDA: Resources Description and Access using MARC 21*. Chicago: American Library Association, 2014.

RDA TOOLKIT

- RDA Toolkit—<http://access.rdatoolkit.org>
- Carlton, Tim. *Library of Congress Training for RDA, Resource Description & Access: Using the RDA Toolkit*. Revised. Washington, D.C.: Cooperative and Instructional Programs Division, Library of Congress, 2012--
<http://goo.gl/xtybcR>
- AACR2 to RDA using the RDA toolkit --
<http://www.rdatoolkit.org/webinar/2011Feb>

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS (LC)

- Comprehensive information on RDA -- <http://www.loc.gov/aba/rda/>
- Webcasts-- <http://www.loc.gov/aba/rda/webcasts.html>
- LC RDA Bibliographic training materials -- <http://goo.gl/FzEZV>
- LC RDA NACO training materials -- <http://goo.gl/Lp0hLZ>
- LC training materials for special topics -- <http://goo.gl/D0mZXj>
- RDA in MARC-- <http://www.loc.gov/marc/RDAinMARC29>
- RDA record examples <http://goo.gl/VEcHw>

¹⁰ Korean Studies Librarian, University of Chicago

JOINT STEERING COMMITTEE for Development of RDA (JSC)

- Comprehensive information on RDA -- <http://www.rda-jsc.org/rda>.
- JSC training materials-- <http://www.rda-jsc.org/rdapresentations>
- RDA working documents-- <http://www.rda-jsc.org/workingnew>

PROGRAM for COOPERATIVE CATALOGING (PCC)

- Post RDA implementation guidelines and standards -- <http://goo.gl/zHVdaQ>
- RDA and PCC -- <http://goo.gl/79sZVC>
- PCC policy statement on RDA training -- <http://goo.gl/Bf8jlm>
- PCC SCT Training materials -- <http://goo.gl/CVsJan>

OCLC

- OCLC and RDA -- <http://www.oclc.org/en-US/rda>
- RDA related resources from OCLC -- <http://www.oclc.org/en-US/rda/about>
- OCLC Enhance Requirements and Application -- <http://goo.gl/5Eiz4Z>

CATALOGING WIKI

- Korean Cataloging wiki (KoCa) -- <http://goo.gl/ScfFbA>
- CEAL RDA wiki -- <http://goo.gl/r9mG9>

MACRO

- Joel Hahn. Macros for the Connexion Client: AddCommon33x, AlifAyn2Apostrophe, GenerateAuthoritySupplNLat, Transliteration, Korean2Latin -- <http://goo.gl/3bsH5d>

3.11. Korean Cataloging Outsourcing

By Eunseung Oh¹¹

3.11.1 Planning, Selecting, and Evaluating Vendors

Issues to be considered in the planning stage

- Evaluation of local cataloging needs to determine whether fixed-term or on-going service is required.
- Cost analysis: in-house staff vs. outsourcing services

1. Selecting a Korean outsourcing vendor

There are several Korean cataloging service vendors available in the U.S. and abroad. Here are some factors to be considered when choosing a suitable vendor for your institution.

- Price: Vendors usually offer price quotes based on the service needs for a specific project. Vendors charge different prices for different formats and levels of cataloging. For example, copy cataloging of literary works should be less expensive than original cataloging of non-fiction titles.
- Quality of records: Request sample records from vendors to evaluate their quality. Ensure that the vendors are up-to-date with current cataloging rules (e.g., RDA practice, current ALA/LC Korean romanization). Find out how customizable their services are and whether they provide full-level cataloging in the formats that you need.
- Shelf-ready service: If your institution requires shelf-ready materials, the vendor should be able to handle the physical processing.
- Record delivery methods: How to load the records into your ILS.
- Sending physical materials vs. surrogates: Consider pros and cons of sending physical materials vs. photocopies or scanned images.
- Local processing: How much local processing and editing of the records are required before and after outsourcing.

¹¹ Korean Technical Services Librarian, Stanford University

2. Processing and evaluation of the service

After choosing a vendor, set up a pilot project to test the overall performance of the vendor before signing a long-term contract.

- Selectively check the quality of the records you receive. See if the vendor responds to questions or comments from the institution in timely manner.
- Determine whether turnaround time is reasonable.

The quality of the vendor's records and performance should continue to be monitored even after a contract is signed.

3.11.2 Korean Outsourcing Vendors

1. Backstage (<http://www.bslw.com>)

25 East 1700 South, Provo UT 84606

Tel. 1-800-288-1265

Fax. 1-801-356-8220

E-mail: becca@bslw.com

Contact person: Becca Wiederhold

- Provides bibliographic service in various languages including Korean
- Full-level cataloging in all formats
- Able to provide RDA records
- Provides price quote based on a cataloging questionnaire sent to potential customers
- Physical processing service available

2. China International Book Trading Corporation (CIBTC) (<http://www.cibtc.com.cn>)

35 Chegongzhuang Xilu, Haidian District, Beijing 100044, China

Tel: 86-10-68412045, 68414284

E-mail: tsg@mail.cibtc.com.cn

Contact person: Wang Ton

- Provides bibliographic service in CJK languages
- Full-level cataloging in all formats

- Able to provide RDA records. Still working on the new Korean romanization rules.
- Provides price quote based on a cataloging questionnaire sent to potential customer
- Physical processing services available
- Prefers to work with surrogates

3. MarcNow (<http://www.marcnow.com>)

1400 Modi Tower, 98 Nehru Place, New Delhi, India 110 019

Tel. +91 11 4250 4851

E-mail: info@marcnow.com

Contact person: Meghna Modi (meghna.modi@marcnow.com)

- Provides bibliographic service in various languages including Korean
- Full-level cataloging in all formats
- Able to provide RDA records
- Price structure provided upon request
- Physical processing service available

4. McCloy Enterprise International

5900 148th Pl. SW, Edmonds, WA 98026

Tel. 425-745-1908

E-mail: wbmccloy@uw.edu

Contact person: William B. McCloy

- A sole proprietorship cataloging and consulting company specializing in Korean studies, East Asian studies, Chinese studies and East Asian law
- Full-level cataloging in all formats (experience with books, serials, music, maps)
- Able to provide RDA records
- Prefers to work with materials directly but also works with surrogates
- Price structure negotiated based on specific project requirements
- No physical processing services

5. Panmun

E-mail: panex@epanmun.co.kr ; jhlim@epanmun.co.kr

Contact person: Jun Ho Lim

- Minimum level cataloging record to libraries that purchase the item, still in testing stage

6. Total Library Services

1425 Honeyhill Dr. Walnut, CA 91789

Tel. 909-816-3738

Fax. 909-594-7041

E-mail: total_libraryserv@hotmail.com

Contact person: Choonhee Rhim

- A sole proprietorship cataloging and collection development company covering Korean studies
- Full-level cataloging in all formats
- Able to provide RDA records
- Prefers to work with materials directly
- Price structure negotiated based on specific project requirements
- Physical processing services available

* Note: OCLC and Eulyoo Publishing Co. no longer offer cataloging services for Korean language materials.

3.12. Subject Headings

By Erica Chang¹²

3.12.1 References

Library of Congress Subject Heading records in the subject authority file, Subject Headings Manual (SHM), PCC Guidelines for creating bibliographic records in multiple character sets, 2010

The purpose of this section is not to compile a list of Korean studies-related subject headings but to provide guidance on assigning subdivisions after choosing subject headings. Careful reading of SHM is required when assigning subject strings.

When assigning subject headings, established heading strings take precedence over manually constructed strings of subject headings and subdivisions. For cases in which subject heading strings are not editorially established, catalogers may combine subject headings and subdivisions by following instructions in subject authority records and in the Subject Headings Manual. Many free-floating subdivisions are used under certain categories of headings in the SHM (instruction sheets H 1100-1200). The H 1095 list is for general application. The scope notes should be read carefully so that subdivisions are assigned correctly. If a statement reads, "Use under subjects", the subdivision can be used with any heading. Most form subdivisions can also be used with every heading. The following is brief instruction on which list should be used for different categories in addition to the H 1095 list and the subdivision lists for pattern headings and special topics, materials, etc.

MARC fields used for subject headings: 600, 610, 611, 630, 650, 651

There are two basic prescribed orders for combining subject headings and subdivisions.

1. Topic \$z Place \$y Period subdivision \$v Form subdivision.
2. Place \$x Topic \$y Period subdivision \$v Form subdivision.

Provide parallel non-Latin fields in 600, 610, 611, 630, 651 with second indicator 4 (non-LCSH) if the Latin field follows systematic romanization. It is optional to provide a non-

¹² Cataloging Librarian, University of Hawaii

Latin field even if the corresponding Latin field does not follow systematic romanization.
(see Park Chung Hee example under 600 below)

Do not provide non-Latin fields for topical headings and geographic subdivisions in 650.

650 #0 Ŭibyŏng \$z Korea (South) \$z Kyŏngsang-namdo \$x History.

Not 650 #4 의병 \$z Korea (South) \$z Kyŏngsang-namdo \$x History.

Not 650 #4 Ŭibyŏng \$z Korea (South) \$z 경상남도 \$x History.

3.12.2 Personal Name Headings as Subject (600)

Use an authorized heading from the Name Authority File, if it is available. Any subdivision listed in SHM H **1110 list** and some (form (\$v) and topical (\$x)) subdivisions marked 'Use under subject' in H **1095 list** can be appended.

600 14 박 정희, \$d 1917-1979 \$x **Assassination** \$v **Sources**.

600 10 Park, Chung Hee, \$d 1917-1979 \$x **Assassination** \$v **Sources**.

- 'Assassination' is from H 1110 list, and 'Sources' is from H 1095 list.

600 14 이 광수, \$d 1892-1950. \$x Characters \$x Women.

600 10 Yi, Kwang-su, \$d 1892-1950. \$x Characters \$x Women.

3.12.3 Corporate Body Headings as Subject (610)

Use an authorized heading from the Name Authority File, if it is available. Any subdivision in the H 1105 list can be used if the scope notes allow it. Consult the appropriate instruction sheet for corporate bodies covered by pattern headings: H 1151 for individual educational institutions; H 1155 for individual legislative bodies; H 1159 for individual military services; H 1186 for individual religious and monastic orders; and H 1187 for individual Christian denominations.

610 14 Korea (South). \$b 국세청 \$x **Appropriations and expenditures** \$v **Periodicals**.

610 10 Korea (South). \$b Kuksech'ŏng \$x **Appropriations and expenditures** \$v **Periodicals**.

610 24 아산 사회 복지 사업 재단 \$x **Finance** \$v **Periodicals**.

610 20 Asan Sahoe Pokchi Saöp Chaedan \$x **Finance** \$v **Periodicals**.

- Both subdivisions are listed in H 1105, and Finance is listed in 1095 referring also Appropriations and expenditures.

Scope notes from the H 1105 instruction for Finance reads as follows. **Finance** - Use under names of **individual nongovernmental** corporate bodies for discussions of their budgets and the raising and expenditure of funds. Also use under individual government agencies for works limited to their management of nonappropriated funds. Use – **Appropriations and expenditures** under names of **individual government agencies** and institutions for discussions of their financial affairs.

Always follow the scope notes and check H 1095 list for form subdivisions.

3.12.4 Titles as Subjects (630)

Subdivisions in H 1155.8 can be used under titles of secular classics. For titles of individual sacred works or scriptures of all religions, including their individual parts, use instruction sheet H 1188. Some of the subdivisions listed in H 1095, for example, – **Bibliography** or –**Exhibitions**. –**Concordances** or –**Sources** are authorized for use under literary works (author-title (H 1155.6)) and title entries (H 1155.8)) according to the scope notes.

630 04 춘향전 \$x Concordances.

630 00 Ch'unhyang chön \$x Concordances.

3.12.5 Literary Works Entered Under Authors (600)

Use any subdivision in instruction sheet H 1155.6. For general criticism and interpretation of a work, provide the author-title entry without any subdivision. To bring out other aspects of literary analysis pertaining to an individual work, assign additional headings from the H 1110 list if appropriate. See section 600 (personal name headings as subject) above.

600 14 이 광수, \$d 1892-1950. \$t 무정 \$x Criticism, Textual.

600 10 Yi, Kwang-su, \$d 1892-1950. \$t Mujöng \$x Criticism, Textual.

3.12.6 Groups of Literary Authors (650)

Use any subdivision in instruction sheet H 1155.2. The specific period subdivisions under the Authors, Korean in the subject authority file also can be used. The topical and form subdivisions in the H 1155.2 list as well as subdivisions from the H 1100 list can be used under the heading Authors, Korean where there is no conflict.

650 #0 Authors, Korean \$y 20th century \$x Political and social views.

650 #0 Authors, Korean \$y Middle Korean, 935-1500 \$v Biography.

‘20th century’ and ‘Political and social views’ are from instruction sheet H 1155.2.

‘Middle Korean, 935-1500’ is from subject authority record under ‘Authors, Korean.’

‘Biography’ is from the instruction sheet H 1100.

3.12.7 Classes of Persons (650, 610, 651)

Use instruction sheet H 1100 subdivisions under subject headings for classes of persons, including age and sex groups; social, economic, and political categories of persons; types of afflicted persons; members of particular religions; employees and occupational groups; etc. *Examples: Youth; Women; Fathers; Poor; Political prisoners; People with mental disabilities, etc.* The category includes headings for classes of persons that are formulated with subdivisions used under names of places or individual corporate bodies, for example, Korea (South) \$x Officials and employees; Koryŏ Taehakkyo \$x Students (H 1151 list). Headings for social classes, collective social groupings, ethnic groups and nationalities are excluded.

In the event of a conflict between an established subject heading and a subdivision on this list, use the established heading unless a decision has been made to update or change all headings of that type, e.g., Child abuse, not Children \$x Abuse of.

650 #0 Women \$z Korea (South) \$z Cheju T'ŭkpyŏl Chach'ido \$x Attitudes.

610 24 고려 대학교 \$x Students \$x Attitudes.

610 20 Koryŏ Taehakkyo \$x Students \$x Attitudes.

3.12.8 Ethnic Groups (650)

Use the H 1103 instruction sheet for applying subdivisions under ethnic groups, including preliterate groups, historic people no longer in existence, races, and ethnic groups in the United States.

Subdivisions on this list may be used under headings for nationalities only to express topics in conjunction with those nationalities *outside* their native countries, for example, **Koreans \$z United States \$x Economic conditions; Koreans \$x Mental health \$z United States.**

NATIONALITIES: Do not subdivide headings for nationalities by subdivisions on this list to designate a topic in conjunction with a nationality in its own country. Instead, express the topic by headings of the type: **[topic]–[place]** or **[place]–[topic]**, for example, **Mental health \$z Korea, not Koreans \$x Mental health; Korea \$x Antiquities, not Koreans \$x Antiquities.**

3.12.9 Other General Topical Headings (650)

Use the authorized topical heading from the subject authority file. Use subdivisions from instruction sheet H 1095 when appropriate.

650 #0 Koreanists \$z United States \$v Directories.

3.12.10 Geographic Name Headings (651)

Use the authorized heading from the Name Authority File, if it is available. The free floating subdivision lists are in SHM H 1140 for names of places and in H 1145.5 for bodies of water. Certain free floating subdivisions are used only under countries and regions larger than countries, e.g., \$x Armed forces. Certain free floating subdivisions are used only under cities and city sections. e.g., \$x Buildings, structures, etc. Certain free floating subdivisions are used only under regions larger than countries, e.g., Economic integration.

Use any chronological subdivisions listed in instruction sheet H 1140 list where there is no conflict with chronological subdivisions established in the subject authority file.

Korea \$x History \$y 21st century.

Korea \$x Social conditions \$y 18th century.

Korea (South) \$x Armed forces.

East Asia \$x Economic integration.

Seoul (Korea) \$x Buildings, structures, etc.

3.12.11 Use of Geographic Subdivisions, Korea, Korea (South), Korea (North), Local Places

Use topical heading (650) with geographic subdivisions Korea (South), Korea (North), or Korea. Korea (South) is used for coverage after 1948 about South Korea. Korea (North) is used for coverage after 1948 about North Korea. Korea covers the entire Korean peninsula in current times and before 1948. If a resource discusses a topic of a local place, provide the second level by assigning geographic subdivisions. Follow the form in the 781 tag in the name authority record. Use local geographic subdivision under Korea (South) or Korea (North) which are the two current geographic headings. ‘Korea’ is not used if a local place name is needed.

Ports \$z Korea (South) \$z Pusan, not Ports \$z Korea \$z Pusan.

3.12.12 Korean Art Headings

Use the authorized heading from the subject authority file. Use the period subdivisions listed below (instruction sheet H 1148) under headings for art forms qualified by the adjective Korean, e.g., Art, Korean; Sculpture, Korean; Painting, Korean; Pottery, Korean. Use additional art specific form and topical subdivisions in H 1148 and the appropriate subdivision in H 1095 can be added following the period subdivisions. See instruction sheet H 1250 (Art and fine arts) for further explanation.

Period subdivisions

\$y To 935

\$y To 1900

\$y Koryŏ period, 935-1392

\$y Chosŏn dynasty, 1392-1910

\$y 20th century

\$y 21st century

650 #0 Painting, Korean \$y Chosŏn dynasty, 1392-1910 \$v Exhibitions.

Chapter 4

Information Literacy, Faculty Liaison, Community Outreach and Reference Tools at North American Korean Studies Libraries

4.1. Introduction

By Hana Kim¹

This chapter will guide librarians who deal with user groups in the field of Korean Studies when performing information literacy instruction, reference, and faculty liaison and community outreach activities.

By delivering information literacy services, a Korean Studies librarian can foster successful information seeking and lifelong learning of students and faculty by developing practical skills in acquiring, evaluating, and effectively using information from multiple sources in Korean and English languages.

A Korean Studies librarian may hold a general library instruction, a hands-on workshop (e.g., Korean electronic resources, library catalog search), and a customized class session. Through these meaningful library instruction activities, one may create new relationships and enrich existing ones with faculty, and work collaboratively with them on information literacy planning. In addition, a Korean Studies librarian can help students learn critical thinking and research skills by providing web-based information literacy tutorials through a university's course management system or their library's website, and by developing online research guides (e.g., LibGuides).

¹ Korean Studies Librarian, Cheng Yu Tung East Asian Library, University of Toronto (As of September 2014, Head, Asian Library, University of British Columbia).

Besides teaching information literacy sessions and providing reference and research assistance to faculty and students, as a faculty liaison librarian, a Korean Studies librarian participates in the intellectual life of their institution's Korean Studies scholars. As a true partner for their academic success, one should deeply engage with faculty and students in discipline-related activities (e.g., compiling a bibliography together, collaborating on a grant application, an exhibition, or a conference). Furthermore, reaching out to the local community can be very beneficial for one's library in terms of building networks and potential fundraising.

When handling difficult-to-answer reference or research questions or locating certain resources, a Korean Studies librarian can benefit from several virtual reference services, such as the Ask a Korean Studies Librarian! Service provided by a group of Korean Studies librarians in North America, inkslib (International Network for Korean Studies Librarians), offered by the National Library of Korea, and the National Assembly Library's reference service program.

This chapter also contains basic reference sources (in-print only) on Korean Studies. This will help you to get started in exploring the wonders of Korean Studies.

4.2. Library Instruction/Information Literacy, LibGuide, Lib Catalog Search

By Jude Yang²

4.2.1 Library Instruction/Information Literacy

Information literacy refers to curriculum-related or course-integrated instructional programs designed to teach library users how to locate the information they need quickly and effectively. Also called “library instruction,” “library use instruction,” or “bibliographic instruction,” the information literacy or library instruction program in American academic libraries has been developed to reflect American educational values, experiences, and commitments, and to support higher education curriculum and research in particular.

The Association of College and Research Libraries (ACRL) provides extensive information on information literacy. According to the ACRL, information literacy refers to a set of skills allowing individuals to “recognize when information is needed and have the ability to locate, evaluate, and effectively use the needed information.”³ These days, because of the unprecedented and constantly increasing amount of information we have access to, information literacy is more important. Because of this increasing information complexity, library users, students, and researchers are more likely than ever to need library instruction to help them access all of the information available to them, evaluate and understand that material they do gather, and more importantly, to decide what information is reliable.

To be an information literate individual, students should be able to determine what kind of and how much information they need, how to access this information, how to evaluate its sources, how to use the information to their benefit, and also be able to use the information in an ethical and legal manner. Librarians can help students learn how to figure out what information is needed, develop strategies to search for the material using

² Korea Studies Librarian, University of Hawai’i at Mānoa

³ American Library Association, “Information Literacy Competency Standards for Higher Education, 2000.” <http://www.ala.org/acrl/standards/informationliteracycompetency> (accessed April 26, 2014).

specific databases, maximize web resources, distinguish between primary and secondary sources, distinguish between scholarly and popular materials, and ultimately organize, properly document, and evaluate all of these materials in a beneficial but efficient manner.

Most academic libraries in America provide library instruction sessions for first-year students to help them understand the research process, locate a variety of materials on specific subjects, and explore electronic information resources. Many college students nowadays are familiar with electronic resources and high technologies. They might ask why library instruction is necessary when they can ‘just Google it.’ However, eventually these students realize that just ‘Googling’ is not sufficient for more complex research. Head and Eisenberg reported that students often indicate academic research is more difficult to conduct in this digital age. According to them, one key factor for this difficulty is information overload.⁴ Again according to this article, for many students the most challenging part of any research assignment is just getting started. Assistance at this initial stage can help students navigate the entire research process.

Information literacy instruction can be given as either single, one-time session or semester-long sessions, and in terms of size, either in small group sessions or to a whole class. Compared to general library instruction sessions, class instruction is more focused toward particular course subjects. Course instructors may request to have a formal subject librarian or faculty liaison provide instruction session(s) to their students. The librarian works with the instructor to develop tailored methods to incorporate information literacy into the course itself, including aspects of the course such as objectives, learning outcomes, and assignments. Some academic libraries offer semester-long instruction, where the faculty liaison librarian attends all classes for the semester and provides targeted instruction throughout the semester as arranged with the instructor. More detailed information regarding faculty liaison librarians will be given later in this chapter. The importance of library instruction is particularly emphasized in instances of instruction related to specific topics or regions, where the results of consulting a librarian are expected to be more prominent.

⁴ See A.J. Head and M.B. Eisenberg, “Finding Context: What Today’s College Students Say about Conducting Research in the Digital Age.” *Information Technology and Libraries* 31 no.1 (2012): 21-31.

4.2.1.1 Library Instruction on Resources in Korean Studies

Similarly to other regional studies, the area of Korean Studies as classified by region and topic requires more library instruction, due to its specificity of language and specialized topics. Even within Korean Studies, instruction on how to search for and access suitable materials according to many different classifications of topics is indispensable to students and researchers in Korean Studies. In addition, the importance of having a guide to searching for material in the vernacular language is another reason why offering library instruction is crucial.

When preparing library instruction regarding Korean Studies materials, it is important to be aware of a number of things beforehand. First, you should be aware of the target audience of your instruction. Depending on whether you are assisting an undergraduate or graduate student, the type of content that you present to the student or how you decide to guide the student in his or her research may differ. In most cases, instructing an undergraduate student means teaching the student general search methods and introducing them to easy-to-use search tools, or helping the student become more familiar with using the library system as a whole. On the other hand, when instructing a graduate student who is already focusing on a more specific topic of research, you may choose to give the student more variable material, or place emphasis on more in-depth search methods. Next, it is also useful to be aware of the level of your target's command of language or language fluency. This is due to the fact that in cases where the student prefers to work with Korean over English materials, or in cases where the reverse is true, there will be differences in how you should introduce materials or search methods to the student. Although most cases will fall within the guidelines of what I have written above, as the size of the student body increases or you begin working on a larger scale of instruction, you may choose to attempt many different practice activities and instructional methods.

Overall, the important elements of library instruction for Korean Studies resources are: 1) instruction of material that is directly related to Korean Studies, including journals, online databases, bibliographies, websites and other types of material and their differing characteristics, and how to access these materials; 2) how to use various catalogs at different libraries in order to search for material, and more generally, what these different catalogs may be and how to use them. In terms of Korean materials, the librarian's assistance is necessary when searching for vernacular materials using different catalogs. Not only is it important to have a basic knowledge and understanding of cataloging systems

that use Romanization, it is also important to know how to search for materials using Hangŭl (Korean script), Romanized Korean, or Hancha (Chinese characters). Furthermore, different libraries may use different catalogs, making it important for the librarian to be able to inform the student how to use each catalog in order to maximize search results. If a one-time class instruction session is not enough to fully inform the student of the best methods for searching for Korean vernacular material, it is up to the librarians to make themselves available for individual instruction should any further inquiries arise.

For these reasons, some universities may request that their librarians teach a semester-long course regarding such subjects as research methods or bibliographies, particularly in relation to Chinese, Japanese, and Korean and other regional studies.

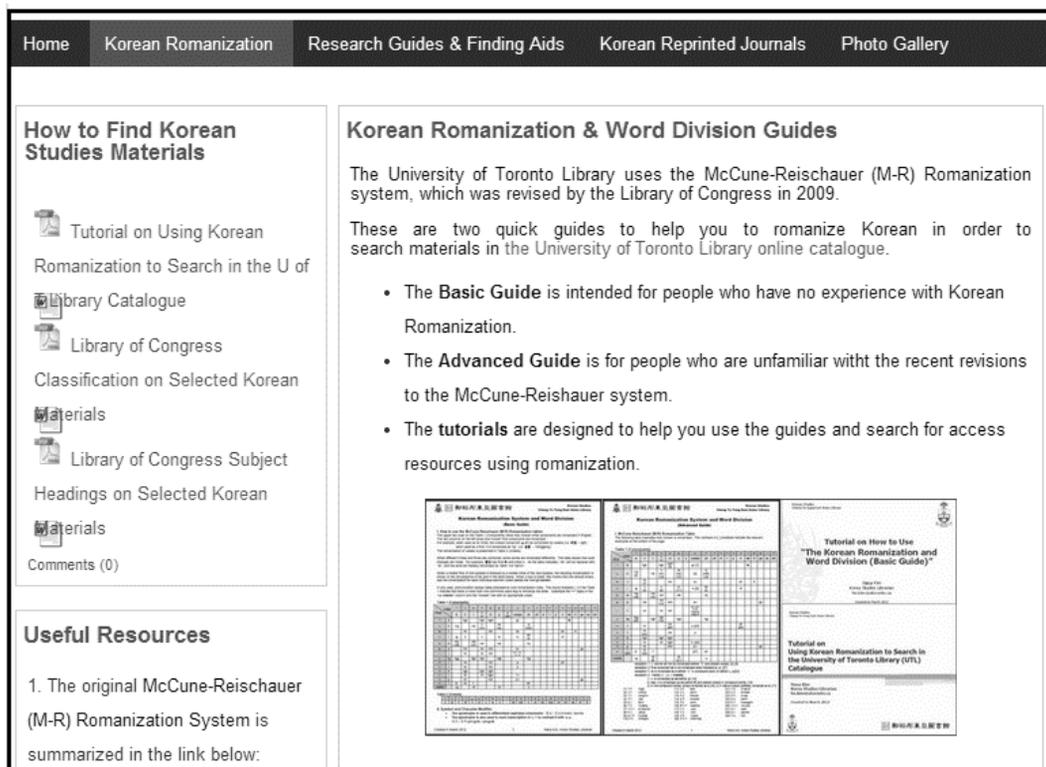
4.2.2 LibGuides

Various techniques are used by librarians to help make the instructional sessions more efficient. The most revolutionary instructional technologies of the past two decades are, in fact, the computer and Internet, because they make so many other types of instructional technologies possible. These additional instructional technologies include educational software, multimedia productions, course management systems, and web-based instruction and online tutorials. Currently, web-based research guides such as Pathfinders, Subject Guides, LibGuides, and so on are extensively used as instruction tools. Subject-based research guides have a long history in libraries that predates the Web as a service delivery mechanism. By the mid-2000s, it was rare to find a library that did not offer research guides available on its website. LibGuide is a very prominent platform of choice, and many libraries have migrated from a previous system, mostly HTML pages, to LibGuides. LibGuides are published not only as instructional guides, but also as course pages, general information about the library, and even information regarding special collections. The major advantage of using LibGuides is that no technical knowledge is needed to publish useful content. Librarians of any skill level can use the program right out of the box and create a subject-specific page. Furthermore, the program has advanced features such as APIs or widget builders to mix and match content. Another advantage is that any content created using LibGuides—a link, file, box, page or guide—is reusable and sharable, so librarians can create reusable templates and build shareable content pieces like a Catalog Search box or a list of Database links. LibGuides offers a 30-day free trial, which can be easily accessed.⁵

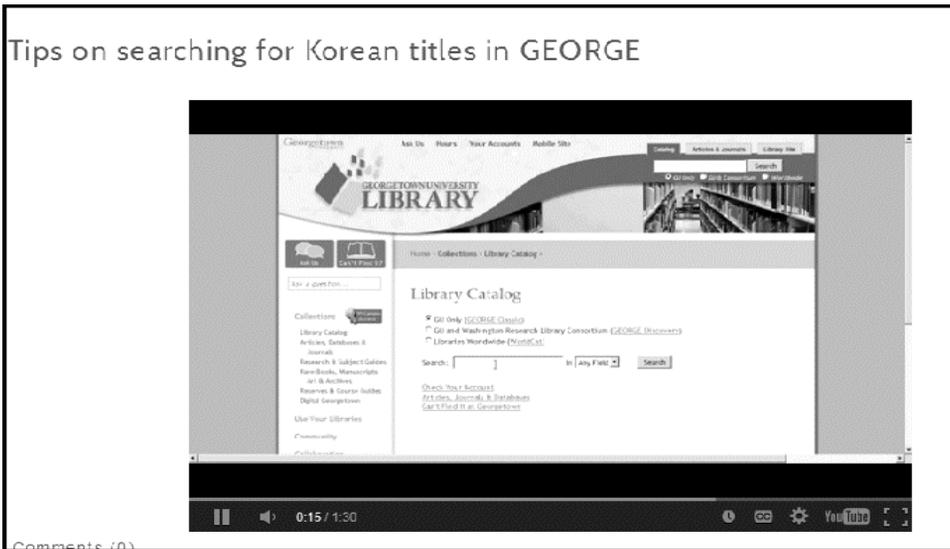
⁵ <http://springshare.com/trial.html>

The majority of Korean-studies guides are made using LibGuides. Among those collections, there are cases like the University of Hawaii at Manoa, which use the LibGuide instead of a collection website. There are also cases where a collection website exists separately from LibGuide, which is used just as a library guide. There are even cases where an institute has no Korean library, but still has Korean Studies guides made using LibGuide. This is likely due to the fact that, as mentioned earlier, the existing content made using LibGuide can be shared and reused by other users.

Looking at the structure of the pages, generally most pages have categories such as “General Information on Korean Studies,” “Finding Books,” “Articles,” “Databases,” and so on, which are made into tabs. Most Korean Studies LibGuide pages commonly place emphasis on the finding of Korean language materials, and in particular, guides about searching for Korean language books.



<Image 1. An example of a LibGuide that provides detailed information about Romanization (University of Toronto Library).>



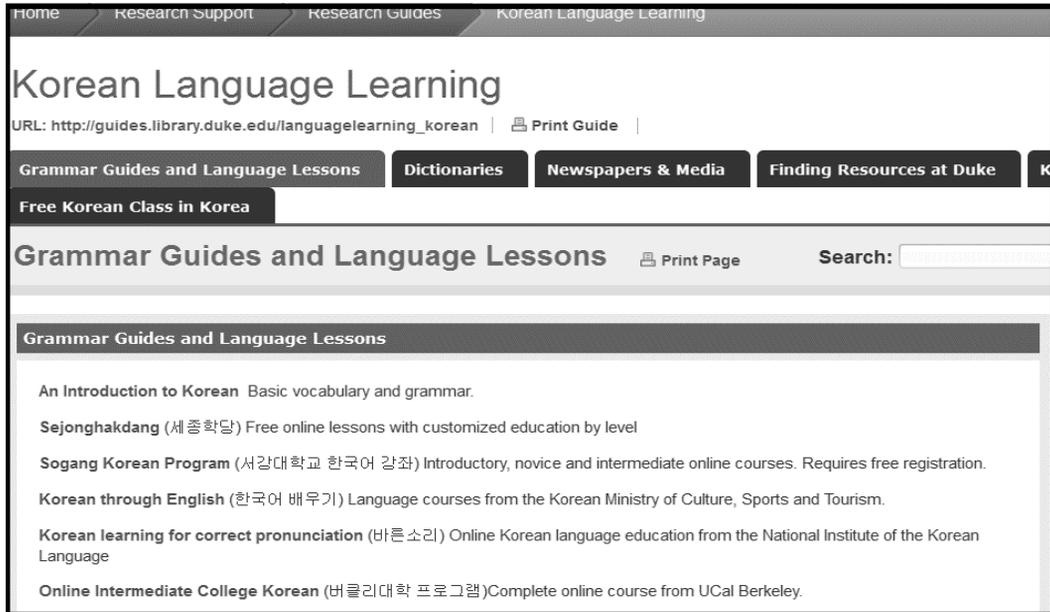
< Image 2. An example of a LibGuide that includes a video tutorial on how to search for Korean materials (Georgetown University Library).>

LibGuides can be made for specific courses. In order to allow students taking the course to be able to access the material efficiently and get the most use out of the LibGuide, the guide should prioritize material related to the class and topical instruction. To make the guide more effective, a close consultation with the course instructor regarding the course syllabus and requests for guides on specific material is needed.



<Image 3. An example of a LibGuide created with a specific course and course material as its focus (University of Hawaii at Manoa Library).>

With LibGuide, it is possible to publish pages about programs that librarians are involved or interested in, library events, or other creative topics that cover various different areas for different patrons.



<Image 4. A LibGuide made for Korean language learning (Duke University Library).>



<Image 5. A LibGuide about Korean popular culture (University of Washington Library).>

4.2.3 Library Catalog Searches

A library catalog (or catalogue) is a register of all bibliographic information found in a library or a library network, including the library's catalog and books, computer files, webpage links, and other various types of bibliographic information. Since 1975, when Ohio State University was the first to start using large-scale online catalogs, the previously existing card catalog systems at most libraries have been replaced by the Online Public Access Catalog (OPAC). Although different libraries may use different online catalogs, and search methods may differ according to each library, there are some overall commonalities as well. However, in the case of Korean Studies materials, it is necessary to consider some differences when searching for materials using different online catalogues. In order to understand OPAC, it is necessary to understand the library management system that provides the information that makes up OPAC.

4.2.3.1 Integrated Library System (ILS)

Most libraries use an Integrated Library System (ILS) to manage the library and to complete various tasks. ILS is also sometimes referred to as a Library Management System (LMS). Although one of the major advantages of using ILS is the easy and effective management of the library through a consolidated system, there is also the inconvenience of needing continual program maintenance from the companies that provide ILS, such as Ex Libris or SirsiDynix, etc. Recently, 19 universities, including the University of Chicago, have come together in order to develop an ILS called Kulie Ole Library Open Environment. A group composed of programmers from the participating libraries, system managers, and external specialists plan for this program to be commercially available beginning in summer 2014.

ILS is usually composed of two user interfaces—one for library staff and the other for library patrons. One interface is the module used by the staff of various departments: Acquisitions may use it to perform tasks like ordering, receiving, and invoicing materials; Cataloging will use it to classify and index library materials; Circulation will use it to lend and receive materials to and from patrons; while Serials will use it to track journal and newspaper holdings. Then, there is OPAC, which is the public interface for library users. That is to say, it is the library catalog that patrons use to search for materials and it is the only public interface for users in ILS.

As a result, depending on which ILS a library is using, the methods of searching for material using that library's catalog may differ. This is why specific guides for each library regarding proper search methods are necessary. Not only that, even if libraries use the same ILS, depending on circumstances and the individual library, the OPAC that users interact with may be different. For example, the University of Hawaii, Columbia University, and Yale University all use Voyager, but their OPACs are called Voyager, Clio, and Orbis, respectively, and there are differences in the display and search methods used for each of these systems.

4.2.3.2 Searching for Korean Studies Materials in Library Catalogs

When searching for Korean Studies material, especially material written in the Korean language, there are a number of search methods that can be employed. Korean-language materials available at North American library institutions are cataloged in both Korean script and Romanization (either using the ALA-LC Romanization and Word Division System or the McCune-Reischauer system).⁶

- Searching using Hangŭl: Although searching using Hangŭl (Korean script) may be the ideal situation for users who are more familiar with Korean, when compared to searching by Romanization, it still has many limitations. Depending on the catalog, the entering of inventory into library catalogs using Hangŭl Korean script is a fairly recent development. As a result, searching by Hangŭl may not bring up older entries that were input via Romanization. Not only that, there are still unresolved technical issues which can also limit the extent of the results of searching by Hangŭl. Finally, when searching by Hangŭl, the problem of proper spacing from catalog to catalog is another issue that can affect search results.

For example, when searching for the title “신문 기사로 본 조선 영화” using Hangŭl, according to what system you are using, the same title words may need to be entered but with different spacing in order to pull up this same item. According to what system you are using, this search query might be:

⁶ Please refer to the Romanization and word division/cataloging chapter.

‘신문(space)기사로(space)본(space)조선(space)영화’
‘신문(space)기사(space)로(space)본(space)조선(space)영화’
‘신문기사로본조선영화’
‘신문(space)기사’

In other instances, depending on the library catalog, the spacing of the Hangŭl characters may not be an issue at all.

- Searching using Romanization: Searching by Romanization is the most effective method to locate Korean Studies materials for several reasons, as mentioned above. The McCune-Reischauer Romanization system is based on the pronunciation of Korean script, which is different from the official Revised Romanization system in Korea. The patron will need to use correct Romanization to retrieve Korean materials in the catalog or search tool. Therefore, the better mastery a user has of the ALA-LC Romanization and McCune-Reischauer system the more effective his or her search will be.
- Searching for material in Hancha: Although this is no longer very common in recent years, there may still be materials that have titles written in Hancha. In this case, the titles will have been entered into the catalog as Chinese characters, and therefore cannot be found using Hangŭl. In other words, even a search using the Hangŭl equivalent of the Hancha in question will not bring up the item. For example, when searching for the title “20세기 韓國文學의 이해,” a search using the Hangŭl “20세기 한국문학의 이해” will not bring up the desired result. However, in this case you could find this item through a search using Romanization: “20-segi hanguk numhak ui ihae.” This is another area that will need to be further explained through library instruction.

When searching for Korean Studies material not limited to materials in Korean, it is helpful to use such methods as:

- Searching by Subject (for example entering “short stories-- Korean”);
- Searching by Keyword and including Korea as a search phrase (for example entering (literature) AND (Korea*)), and so on.

It may be helpful to prepare separate search manuals for different catalogs explaining the most efficient search methods depending on what material a patron are trying to find. This would be a helpful step not only for the librarian to use as a personal reference, but also to assist the librarian in instructing library patrons.

4.2.3.3 Major Catalogs for Korean Studies

- WorldCat (World Catalog) www.worldcat.org

WorldCat is the Online Computer Library Center (OCLC) catalog of books, web resources, and other material worldwide, and is a union catalog of most major libraries in North America.

If the item you are searching for is located in a specific library, WorldCat provides a direct link to that library for the location information, such as call number, specific library or collection location, loan status, and so on. In addition, one of the major advantages of WorldCat is that searching by Hangŭl is both effective and convenient. For libraries that are using WorldCat in conjunction with a library catalog, assisting patrons looking for Korean material to use WorldCat first to locate material available at certain libraries may also be a good method of helping patrons who are unfamiliar with using Romanization.

- Library of Congress Online Catalog <http://catalog.loc.gov>

The Library of Congress Online Catalog contains approximately 14 million records of various types of materials. The catalog includes Romanized records for Chinese, Japanese, Korean and other language material cataloged since 1984.

Korean language records are cataloged using a Romanized script, while the information such as author, title, publisher fields, etc. are also provided in Korean characters.

- Dibrary <http://www.dibrary.net/>

Dibrary is the online, integrated search catalog for the National Library of Korea. Using this catalog, it is possible to search through all the material held by the National Library of Korea, the material held by public libraries linked to the National Library of Korea throughout the country, and all of the archived records throughout the country as well.

- National Assembly Digital Library

http://www.nanet.go.kr/03_dlib/01_datasearch/datasearch.jsp

This is the online catalog for the National Assembly Library. Using this catalog, it is possible to search for materials held by the National Assembly Library in addition to government publications and documents published by the Korean National Assembly. Depending on whether or not there is an agreement between the specific library and the National Assembly Library, some overseas libraries may have full-text access to this catalog.

- KOLIS-Network <http://www.nl.go.kr/kolisnet/kolis/kolis.php>

Korean Library Information System Network is a union catalog of the public libraries of South Korea including the National Library, the Korea Education and Research Information Service (KERIS), the National Assembly Library, and international libraries such as the National Library of Wales, National Library of Australia, National Library of Canada, etc.

- Digital Library of Korean Studies <http://lib.aks.ac.kr/DLiWebeng/>

The Academy of Korean Studies (AKS) library (the Changsŏ-gak) specializes in Korean Studies materials and holds valuable ancient documents that were once kept at the royal library during Korea's Chosŏn dynasty (1392-1910). This online catalog retrieves all materials hosted at Changsŏ-gak, which includes, bibliographical notes and images of ancient documents, Ph.D. and MA. theses conferred by the Graduate School of Korean Studies at the AKS, and research materials published by AKS. Some databases also include audio materials.

- RISS <http://www.riss.kr/index.do>

This online catalog is provided by the Korea Education and Research Information Service (KERIS). It is a union catalog of all the research resources published, held, and subscribed to by all academic libraries in Korea.

4.3. Faculty Liaison and Community Outreach Activities

By Hana Kim⁷

4.3.1 Faculty Liaison

The essence of the faculty liaison librarian's primary role is to link, by facilitating communication, between the academic community and the library, between students and the library, and between the library and the wider world of information. Thus, a faculty liaison librarian works with an academic unit (e.g., a department or faculty) to ensure that the library-related needs (around research, teaching, and collections) of the unit's faculty members and graduate students are met.

In this section, teaching and instruction-related liaison activities will not be covered, as these activities have already been dealt with in another article in this chapter.

In each university, the Korean Studies unit may differ in its culture and traditions, so the details of a library liaison relationship will vary. However, the bottom line is that any faculty or students in Korea-related studies in an institution can receive customized services for any questions by contacting a designated Korean Studies liaison librarian in their institution. This is similar to faculty liaison activities in other area studies such as Chinese Studies, Japanese Studies, Slavic Studies, Latin American Studies, etc.

Besides providing information literacy sessions and research assistance to faculty and graduate students, a Korean Studies librarian may typically practice the following liaison activities:

- Communicating (electronically or at a meeting) each term with the faculty and graduate students in the field of Korean Studies to provide information and seek feedback on such themes as:
 - new resources (in various formats) available through the library
 - new library services
 - library learning opportunities for faculty and students

⁷ Korean Studies Librarian, Cheng Yu Tung East Asian Library, University of Toronto (As of September 2014, Head, Asian Library, University of British Columbia).

- developments in scholarly communications (e.g., copyright, publishing, open access)
- Informing the faculty and graduate students of any developments in the library that may be relevant to the faculty and graduates' work whenever they occur
- Contacting new faculty members to introduce them to the library's resources and services, and to learn their specific needs

To meet emerging needs of faculty and graduate students within an ever-challenging economic climate, Korean Studies librarians should strategically develop and provide more proactive and creative methods that may be used in their faculty liaison activities.

The following activities are some ideas, selected either from the suggesting reading resources listed in the end of the faculty liaison section, or from successful past/current practices at the University of Toronto, where I serve, and from other institutions.

4.3.1.1 Meeting Your Faculty

Librarians are encouraged to talk with the faculty members in their assigned areas frequently (Jones 2013).

- Invite them to: lunch, a new faculty reception, or an appropriate library event

Creating relationships with an assigned liaison area and building quality relationships with faculty members and graduate students on campus are crucial elements in a successful liaison.

Many university libraries in the United States and Canada provide a welcome reception or a similar event for newly hired faculty or graduate students each fall. For example, the University of Toronto Libraries have been annually holding a Wine & Cheese Reception for all incoming Ph.D. students and faculty members. There would be many different ways of organizing such an event, but the University of Toronto Libraries matched any new Ph.D. students and faculty members with their subject area faculty liaison librarians and intentionally made them mingle together during the event. It provides an opportunity for new Ph.D. students and faculty members to discover how the University of Toronto Libraries can help support their research and teaching and at the same time each faculty liaison librarian can be introduced to their

new user groups and start to build an important partner relationship for the coming years. If this sort of reception or meeting is not yet established at your institution, you can suggest such an idea to your library's administration or your faculty liaison committee, or your library department can try out such an initiative on its own.



A wine & cheese reception for new PhD students and faculty
at the University of Toronto Libraries
(Photo Credit: Laura Anderson)

- Meet with candidates for department positions to discuss what resources would be available to them.

Being involved with candidates who are interviewing for faculty, post-doctoral, and graduate student positions is one of the excellent ways to become acquainted with potential library users. Depending on each institution's practices or policy, there may be a number of different approaches to being involved in such a process: being a part of a hiring committee, attending a job talk, providing a subject library tour to candidates, or having a meeting with candidates. For example, the University of Toronto Libraries provide a customized subject library tour for faculty candidates as a mandatory part of the job interview process. This has been proven to be an invaluable opportunity for faculty liaison librarians to find out about the candidates' research interests, and what they are accustomed to using at their previous or current

institution. As for the candidates, they benefit from this experience by learning about the highlights of the library collection and services. If they become hired, they immediately become library users, as they already know what the library has to offer them and they already have a connection with their faculty liaison librarian who understands their teaching and research needs.

4.3.1.2 Building Relationships

- Get on the department's listserv or distribution list.

Ask to be added to departmental email lists or collect Korean Studies-related academic unit's listservs on campus, including faculty and graduate students. Additionally, creating your own mailing list from identified user groups in Korean Studies can be a good investment. These tools can be used as a major communication channel for promoting the library's new resources, services, events, or providing other important information.

- Attend events sponsored by Korean Studies-related academic unit (e.g., East Asian Studies Department, Center for Korean Studies).

According to a study conducted by Arendt and Lotts (2012, 155-177), being visible on campus and throughout the department ranked sixth on the list of "most important things for liaisons to do".

Attending events (e.g., book launches, colloquiums, term kickstart or term-end parties) organized in the assigned subject area is one way of showing your interest and availability towards your user group. Frequently, faculty and graduate students will receive their liaison services while conversing casually with their faculty liaison librarian at an event, not at the library.

- Cultivate faculty and graduate students who already use the library to become your advocates.

It is vital to dedicate your time to building relationships with faculty and graduate students who are frequent library users. When there are difficult times in libraries (e.g., budget cuts (in collection or human resources), expensive e-resources

subscriptions, etc.), these user groups can become lifelong library advocates and supporters. This relationship will also make the user groups understand that their faculty liaison librarians are their best advocates in the libraries, as on-campus the librarians are the ones who try to ensure that the diverse needs of the user groups are met. The endeavors towards building a strong relationship with faculty and graduate students can turn out to be a true win-win situation.

4.3.1.3 Communicating Professionally

- Congratulate faculty and graduate students on their publications, grant funding, etc.

For librarians to be successful liaisons, monitor your user group's research and scholarship activities by reading newsletters, listservs' messages (e.g., koreanStudies Moderated Korean Studies Internet Discussion List, H-NEAsia, H-Asia, EASIANTH), journals (e.g., The Journal of Asian Studies, The Journal of Korean Studies, Acta Koreana) and praise their achievements (e.g., promotions, publications, translations, grant funding opportunities, awards).

- Write an introductory letter to faculty members and graduate students.

Often when the faculty members or graduate students visit libraries in Korea for their research, these libraries request them to submit an introductory letter from a Korean Studies librarian or a library director of their own institution. This service is a great way to directly support the faculty and graduate students' research.

- Ask faculty to include the contact information of the Korean Studies librarian in their syllabi.

This is a simple step to indicate the Korean Studies librarian at an institution is one of the key persons for the students' academic success in their courses. This also enables close coordination and collaboration with teaching faculty and senior graduate students.

4.3.1.4 Tailoring to Faculty Interests

- Keep a profile on each faculty and Ph.D. student's research interests and accomplishments.

This may be a time consuming activity; however, it is worthwhile to compile, because this profile plays a big role in supporting those you serve. This tool clearly provides a history of each client's research interests and teaching and can serve as a quick reference note for you. If your clientele is very large in size, you may begin selectively in terms of compiling the profiles and later expand the scope.

- Survey faculty regarding what liaison services they use or need.

Checking regularly (e.g., yearly or bi-annually) with faculty and graduate students on what liaison services work and do not work is a necessary reality-check routine. On the other hand, you may want to perform a survey or an evaluation with faculty each term after the completion of any courses that you and the faculty made any collaborative efforts on. This way you can review your services immediately in order to better assist and support your user groups in the next round.

- Work with faculty in designing distance education courses.

Distance education is planned learning that normally occurs in a different location from teaching, and as a result requires special techniques of course design, special instructional techniques, special methods of communication by electronic and other technology, as well as special organizational and administrative arrangements (Moore and Kearsley 1996, 2).

Faculty liaison librarians can be important collaborators for faculty who teach distance education courses. Partnership between the two groups is especially essential during the planning phase of such courses. Identification of appropriate online library resources is a vital component to the legitimacy and ultimate success of distance courses (Jenkins 2005, 82).

Distance learning courses may not be so common in the field of Korean Studies yet; however, as in recent years more and more world-leading universities have been offering Massive Open Online Courses (MOOCs), faculty liaison librarians for Korean Studies should try to prepare for this growing interest and technology. In fact,

Harvard University has already begun to offer MOOCs on Chinese Studies through edX. Some other institutions have also begun offering courses on area studies. Furthermore, this exciting recent development in higher education may allow colleges and universities to offer courses and faculty support for their students in departments where they lag behind, for example, in Korean Studies. As this is a growing area that teaching faculty will continue to explore, it can be an opportunity for Korean Studies librarians to partner with teaching faculty to support and assist in designing online courses in Korean Studies by providing information on relevant library resources and use of copyrighted material for instruction.

In addition, many universities in North America offer continuing education programs via distance learning. This is an area in which Korean Studies librarians may find a potential for collaboration with teaching faculty. There are some foreign language or translation distance learning courses (e.g., Korean language) offered in such continuing education programs. Although this particular user group may be much smaller than your regular client base, the faculty liaison librarians should try to continuously challenge themselves by being proactive in finding new clientele and providing adequate support.

4.3.1.5 Collaborating with Faculty

- Team-teach a class.

Team-teaching a class is an effective way of collaborating with faculty. This can be done by a Korean Studies librarian with faculty, or also by a group of East Asian Studies librarians, depending on the subject matter. Often, group team-teaching is useful for general East Asian Studies courses having a Korean, Japanese and Chinese Studies component to the courses. This group team-teaching can later be developed with individual teaching or tutoring by each subject liaison librarian as the course progresses during the term.

- Work together on a bibliography.

Compiling a bibliography of a certain subject area or a collection of the library together with faculty is a perfect opportunity for collaboration. Faculty will be able to get to know what a faculty liaison librarian can do, and they will see their faculty liaison librarian as a valued colleague and resource at the institution.

A good example of building a bibliography jointly done by a faculty member and a Korean Studies librarian is *Korean History: A Bibliography* (www.hawaii.edu/korea/biblio) compiled by Kenneth R. Robinson of International Christian University. It is maintained by the University of Hawaii's Center for Korean Studies.

- Collaborate on a grant, an exhibition, or a conference.

Preparing a grant application, either faculty-driven or library-driven, (e.g., collection digitization project, information literacy instruction, lecture series) or an exhibition is an opportunity for a productive partnership between faculty and library.

Here are some actual examples of successful collaborations between faculty and library:

1. At the University of Toronto, the Centre for the Study of Korea held the inaugural University of Toronto Korea Day Cultural Fair in 2013. As one of the co-organizers, the University's Cheng Yu Tung East Asian Library presented highlights of the Korean Collection at a book display booth in order to increase awareness of library resources on Korean Studies and to promote the library's services to on-campus and external users in other universities, and to high school students who are interested in Korea and Korean culture.



The Korean Book Booth
at the inaugural University of Toronto Korea Day Cultural Fair
(Photo Credit: Jay Seo)

2. At the University of Washington, with the support of the Department of Asian Language & Literature and the Korean Studies Program of the Henry M. Jackson School of International Studies, a visiting scholar and the East Asia Library developed an exhibition, entitled “Between Liberation Space and Time of Need” in 2007. It showcased the works of Korean writers, artists and scholars from 1945-1950.
3. At Stanford University, in 2012 the East Asia Library had an exhibition of photos and selected books related to humanitarian assistance for North Korea (the Democratic People’s Republic of Korea). The photos were taken by Katharina Zellweger, who was the 2011-2012 Pantech Fellow in Korean Studies at the institution.
4. At Columbia University, in 2012 the C.V. Starr East Asian Library co-hosted, along with the Center for Korean Research, a one-full day Conant Collection symposium entitled, "The Korean War and its Aftermath: Cinematic Memories from the Theodore Conant Collection", showcasing the library’s recently acquired Theodore Richard Conant Collection.
5. At the University of California, Berkeley, in 2013, the C.V. Starr East Asian Library co-sponsored, along with the Center for Korean Studies, a one-day event, entitled “International Conference on the Technology and Development of Metal Movable-Type Printing and Print Culture in East Asia”.

In conclusion, the librarian who understands and speaks the “language” of a specific discipline will communicate more effectively with the scholars in the discipline (Yang and Frank 1999, 10). Korean Studies librarians as liaison librarians should continuously and comprehensively learn of scholarship in Korean studies and try to keep abreast of the current trends of the field as a key partner for faculty and students.

By using the activities listed above and the aid of a creative mind, this will enable Korean Studies librarians to successfully demonstrate their value to their institutions and become invaluable partners for faculty and graduate students.

4.3.1.6 Suggested Readings

Holtze, T. "100 ways to reach your faculty" Paper presented at the OLOS preconference at the American Library Association annual meeting, Atlanta, GA, June 13-14, 2002.

Public Relations and Marketing. "Subject Specialist Liaison Librarians Brochure." Penn State University Libraries.

http://www.libraries.psu.edu/content/dam/psul/up/rcr/documents/RCR_Subject_Specialist_Liaison_Brochure.pdf

The Task Force on Subject Librarian Re-visioning. "Engaging with library users: sharpening our vision as subject librarians for the Duke University libraries." Duke University Library. <http://library.duke.edu/sites/default/files/dul/about/subject-librarian-report-2011.pdf>.

4.3.2 Community Outreach

In terms of community outreach, in general, there are two major audiences: 1) the campus community and 2) the local community.

4.3.2.1 Campus Community Outreach for Undergraduate Students

For a faculty liaison librarian, reaching out to undergraduate students on campus is another important linking task for the library and the student community. Your target group in the undergraduate student community may range from students majoring or minoring in Korean Studies, to those registering one or more courses on Korea, or on to individuals who are part of Korea-related student associations or university clubs or members of the campus's Korean research groups.

A first step in process can be identifying these available groups on campus. Then the next step can be building a network with them. A librarian can be engaged with students by attending or sponsoring their events, or having a meeting with the leader of each association or club.

After finding out who is out there on campus in your area and building a network with key contacts in student groups, working with them collaboratively on undergraduate-focused events or projects as part of library initiatives can foster bonds. Some examples of such activities would be running a Korean language-exchange club or a Korean book club, or providing a customized library tour on the Korean subject area, preparing a library exhibit by working with student groups, or co-hosting or sponsoring a speaker series with student groups.

Providing maximum support while performing these activities is as important as providing information literacy sessions or reference services, as it is in line with the library's mission of helping students reach their highest potential and achieve academic success.

4.3.2.2 Local Community Outreach

As one of the many job duties of Korean Studies librarians, they are often required to reach out to their local community. This differs from liaison activities in that it involves initiatives that aim to reach the general public. Reaching out to the local community can be very beneficial for your library in terms of building networks and potential fundraising.

- Use a special occasion for promoting your collections

There are various ideas for performing community outreach activities, but one idea would be organizing some programs or events for the general public.

For example, to celebrate Asian Heritage Month in Canada, the Cheng Yu Tung East Asian Library of the University of Toronto launched a two-month exhibition, "Embracing Our Art", to showcase works by Asian Canadian artists. This eventually led to a number of art work donations to the library after the exhibition was completed. As for the event, the library was able to promote its collection on Asian Canadian arts, immigration history, and cultures.

Likewise, in the United States, many institutions prepare events to celebrate the Asian-Pacific American Heritage Month in the Month of May each year.

If there are constraints in terms of funding support or manpower, promoting Korean culture or Korea virtually by using social media or the library websites and featuring articles or video clips on the library's Korean collection and services on local media could be an alternative approach that a library may pursue.

- Guest Lectures

Hosting a guest lecture at libraries is one of the most common types of community outreach activities. Guest lectures can be organized on a theme per term or academic year, or on an individual theme per lecture. Depending on a library's budget, inviting guest lecturers can stay local in scope or go beyond. In order to minimize costs for inviting guest lecturers, having an information channel for being alerted yourself of who will be in town helps greatly. Inviting any important scholars, artists, policy makers, or other well-known figures who happen to be in town for other occasions may help overcome your budget constraints for inviting guest lecturers, and also helps tremendously in promoting your library events to the local community.

At the University of Toronto, the Cheng Yu Tung East Asian Library has been running numerous guest lectures for the local community as well as the campus community. The Asian Canadian Lecture Series is one of the examples. The lecture series included various lecturers from many different fields such as film makers, writers, scholars, painters, musicians, and journalists.

At the University of Southern California, the Korean Heritage Library has organized diverse lectures and seminars to reach out the local community. For example, in 2010, they hosted a seminar promoting the Korean language entitled "Internationalizing Hangul", by Professor Sangoak Lee of Seoul National University.

- Book Sale

Operating a book sale can be an effective way for libraries to get connected with the local community. It provides an opportunity to promote the library's Korean collection and services, build networks, and most importantly raise money and get rid of unwanted items at the library, as a lack of space is always a key issue in academic libraries. The book sale may be arranged annually or more frequently as it suits the library.

- Gifts and Donations (gifts-in-kind)

Libraries greatly benefit from gifts and donations received from the local community. This is an excellent way of adding rare, limited, or out-of-print titles to the library's collection, and adding missing volumes of serials.

At the University of Toronto, a few local community members' rare material donations added great value to the library's Korean Collection: Min Family Correspondence Collection, North Korean photographs and media collection, and the International Human Rights Campaign for South Korea Collection.

At the University of Southern California, its Korean Heritage Library was able to build a rich Korean Studies collection through gifts and donations from the local community such as "The Reverend V. W. Peters Collection", "Henry DeYoung Collection", and "Richard Khim Korean American Video Collection".

Similarly, libraries can also make a donation of any unwanted or duplicate materials to the local community (e.g., local Korean American Associations, local Korean Canadian Associations, local Korean churches, and local Korean language schools).

Besides the ideas listed above, hosting storytelling workshops (e.g., Korean traditional or modern stories), film festivals or movie nights (e.g., South Korean blockbuster movies, documentaries, North Korean movies), efforts in preserving a local community's history by collaborating with the local community (e.g., digitizing Korean local newspapers, building a database for the local community's heritage) are some additional initiatives that may be practiced. Any creative partnership or collaboration with a local community is a meaningful and rewarding outreach effort that a Korean Studies librarian can make.

In conclusion, knowing and understanding the needs of your undergraduate student community on campus and of the local community is essential to effectively acting as a bridge between the library and the respective community. Customizing library services according to their needs and offering them to those communities will foster a learning community on Korean Studies, and create a long-term support group for the library and the Korean collection.

4.3.2.3 Bibliographies

Arendt, J., and M. Lotts. 2012. What liaisons say about themselves and what faculty say about their liaisons, a U.S. survey. *Libraries and the Academy*, 12 (2): 155-177.

Jenkins, P. O. 2005. *Faculty-librarian relationships*. Oxford: Chandos Publishing.

Jones, Cotina. 2013. Tips for Becoming a Successful Academic Librarian Liaison at a Small College or University. Doody's Core Titles.

<http://www.doody.com/dct/PublicFeaturedArticle.asp?SiteContentID=109> (cited January 10, 2014).

Moore, M., and G. Kearsley. 1996. *Distance Education: A Systems View*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.

Yang, Julie, and Don Frank. 1999. Working Effectively with Scholars: A Key to Academic Library Success. *Georgia Library Quarterly*, 36: 10.

4.4. Ask a Korean Studies Librarian and Other Reference Services

By Hyokyoung Yi⁸

4.4.1 Ask a Korean Studies Librarian

4.4.1.1 Brief History

In the fall of 2009 the members of the Korean Collections Consortium of North America (KCCNA) launched the “Ask a Korean Studies Librarian” project. A free-of-charge virtual professional reference service open to the public on matters related to Korean Studies, it is the only such resource in North America.

Although the program is still young, the value placed on cooperative reference service dates back to the early years of the KCCNA, which has a longstanding commitment to increasing opportunities for resource sharing in order to meet the needs of the fast growing development of overseas Korean Studies programs. The KCCNA continually works hard to reach out to institutions with small and medium sized Korean collections in an attempt to assist their resource needs by making accessible the collections developed by KCCNA member libraries.

In 2006, KCCNA members held a serious discussion about virtual reference services as a part of their initiative to increase the use of the Korean Studies collections they had purchased⁹. At first, there was some concern about duplicating the services offered by “Ask An East Asian Studies Librarian,” a virtual reference desk for general questions on East Asian Studies run by the Council of East Asia Librarians’ group. However, the KCCNA hoped that its virtual reference service would raise awareness of such services within the Korean studies community, which indeed it did. In addition, the collaborative virtual reference service enables librarians to provide assistance to Korean researchers whose home institutions do not have a Korean studies librarian. As a result, the service transcends geographic and time zone differences.

⁸ Korean Studies Librarian and Head of Public Services at East Asia Library, University of Washington

⁹ KCCNA minutes 2006

In 2007, a few Korean studies librarians conducted a small study on the need for and feasibility of such a program. Their findings revealed a high demand among independent scholars for reference help. Many participants in the CEAL/CKM's 2008 Korean Librarianship Workshop likewise strongly endorsed the need for such a service.

Although there was hesitation among some librarians due to the workload increase the new service would require, there was ultimately widespread agreement that it was worthwhile in order to promote the sharing resources and expertise and aid the Korean Studies community.

After a thorough review of the pros and cons, at the KCCNA's 2008 annual meeting, the decision was finally made to pursue the virtual reference service.

4.4.1.2 Service Design

This is how "Ask a Korean Studies Librarian" works. It is managed via Google Group application and fields questions from all over the globe in English or Korean. Anyone can post questions to the Group simply by sending an email to askkorea@googlegroups.com. The KCCNA's member librarians or other participating experts will then answer questions within 48 business hours.

Any service has limitations and guidelines. The following is a general set of principles for the "Ask a Korean Studies Librarian" service.

- Participants:
All KCCNA members participate in providing virtual reference service. Initially we hoped to recruit additional Korean Studies librarians to serve as volunteers on this project from outside the KCCNA community, but were unsuccessful. As a result, currently the service is provided exclusively by KCCNA members.
- Users:
The service is available for anyone who is in need of reference services, regardless of their geographic location.
- Delivery of service:
Due to the limited resources, the goal of delivery time for the service is within 48 business hours.

- Language:
English and Korean are both acceptable.

- Software application:
Using the Google Group application, we receive questions in the form of email. Users send their questions to askkorea@googlegroups.com. All the participating librarians receive questions and answer to questions. The Google Group application was chosen because it is free to use and has both bulletin board and archiving functions.

- Division of work among members:
Among the 14 members of the KCCNA, each librarian takes a monthly duty to be a main person in charge of receiving reference questions and answering to those questions. The librarian on duty is also responsible for maintaining the Google Group site, which means promptly posting any questions and disposing of spam. While the librarian-in-charge bears the brunt to the responsibility, everyone else serves as a back-up on an as needed basis. The Ask Korean Studies Librarian site manager reminds members each month for job rotation.

- Subject categories:
In contrast to the KCCNA collection development guideline, the assigned subject areas will not apply to this virtual reference service.

- Promotion:
We promote the service on a regular basis via eastlib, Korean studies listserv, etc.

4.4.1.3 Evaluation

Since the opening of the service in 2009, the service has been highly regarded as valuable to many independent scholars as well as librarian colleagues who are also managing Korean references in addition to their main role as Chinese/Japanese librarians.

In 2013, a review of this program was reported at the KCCNA annual meeting. Here is a brief summary of the review, including statistics.

- 43 months (Sept. 2009 thru March 2013)
- 248 questions in total

- 693 emails were exchanged among the Consortium librarians
- 2.8 emails per question
- 5.8 questions per month
- 16 emails per month
- Cleared many spam and junk mails
- Librarian participation: currently all 14 librarians are on duty

The report highlighted some of the major achievements of the “Ask Korean Studies Librarian” virtual reference service.

- Successfully outreached to the Korean Studies community (both scholars and librarians) at smaller scale libraries with no designated Korean studies librarian.
- The monthly rotating system worked very well for sharing and distributing the work load among the KCCNA librarians. Although one librarian is on duty each month, the rest of the librarians pitched in to help patrons with extra tips and sources thereby enriching patrons’ service experiences. The quality of service was improved by the cooperative virtual references system.
- Most of the time we kept our promise regarding the 48hours response time to questions.
- This service not only served scholars and other librarians but also facilitated that exchanging of skills and knowledge among KCCNA librarians. Knowledge sharing among the participating Korean studies librarians was something we didn’t expect but was a welcomed bonus.
- This service has created the opportunity to collaborate more with librarians in Korea exchanging expertise and resources to better help patrons outside of Korea. One example is the collaboration with the National Library of Korea via INKSLIB, the International Network for Korean Studies Librarians.

The 2013 review also pointed out issues and concerns to be addressed in the future.

- Unstable Google Group application: Over the years there have been some changes in the configuration of the Google Group application. The front page as well as the homepage of our “Ask a Korean Studies Librarian” service was deleted as a part of some changes in the Google Group system. As a result we lost our main information page about the “Ask a Korean Studies Librarian” service.

Other technical problems included conflicts with email account associated with specific institutions as well as with Google usernames and passwords.

- Privacy issues: Since Google searches retrieve content from the Google Groups application, our patrons' identity and their reference/research questions do not remain confidential.
- There was a question about archiving our reference transactions. The need for archiving has yet to be examined. Initially we thought archiving was a must for compiling a knowledge basis from reference questions and answers but this question is to be reexamined. If it is necessary, what platform will we use?
- Copyright and License issues: Often times patrons need electronic sources that are protected by license and copyright. Many electronic databases also include rights for interlibrary loan and interpretation of this rule often requires a librarian's judgment.

4.4.1.4 Suggestions

Although there are some technological issues to work on to improve the overall quality of virtual service environment, the "Ask a Korean Studies Librarian" virtual reference service is an exemplary and very creative model which was adopted just as collaboration of this sort became a trend at American research libraries. In that sense, the Korean Studies librarians have been on the front lines in working collaboratively, reaching out to potential patrons, and sharing the information about available resources worldwide.

The collaboration could be further expanded in partnership with librarians outside of North America. By doing that, the service could increase knowledge regarding available sources thereby expanding the quality service offered to our users. Currently, the National Library of Korea and the National Assembly Library are actively participating in the program and sharing their resources with us. We hope to establish closer relationships with other academic libraries in South Korea as well as in other countries in East Asia and Europe.

4.4.2 The International Network for Korean Studies Librarians (INKSLIB)

Founded by the National Library of Korea, the INKSLIB has served as a major collaborative network between overseas Korean Studies librarian sand librarians in Korea for the international partnerships that provide mutual benefits.

INKSLIB has various projects and programs working with overseas Korean studies libraries. One of the programs, called ‘Ask a Librarian for Librarians’, is a virtual reference service available to the overseas Korean studies librarians. Managed by the National Library of Korea librarians, the service has been very useful in providing resources unavailable in North America. INKSLIB frequently offers reference assistance in matters such as verifying citations, providing copies of resources, and answering very challenging reference questions that require expertise from Korea.

The service is managed mostly through email exchanges with a designated librarian at INKSLIB or by uploading a question to a reference question bulletin board. Although the service requests is not frequent , having the network with librarians in Korea is very crucial as we do need their help in order to better assist and enrich our services to overseas Korean scholars and students. The website is <http://nl.go.kr/inkslib>.

4.4.3 National Assembly Library of Korea’s Reference Service

The National Assembly Library of Korea (NALK) also provides free reference services when the following conditions are met: 1) the material is not available within North America via ILL; 2) it is held by NALK; 3) it is requested by a library (not the user) per Korean copyright laws. NALK also provides Korean Studies reference service when questions are referred from overseas librarians. Requests for reference service can be emailed to: korearefer@nanet.go.kr

4.5. Basic Reference Sources in Print Format

By Kyungmi Chun¹⁰

This guide lists only printed works. If a work is available also in electronic format, the URL is provided. The online version may have a different title from the print version, but the online titles are not provided in this list. In many cases, online editions are more up to date than print versions, especially for statistical information.

Only selective titles are included in this guide, due to limited space. For a more comprehensive and annotated bibliography of reference works, it is recommended to consult with the Korean chapter of the *Handbook for Asian studies specialists*, which was compiled by *Hyokyung Yi* of the University of Washington, Seattle, *Joy Kim* of the University of Southern California, and *Kyungmi Chun* of Stanford University.

Note:

1. Since library catalogs and databases are available online, many bibliographies are not introduced in this guide, although many of them are annotated bibliographies.
2. An organization as author is omitted in the citations, when, in general, the publisher or the compilation/editorial committee of a publication is the author/editor of the publication.
3. If the title and/or publisher of a serial publication have changed, the latest one is used in the citations. The former title(s) is noted.
4. When a publication has different editions and/or printing years, efforts have been made to provide the year of the first printing of the latest edition.
5. An ebook of a publication written in English may be available from e-book databases (Ebrary, Ebook Library (EBL), MyiLibrary, etc.). However, that is not noted in this guide.
6. The *KOSIS (Korean Statistical Information Service)*, a portal site for statistics, provides a wide range of approved national statistics over a broad time range. Therefore, although not indicated for each statistical publication in this guide, the *KOSIS* <<http://kosis.kr>> should be the first place to consult for statistical information for the Republic of Korea.

¹⁰ Korean Studies Librarian, East Asia Library, Stanford University

4.5.1 Guide to Reference Works

Handbook for Asian studies specialists: A guide to research materials and collection building tools. Noriko Asato, ed. Westport, CT: Libraries Unlimited, 2013. 466 p.

4.5.2 General Encyclopedias

Pūrit'aenik'ō segye taebaekkwā sajōn 브리태니커세계대백과사전 = *Britannica world encyclopedia*. Seoul: Han'guk Pūrit'aenik'o Hoesa, 2002. 27 vols.

<http://www.britannica.co.kr/> <http://100.daum.net/top/index.do>

Tusan segye taebaekkwā sajōn 두산세계대백과사전 = *Doosan world encyclopedia*. Seoul: Tusan Tonga, 1996. 30 vols.

<http://www.doopedia.co.kr/> <http://terms.naver.com/>

Chosōn taebaekkwā sajōn 조선대백과사전 [Great encyclopedia of North Korea]. P'yōngyang: Paekkwā Sajōn Ch'ulp'ansa, 1995-2001. 30 vols.

Kwangmyōng paekkwā sajōn 광명백과사전 [Kwangmyōng encyclopedia of North Korea]. P'yōngyang: Paekkwā Sajōn Ch'ulp'ansa, 2006-2011. 20 vols.

4.5.3 Encyclopedias, Dictionaries and Glossaries for Korean Studies

Han'guk minjok munhwa taebaekkwā sajōn 한국민족문화대백과사전 [Encyclopedia of Korean culture]. Sōngnam: Han'guk Chōngsin Munhwa Yōn'guwōn, 1988-1995. 28 vols.

<http://encykorea.aks.ac.kr/> <http://terms.naver.com/>

Pukhan taesajōn 북한대사전 [Dictionary of North Korea]. Pukhan Yōn'guso, comp. Seoul: Pukhan Yōn'guso, 1999. 1309 p.

Korea: a historical and cultural dictionary. Keith Pratt and Richard Rutt. Surrey, England: Curzon Press, 1999. 568 p.

Basic glossary of Korean studies = *Han'gukhak kibon yongōjip* 한국학기본용어집. Song Ki Joong, comp. Seoul: Korea Foundation, 1993. 338 p.

4.5.4 Korean Language Dictionaries

- P'yojun kugö taesajön 표준국어대사전* [Standard Korean language dictionary]. Kungnip Kugö Yön'guwön, ed. Seoul: Tusan Tonga, 1999. 3 vols.
<http://stdweb2.korean.go.kr/> <http://krdic.naver.com/>
- Koryödae Han'gugö taesajön 고려대한국어대사전* [Korea University Korean language dictionary]. Seoul: Koryö Taehakkyo Minjok Munhwa Yön'guwön, 2009. 3 vols.
- Chosön mal taesajön 조선말대사전* [Dictionary of the North Korean language]. Enl. ed. Sahoe Kwahagwön Onöhak Yön'guso, comp. P'yöngyang: Sahoe Kwahak Ch'ulp'ansa, 2006-2007. 3 vols.

4.5.5 Korean-English Dictionaries

- Etsensü Han-Yöng sajön 엣센스한영사전 = Minjung's essence Korean-English dictionary*. 4th ed. Seoul: Minjung Sörim, 2000. 2691 p.
- Cho-Yöng taesajön 조영대사전 = New Korean-English dictionary*. P'yöngyang Oegugö Taehak Yöngö Hakpu, ed. P'yöngyang: Oegungmun Tosö Ch'ulp'ansa, 2002. 3080 p.
- Standard English-Korean & Korean-English dictionary for foreigners: romanized*. B. J. Jones and Gene S. Rhie, ed. Elizabeth, NJ: Hollym International Corp., 1991. 780 p.

4.5.6 Hanchaö (Chinese Characters Used in Korea) and Korean-Chinese Dictionaries

- Han'guk Hanchaö sajön 韓國漢字語辭典* [Dictionary of Chinese words in the Korean language]. Tan'guk Taehakkyo Pusöl Tongyanghak Yön'guso, ed. Seoul: Tan'guk Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 1992-1996. 4 vols.
- Han-Han taesajön 漢韓大辭典* [Dictionary of Chinese-Korean language]. Tan'guk Taehakkyo Pusöl Tongyanghak Yön'guso, ed. Seoul: Tan'guk Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 1999-2008. 16 vols.
- Han-Han tae chajön 漢韓大字典* [Chinese-Korean language dictionary]. 3rd ed. Seoul: Minjung Sörim, 2009. 2926 p.
- Chinese characters: a radical approach: learn 2,300 Chinese characters through their 214 radicals*. Rev. ed. James C. Whitlock and Kyung Ho Suh. Seoul: Ilchokak, 2003. 1026 p.

4.5.7 Korean-Other Language Dictionaries

- Etsensŭ Han-Tok sajŏn* 옛센스韓獨辭典 = *Minjung's essence Koreanisch-Deutsches Wörterbuch*. Han'guk Togŏ Tongmunhakhoe, ed. Seoul: Minjung Sŏrim, 2010. 2103 p.
- Sae Han-No sajŏn* 새한노사전 = *Новый Корейско-Русский словарь* [New Korean-Russian dictionary]. Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo Noŏkwa. Seoul: Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2009. 1299 p.
- Han'gugŏ-Pet'ŭnamŏ sajŏn* 한국어-베트남어사전 [Korean-Vietnamese dictionary]. Song Jŏng-nam, et al., eds. Seoul: Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2011. 1193 p.
- Sae Han-Pul sajŏn* 새한불사전 = *Nouveau dictionnaire Coréen-Français*. Rev. ed. Han'guk Purŏ Pulmun Hakhoe. Seoul: Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2008. 2911 p.
- Han'gugŏ-Sŭp'einŏ sajŏn* 한국어-스페인어사전 = *Diccionario Coreano-Español*. Chang Sŏn-yŏng, ed. Seoul: Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2003. 736 p.
- Han'gugŏ-Indonesiaŏ sajŏn* 한국어-인도네시아어사전 [Korean-Indonesian dictionary]. Chŏng Yŏng-nim. Seoul: Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 1998. 2398 p.
- Minjung etsensŭ Han-Il sajŏn* 민중옛센스韓日辭典 [Minjung's essence Korean-Japanese dictionary]. Rev. ed. Yasuda, Yoshimi, et al., eds. Seoul: Minjung Sŏrim, 2008. 2747 p.
- Chŏsenŭ daijiten* 朝鮮語大辭典 [Korean-Japanese language dictionary]. Ōsaka Gaikokugo Daigaku. Chŏsenŭ Kenkyūshitsu, ed. Tokyo: Kadokawa Shoten, 1986. 3 vols.
- Han-Yŏng-Chung-Il taeyŏk surŏ sajŏn* 韓-英-中-日 對譯術語辭典 = *Dictionary of common Oriental terms*. Seoul: Asea Munhwasa, 1990. 991 p.
- Han'gugŏ-T'aegugŏ sajŏn* 한국어-태국어사전 [Korean-Thai dictionary]. Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo T'aegugŏkwa. Seoul: Han'guk Oegugŏ Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2006. 1603 p.

4.5.8 Korean Romanization

“The Romanization of the Korean language, based upon its phonetic structure.” G.M. McCune and E.O Reischauer. *Transactions of the Korea Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 29: 1-55. Seoul: Royal Asiatic Society Korea Branch, 1939.

“Tables of McCune-Reischauer System for the Romanization of Korean.” *Transactions of the Korea Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society*, 38: 121-128. Seoul: Royal Asiatic Society Korea Branch, 1961.

The Revised romanization of Korean. Seoul: National Academy of the Korean Language, Ministry of Culture & Tourism, 2000. 33 p.

English http://korean.go.kr/eng_new/document/roman/roman_01.jsp

Korean http://korean.go.kr/09_new/dic/rule/rule_roman_0101.jsp

Kugŏ ūi romacha p'yogipŏp (2000. 7. 7. kosi) e ttarŭn romacha p'yŏgi yŏngnye sajŏn
국어의 로마자표기법 (2000. 7. 7. 고시) 에 따른 로마자표기용례사전 [Dictionary of romanization examples according to the 2000 revised South Korean rules]. Seoul: Munhwa Kwan'gwangbu; Kungnip Kugŏ Yŏn'guwŏn, 2000. 417 p.
http://www.korean.go.kr/09_new/dic/rule/rule_roman.jsp

4.5.9 Bibliographies and Catalogs

Han'guk sŏji 韓國書誌 = *Bibliographie coréenne* [Bibliography of Korea]. Maurice Courant. Yi Hŭi-jae, trans. Seoul: Ilchogak, 1994. 922 p.

A Bibliographical guide to traditional Korean sources = *Han'guk kojŏn haeje*
韓國古典解題. Tai-jin Kim, ed. & trans. Seoul: Asiatic Research Center, Korea University, 1976. 580 p.

Han'guk tosŏ haeje 韓國圖書解題 [Annotated bibliography of pre-1910 Korean books & manuscripts]. Seoul: Koryŏ Taehakkyo Minjok Munhwa Yŏn'guso Ch'ulp'anbu, 1971. 983 p.

Han'guk munjip ch'onggan p'yŏllam 한국문집총간편람 韓國文集叢刊便覽 = *A compendium for the comprehensive publication of Korean literary collections in classical Chinese*. Seoul: Han'guk Kojŏn Pŏnyŏgwŏn, 2010. 447 p.

Also available in English, Chinese and Japanese.

Kungnip Chungang Tosŏgwan sojang '1945-yŏn ijŏn Han'guk kwallyŏn charyo' haejejip
국립중앙도서관 소장 '1945 년 이전 한국 관련 자료' 해제집 = *Annotated bibliography*

- of 'Materials related to Korea before 1945' in the National Library of Korea collection. Seoul: Kungnip Chungang Tosŏgwan, 2007-2011. 6 vols.
<http://www.dlibrary.go.kr/WONMUN/> Full text of all works included in this annotated bibliography is available to the institutions that have exchange agreement with the National Library of Korea.
- Chōsen kenkyū bunken mokuroku: 1868-1945* 朝鮮研究文獻目錄: 1868-1945 [Bibliography of Japanese works on Korea, 1868-1945]. Suematsu Yasukazu, ed. Tōkyō: Kyūko Shoin, 1980. 2 vols.
- Sōyangbon Han'guk munhŏn mongnok, 1800-1963: Rosŏa pon p'oham* 西洋本韓國文獻目錄, 1800-1963: 露西亞本包含 = *Bibliography of Korea: publications in the Western language[sic], 1800-1963: in[cluding] the Russian language*. Seoul: Taehan Min'guk Kukhoe Tosŏgwan, 1967. 227 p.
- 1950-yŏn ijŏn kugoe parhaeng Han'guk kwallyŏn charyo mongnok 1950 년이전 국외발행 한국관련자료목록* [Catalog of foreign works on Korea published before 1950]. Seoul: Kungnip Chungang Tosŏgwan, 1997. 238 p.
<http://www.nl.go.kr/>
- A List of Americans' records and papers on Korea = Miguk nae Han'guk kwallyŏn kirok mit sŏryu mongnok. Yŏngmun p'yŏn 미국내 한국관련기록및서류목록. 영문판.* Key P. Yang, ed. Seoul: Korea Foundation, 1991. 343 p.
- Haebanggi kanhaeng tosŏ ch'ongmongnok, 1945-1950* 해방기간행도서총목록, 1945-1950 [Publications in the liberation period, 1945-1950]. O Yŏng-sik. Seoul: Somyŏng Ch'ulp'an, 2009. 695 p.
- Pukhan nonjŏ mongnok 북한논저목록* [North Korean publications, 1945-1953]. Pang Sŏn-ju, ed. Ch'unch'ŏn: Hallim Taehakkyo Asia Munhwa Yŏn'guso, 2003. 745 p.
- Studies on Korea: A scholar's guide.* Han-Kyo Kim and Hong Kyoo Park, eds. Honolulu: University Press of Hawaii, 1980. 438 p.
- Han'guk sinmun chapchi ch'ong mongnok, 1883-1945* 韓國新聞雜誌總目錄, 1883-1945 = *Catalogue of Korean periodicals, 1883-1945*. Seoul: Taehan Min'guk Kukhoe Tosŏgwan, 1966. 230 p.
- Han'guk chapchi ch'ongnam* 韓國雜誌總覽 = *Survey of Korean magazines*. Seoul: Han'guk Chapchi Hyŏphoe, 1972-.
<http://museum.kmpa.or.kr/>
- Han'guk ch'ulp'an yŏn'gam* 한국출판연감 = *Korean publication yearbook*. Seoul: Taehan Ch'ulp'an Munhwa Hyŏphoe, 1963-.

4.5.10 Indexes

Han'guk chapchi kaegwan mit hobyŏl mokch'ajip 韓國雜誌概觀吳號別目次集 [Overview and table of contents of Korean periodicals, 1896.2-1945.8]. Kim Kŭn-su.

Seoul: Yŏngsin Ak'ademi Han'gukhak Yŏn'guso, 1973. 968 p.

Han'guk chapchi kaegwan mit hobyŏl mokch'ajip, Haebang 15-yŏn 韓國雜誌概觀吳號別目次集, 解放15年 [Overview and table of contents of Korean periodicals published in 1945.8-1959.12]. Seoul: Yŏngsin Ak'ademi Han'gukhak Yŏn'guso, 1975. 525 p.

Chŏnggi kanhaengmul kisa saegin: haebang chŏn kanhaeng pun, 1910-1945 定期刊行物記事索引: 解放前刊行分, 1910-1945 [Index to periodical articles, 1910-1945]. Seoul: Kukhoe Tosŏgwan, 1982. 376 p.

<http://dl.nanet.go.kr/>

Index to English language periodical literature published in Korea, 1890-1940 = 英文雜誌索引. Jefferson McRee Elrod, comp. Seoul: Korean National Assembly Library, 1965. 198 p.

Index to English language periodical literature published in Korea, 1941-1968 = 영문잡지색인. Seoul: National Assembly Library, Republic of Korea, 1969. 224 p.

Index to English language newspapers published in Korea, 1896-1937. J. McRee Elrod. Seoul: Yonsei University, 1966. 45 p.

Tonga ilbo saegin 東亞日報索引 [Index to Tonga daily newspaper articles, 1920-1962].

Seoul: Tonga Ilbosa, 1970-1982. 10 vols.

http://db.history.go.kr/url.jsp?ID=np_da_1920

<http://newslibrary.naver.com/>

<http://www.donga.com/news/dongadb/> (fee for full-text)

4.5.11 General Guides, Handbooks and Yearbooks

The Koreas. Mary E. Connor, ed. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO, 2009. 499 p.

South Korea: a country study. 4th ed. Federal Research Division, Library of Congress.

Adrea Matles Savada and William Shaw, eds. Washington, D.C.: Federal Research Division, Library of Congress, 1992. 408 p.

<http://lcweb2.loc.gov/frd/cs/krtoc.html>

- North Korea: a country study*. 5th ed. Federal Research Division, Library of Congress. Robert Worden, ed. Washington, DC: U.S. G.P.O., 2008. 332 p.
http://lcweb2.loc.gov/frd/cs/pdf/CS_North-Korea.pdf
- Pukhan ch'ongnam* 北韓總覽 1945 년-1982 년 [General survey of North Korea, 1945-1982]. Seoul: Pukhan Yŏn'guso, 1983. 2044 p.
- Pukhan ch'ongnam* 北韓總覽 1983-1993. Seoul: Pukhan Yŏn'guso, 1994. 1192 p.
- Pukhan ch'ongnam* 北韓總覽 1993-2002. Seoul: Pukhan Yŏn'guso, 2003. 1275 p.
- Pukhan ch'ongnam* 北韓總覽 2003-2010. Seoul: Pukhan Yŏn'guso, 2011. 1149 p.
- Haeoe Han'gukhak paeksŏ* 해외한국학백서 [Overseas Korean Studies white-paper]. Han'guk Kukche Kyoryu Chaedan, ed. Seoul: Ŭryu Munhwasa, 2007. 1626 p.
- Korea annual*. Seoul: Yonhap News Agency, 1964-2004, 2013-.
- Yŏnhap yŏn'gam* 연합뉴스 = *Yonhap yearbook*. Seoul: Yŏnhap Nyusŭ, 1981-.
- Han'guk ũi ch'ang: Tonga yŏn'gam*. 한국의窓: 동아연감 = *The Dong-A yearbook*. Seoul: Tonga Ilbosa, 2008-.
- Previously *Tonga yon'gam* 동아연감 (1967-2007)
- Chosŏn chungang yŏn'gam* 조선중앙년감 [North Korea yearbook]. P'yŏnyang: Chosŏn Chungang T'ongsinsa, 1949-.
- Pukhan yŏn'gam* 북한연감 = *North Korea yearbook*. Seoul: Yŏnhap Nyusŭ, 1999-2011.
- Korea: politics, economy and society*. Rüdiger Frank, et al., eds. Leiden: Koninklijke Brill NV, 2010-.
- Previously *Korea yearbook: politics, economy and society* (2007-2009)

4.5.12 Biographies

- Han'guk inmul taesajŏn* 한국인물대사전 [Who was who in Korea]. Han'guk Chŏngsin Munhwa Yŏn'guwŏn, ed. Seoul: Chungang M & B, 1999. 2 vols.
- Han'guk yŏktae inmyŏng sajŏn* 한국역대인명사전 [Biographical dictionary of the Korean past]. Im Chong-uk, ed. Seoul: Ihoe, 2009. 2237 p.
- Kugyŏk kukcho inmulgo* 국역국조인물고 [Historic biographies of Koreans, translated into modern Korean]. Seoul: Sejong Taewang Kinyŏm Saŏphoe, 1999-2006. 34 vols.
- Chŏsen jinmei jisho* 朝鮮人名辭書 [Who was who in Korea]. Chŏsen Sŏtokufu Chŭsŭin 朝鮮總督府中樞院. Tŏkyō: Daiichi Shobō, Shōwa 52 [1977]. 2 vols.

- Han'guk inmyǒng chaho sajǒn* 韓國人名字號辭典 [Dictionary of Korean pseudonyms]. Yi Tu-hŭi, et al. Seoul: Kyemyǒng Munhwasa, 1988. 741 p.
- Han'guk inmul sajǒn* 한국인물사전 [Who's who in Korea]. Seoul: Yǒnhap Nyusŭ, 2005-.
- Han'guk ũi ch'ang: Inmyǒngnok* 한국의窓: 인명록 [Who's who in Korea]. Seoul: Tonga Ilbosa, 2008-.
- Pukhan chuyo insa inmul chǒngbo* 북한주요인사인물정보 [Major figures of North Korea]. Seoul: T'ongilbu, 2012-.
- Previously *Pukhan ui chuyo inmul* 북한의주요인물 (2003-2011)
<http://www.unikorea.go.kr/>
- Pukhan chuyo kigwan, tanch'e inmyǒngnok* 북한주요기관·단체인명록 [North Korean officials by organizations]. Seoul: T'ongilbu, 2012-.
- Previously *Pukhan kigwan, tanch'e pyǒl inmyǒngjip* 북한기관·단체별인명집 (1982-2011)
<http://www.unikorea.go.kr/>
- Pukhan inmyǒng sajǒn* 북한인명사전 = *Who's who in North Korea*. Seoul: Sǒul Sinmunsa, 1990-2004.
- Chōsen Minshu Shugi Jinmin Kyōwakoku soshikibetsu jinmeibo* 朝鮮民主主義人民共和國組織別人名簿 = *North Korea directory*. Tokyo: Rajio Puresu, 1988-.
- Chosǒn chaeryu Ku-Miin chosarak, 1907-yǒn-1942-yǒn* 朝鮮在留歐美人調査錄, 1907年-1942年 [Europeans and Americans living in Korea, 1907-1942]. Seoul: Yǒngsin Ak'ademi Han'gukhak Yǒn'guso, 1981. 961 p.

4.5.13 Chronologies

- Han'guk minjok munhwa taebaekkwǎ sajǒn*. v. 26, *Yǒnp'yo* 한국민족문화대 백과사전. v. 26, 연표 [Encyclopedia of Korean culture. v. 26, Chronology]. Sǒngnam: Han'guk Chǒngsin Munhwa Yǒn'guwǒn, 1991. 397 p.
- Sisa 110-yǒnsa: chǒngch'i, kyǒngje, sahoe, munhwa, chonghap yǒnp'yo, charyo, 1880-1990* 時事 110年史: 政治·經濟·社會·文化·綜合年表·資料, 1880-1990 [One hundred and ten years of current affairs: comprehensive chronology and sources on politics, economy, society, and culture, 1880-1990]. Seoul: Sǒul Ōllonin K'ŭllǒp, 1990. 2 vols.

4.5.14 Directories

Han'guk min'gan tanch'e ch'onngnam 한국민간단체총람 = *Encyclopedia of Korean Associations*. Seoul: Simin Undong Chǒngbo Sent'ō, 1996-

Chaeoe tongp'o tanch'e chojik hyǒnhwang 在外同胞團體組織現況 [Survey on Overseas Korean organizations]. Seoul: Oegyo T'ongsangbu, 1996-
<http://www.mofa.go.kr/여행/해외체류정보> > 재외동포정책및현황

4.5.15 General Statistics

Han'guk t'onggye yǒn'gam 한국통계연감 = *Korea statistical yearbook*. Seoul: Kyǒngje Kihogwǒn, 1961-

Previously *Taehan Min'guk t'onggye yǒn'gam* 대한민국통계연감(1952-1960)

Chǒn'guk t'onggye yǒn'gam 전국통계연감 = *Korean regional statistics annual*. Seoul: Han'guk Haengjǒng Yǒn'guso, 1993-

T'onggye ro ponūn Taehan Min'guk 통계로보는대한민국 [Korea through statistical indicators]. Seoul: Han'guk T'onggye Chinhǔngwǒn, 2009. 426 p.

Pukhan ūi chuyo t'onggye chip'yo 북한의주요통계지표 [Major statistics of North Korea]. Taejǒn: T'onggyech'ǒng, 2008-

Previously *Nam-Pukhan kyǒngje sahoesang pigyo* 남북한경제사회상비교(1995-2007)
<http://kosis.kr/bukhan/>

Chaeoe tongp'o hyǒnhwang 재외동포현황 [Survey on overseas Koreans]. Seoul: Oegyobu, 1991-

[http://www.mofa.go.kr/ 여행/해외체류정보](http://www.mofa.go.kr/여행/해외체류정보) > 재외동포정책및현황

4.5.16 Multidisciplinary Sources

Nam-Pukhan haksul yongǒ pigyo sajǒn: inmun 남북한학술용어비교사전: 인문 [Comparative dictionary of South and North Korean academic terms in humanities]. Sǒngnam: Han'gukhak Chungang Yǒn'guwǒn, 2010. 575 p.

Nam-Pukhan haksul yongǒ pigyo sajǒn: sahoe 남북한학술용어비교사전: 사회 [Comparative dictionary of South and North Korean academic terms in social sciences]. Sǒngnam: Han'gukhak Chungang Yǒn'guwǒn, 2010. 606 p.

Han'guk munhwa sangjing sajön 韓國文化상징사전 = *Dictionary of Korean myths and symbols*. Seoul: Tonga Ch'ulp'ansa, 1992-1995. 2 vols.

Japanese translation: *Kankoku bunka shinboru jiten* 韓國文化シンボル事典

An encyclopaedia of Korean culture = Han'guk munhwa paekkwa sajön 한국문화백과사전.

Rev. ed. Cheong-soo Suh, et al., eds. Seoul: Hansebon, 2006. 646 p.

Munye yön'gam 문예연감 = Culture & arts yearbook. Seoul: Han'guk Munhwa Yesul Chinhŭngwŏn, 1976-.

<http://www.arko.or.kr/> 자료실 > 발간자료 > 문예연감목록

Chosŏn munhak yesul yön'gam 조선문학예술년감 [Korean literature and art yearbook].

P'yŏngyang: Munhak Yesul Chonghap Ch'ulp'ansa, 1994-.

Han'guk ũi pangmulgwan, misulgwan 한국의박물관, 미술관 = *Museums in Korea*.

Seoul: Han'guk Pangmulgwan Hyŏphoe, 2006. 5 vols.

<http://www.museum.or.kr/>

4.5.17 Anthropology

Han'guk poksik munhwa sajön 한국복식문화사전 [Dictionary of Korean costume].

Kim Yŏng-suk, ed. Seoul: Misul Munhwa, 1998. 509 p.

Han'guk minsok taesajön 한국민속대사전 [Dictionary of Korean folk culture]. Seoul:

Minjok Munhwasa, 1991. 2 vols.

Encyclopedia of Korean seasonal customs. Jingi Cheon, et al., eds. Seoul: National Folk Museum of Korea, 2010. 336 p.

<http://folkency.nfm.go.kr/eng/info/main.jsp>

Han'guk sesi p'ungsok sajön 한국세시풍속사전 [Encyclopedia of Korean seasonal customs]. Seoul: Kungnip Minsok Pangmulgwan, 2004-2007. 6 vols.

Han'guk minsok sinang sajön 한국민속신앙사전 = *Encyclopedia of Korean folk beliefs*.

Seoul: Kungnip Minsok Pangmulgwan, 2009-2011. 6 vols.

<http://www.nfm.go.kr/> 자료마당 > 자료이용 > 발간자료 원문검색

<http://folkency.nfm.go.kr/main/main.jsp>

Han'guk chŏnt'ong yejŏl 韓國傳統禮節 [Traditional Korean etiquettes]. Kim Sŏk-chin.

Seoul: Hangmunsa, 2006. 409 p.

4.5.18 Art and Art History

Han'guk misul yŏn'gam 韓國美術年鑑 = *Korea art annual*. Seoul: Han'guk Misul Yŏn'gamsa, 1977-1997.

Chosŏn misul yŏn'gam 조선미술년감 [North Korean art yearbook]. P'yŏngyang: Munhak Yesul Ch'ulp'ansa, 1985-1992.

Chosŏn yŏktae misulga p'yŏllam 조선력대미술가편람 [Dictionary of North Korean artists]. Rev. ed. Yi Chae-hyŏn. P'yŏngyang: Munhak Yesul Chonghap Ch'ulp'ansa, 1999. 823 p.

Han'guk misulsa yŏnp'yo 韓國美術史年表 [Chronology of Korean art history]. Rev. ed. Chin Hong-sŏp, ed. Seoul: Ilchisa, 2006. 471 p.

4.5.19 Business

Chŏn'guk saŏpch'e chosa pogosŏ 전국사업체조사보고서 = *Report of the census on establishments*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 2008-.

Previously *Saŏpch'e kich'o t'onggye chosa pogosŏ* 사업체기초통계조사보고서 (1995-2006)

Hoesa yŏn'gam 회사연감 = *Annual corporation reports*. Seoul: Maeil Kyŏngje Sinmunsa, 1978-.

Han'guk taegiŏp kŭrup chaemu punsŏk 한국大企業그룹財務分析 = *Financial analysis on grand business groups in Korea*. Seoul: Sinsanŏp Kyŏngyŏngwŏn, 2004-.

Previously *Han'guk 30-tae chaebŏl chaemu punsŏk* 한국 30 대재벌재무분석 (1995-2003) and *Han'guk 50-tae kiŏp kŭrup chaemu punsŏk charyojip* 한국 50 대기업그룹 재무분석 자료집 (1987-1992).

Chungso kiŏp kwallyŏn t'onggye 중소기업관련통계 [Small and medium business statistics]. Taejŏn: Chungso Kiŏpch'ŏng, 1999-.

Chungso kiŏp silt'ae chosa kyŏlgwa 중소기업실태조사결과 = *Survey on actual state of SMEs*. Taejŏn: Chungso Kiŏpch'ŏng, 2009-.

Previously *Chungso kiŏp silt'ae chosa pogo* 중소기업실태조사보고 (1966-2007)

<http://stat.kbiz.or.kr/>

<http://stat2.smba.go.kr/>

Muyök t'onggye yönbo 무역통계연보 = Statistical yearbook of foreign trade. Seoul: Kwansöch'öng, 1964-.

<http://customs.go.kr/kcsweb/user.tdf?a=user.statsIndex.StatsIndexApp&bid=PA012DM&npp=4&len=18>

Haeoe chikchöp t'uja t'onggye yönbo 해외직접투자통계연보 = Overseas direct investment statistics yearbook. Seoul: Han'guk Such'urip Ŭnhaeng, 1998-2007.

<http://keri.koreaexim.go.kr/>

Chön'guk kiöpch'e ch'onngnam 전국기업체총람 = Korean business directory. Seoul: Taehan Sanggong Hoeüiso, 1958-.

<http://www.korchambiz.net/>

Haeoe chinch'ul Han'guk kiöp tirekt'ori 해외진출한국기업디렉토리 = Korean business directory. Seoul: KOTRA, 1992-.

<http://www.globalwindow.org/> 해외투자정보 > 해외진출기업 검색

4.5.20 Communications, Journalism and Media Studies

Nambuk maesük'öm yongö sajön 남북매스컴용어사전 [Glossary of South and North Korean terms for mass communication]. Seoul: Han'guk Kyoyöl Kija Hyöphoe and Han'guk Öllon Chaedan, 2001. 671 p.

2005 Nambuk kongt'ong chöngbohwa kyoyuk yongö sajön 2005 남북공통정보화교육 용어사전 [Glossary of South and North Korean terms for information education]. Kugö Chöngbo Hakhoe. Seoul: Han'guk Chöngbo Munhwa Chinhüngwön, 2005. 266 p.
<http://www.itstudy.or.kr/> 사업별업무안내 > 북한이탈주민정보화교육 > 사업소개 > 연구자료실

Han'guk öllon yön'gam 한국언론연감 = The Korean media yearbook. Seoul: Han'guk Öllon Chinhüng Chaedan, 2010-.

Previously *Han'guk sinmun pangsong yön'gam 한국신문방송연감(1978-2009)*

<https://www.kpf.or.kr/> 자료실 > 간행물

English edition *The Korea Press*

<http://www.mediagaon.or.kr/> 언론전문자료 > 영문자료

Podo sajín yön'gam 보도사진연감 = Korea press photo annual. Seoul: Han'guk Sajin Kija Hyöphoe, 1968-.

Han'guk öllon inmul sajön, 1883-2009 한국언론인물사전, 1883-2009 [Who's who in the Korean media]. Chöng Chin-sök, ed. Seoul: Han'guk Öllon Chaedan, 2008. 1579 p.
<https://www.kpf.or.kr/> 자료실 > 간행물

Han'guk öllon yönp'yo 韓國言論年表 [A chronology of Korean journalism]. Kye Hunmo and Chöng Chin-sök, eds. Seoul: Kwanhun K'üllöp Sinyöng Yön'gu Kigüm, 1979-1993. 3 vols.
http://koreaa2z.com/main_ek.htm (Subscription-based)

Han'guk öllon yönp'yo saegin, 1881-1955 韓國言論年表索引, 1881-1955 [Index to the Chronology of Korean journalism]. Chöng Chin-sök. Seoul: Kwanhun K'üllöp Sinyöng Yön'gu Kigüm, 1993. 513 p.

4.5.21 Economics

OECD economic surveys: Korea. Paris: OECD, 1994-.
<http://www.oecd-ilibrary.org/>

Han'guk kyöngje yön'gam 한국경제연감 = Korean economic yearbook. Seoul: Chön'guk Kyöngjein Yönhaphoe, 1966-2009.
Previously *Kyöngje yön'gam 경제연감* (1948-1949, 1955-1959).

Kyöngje t'onggye yönbö 경제통계연보 = Economic statistics yearbook. Seoul: Han'guk Ŭnhaeng, 1960-.
Previously “*T'onggye p'yon*” in *Kyöngje yön'gam 경제연감* (1955-1959).
<http://ecos.bok.or.kr/> 통계연구/간행물 > 주요통계간행물

Kukka chasan t'onggye 국가자산통계 = National wealth statistics. Taejön: T'onggyech'öng, 2009-.
Previously *Kukpu t'onggye 국부통계* (1977-2008)

Kukse t'onggye yönbö 국세통계연보 = Statistical yearbook of national tax. Seoul: Kuksech'öng, 1966-.
<http://www.nts.go.kr/> 국세정보>국세통계

Han'guk t'onghap chaejöng suji 한국통합재정수지 = Government finance statistics in Korea. Kwach'ön: Kihöek Chaejöngbu, 1995-.
Previously *Han'guk üi chaejöng t'onggye 한국의재정통계* (1979-1994)

Kyöngje hwaltong in'gu yönbö 경제활동인구연보 = Annual report on the economically active population survey. Taejön: T'onggyech'öng, 1972-.

- Mulka ch'ongnam 물가총람* = *Price statistics overview*. Seoul: Han'guk Ūnhaeng, 1961-.
<http://ecos.bok.or.kr/> 통계연구/간행물 > 주요통계간행물
- Chonghap mulka ch'ongnam: t'onggye ro pon mulka 40-yōnsa 1970-2010 종합 물가총람: 통계로본물가 40 년사 1970-2010* [Comprehensive price statistics: a 40-year price history 1970-2010]. Seoul: Han'guk Mulka Chōngbo, 2010. 464 p.
- Sobija mulka chisu yōnbo 소비자물가지수연보* = *Annual report on the consumer price index*. Taejōn: T'onggyech'ōng, 2009-.
 Previously *Mulka yōnbo 물가연보* (1969-2007)
- Kagye chosa yōnbo 가계조사연보* = *Annual report on the household income and expenditure survey*. Taejōn: T'onggyech'ōng, 2004-.
 Previously *Tosi kagye yōnbo 도시가계연보* (1969-2003) and *Tosi kagye pogosō 도시 가계보고서* (1963-1968)
- Pukhan kyōngje t'onggye charyojip (1946, 1947, 1948-yōndo)* 北韓經濟統計資料集 (1946, 1947, 1948 년도) [North Korean economic statistics (1946, 1947, 1948)]. Hallim Taehakkyo Asia Munhwa Yōn'guso, ed. Ch'unch'ōn: Hallim Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 1994. 394 p.
- Algi shwiun kyōngje chip 'yo haesōl 알기쉬운경제지표해설* [Explanatory comments for economic indicators]. 7th ed. Seoul: Han'guk Ūnhaeng, 2010.
<https://ecos.bok.or.kr/> 통계연구/간행물>주요경제통계해설책

4.5.22 Education

- Han'guk kyoyuk yōn'gam 한국교육연감* = *Korean education yearbook*. Han'guk Kyowōn Tanch'e Ch'ong Yōnhaphoe. Seoul: Han'guk Kyoyuk Sinmunsa, 1964-.
Kyoyuk t'onggye yōnbo 교육통계연보 = *Statistical yearbook of education*. Seoul: Han'guk Kyoyuk Kaebawōn, 1991-.
 Previously *Mungyo t'onggye yōnbo 문교통계연보* (1962-1990)
<http://kess.kedi.re.kr/>
- Han'guk ūi kyoyuk kwajōng, kyogwasōsa yōnp'yo: 'Sae charyo,' 'Ingnūn yōnp'yo'* 한국의 교육과정 · 교과서사연표: '새 자료,' '읽는 연표' [A chronology of the history of the Korean curriculum and textbooks]. Hō, Kang. Seoul: Ilchinsa, 2010. 147 p.

4.5.23 Film and Theatre

Films for Korean studies: a guide to English-language films about Korea. Lucius A. Butler and Chaesoon T. Youngs, eds. Honolulu: Center for Korean Studies, University of Hawaii, 1978. 167 p.

Han'guk yŏnghwa yŏn'gam 한국영화연감 = Korean film yearbook. Yŏnghwa Chinhŭng Wiwŏnhoe 영화진흥위원회, comp. Seoul: K'ŏmyunikeisyŏn Puksŭ, 1977-.
<http://www.kofic.or.kr>

Korean cinema. Seoul: KOFIC (Korean Film Council), 1999-.
[http://www.koreanfilm.or.kr/Publications > Books](http://www.koreanfilm.or.kr/Publications%20Books)

Chosŏn yŏnghwa yŏn'gam 조선영화년감 [Yearbook of North Korean films]. P'yŏngyang: Munye Ch'ulp'ansa, 1985-1993.

Han'guk yŏnghwa kamdok sajŏn 한국영화감독사전 = The dictionary of Korean film directors. Kim Chong-wŏn, et al., eds. Seoul: Kukhak Charyowŏn, 2004. 704 p.

Pukhan yŏnghwa inmyŏng sajŏn 북한영화인명사전 [Biographical dictionary of North Korean films]. Seoul: Yŏnghwa Chinhŭng Wiwŏnhoe, 2003. 235 p.

4.5.24 Geography

A bibliography of Korean geography in western languages, 1945-1995. Kyung Hi Hong. Seoul: Hyorim, 1999. 409 p.

Ilbon esŏ parhaengdoen Han'guk chiri kwan'gye munhŏn mongnok: 1868-1991 日本에서發行된韓國地理關係文獻目錄:1868-1991 = A bibliography of Korean geography in Japanese publications, 1868-1991. Hong Kyŏng-hŭi. Seoul: Hyorim, 1994. 309 p.

Kungnip Chungang Tosŏgwan sojang Tokto kwallyŏn charyo haejejip 국립중앙도서관 소장독도관련자료해제집 = Dokdo, an annotated bibliography in the National Library of Korea. Seoul: Kungnip Chungang Tosŏgwan, 2009. 2 vols.

The geography of Korea. Yongwoo Kwon, et al., eds. Suwon: National Geographic Information Institute, 2010. 432 p.
<http://www.land.go.kr/portal/reference/publication01.do>

Han'guk chiriji 한국지리지 [The geography of Korea]. Suwŏn: Kukt'o Chiriwŏn, 2003-2012. 7 vols.
<http://www.land.go.kr/portal/reference/publication01.do>

- Taehan Min'guk 5-man chido* 대한민국 5 만지도 [Topographical maps of South Korea at a 1:50,000 scale]. Tonga Chido. Seoul: Raendöm Hausu Chungang, 2006. 751 p.
- Taehan Min'guk kukka chidojip* 대한민국국가지도집 = *The national atlas of Korea*. Suwön: Könsöl Kyot'ongbu Kukt'o Chiri Chöngbowön, 2007. 279 p.
<http://www.land.go.kr/portal/main.do> 국토조사> 국가지도집
- The national atlas of Korea*. Suwon: National Geographic Information Institute, Ministry of Land, Transport and Maritime Affairs, 2007. 281 p.
- Ch'oegün Pukhan omanbun chi il chihyöngdo* 最近北韓五萬分之一地形圖 [Topographical maps of North Korea at a 1:50,000 scale]. Seoul: Kyöngin Munhwasa, 1997. 2 vols.
- Han'guk ũi kojido* 韓國의古地圖 = *Old maps of Korea*. Yi Ch'an. Seoul: Pömusa, 1991. 419 p.
- Old maps of Korea = Kankoku no ko chizu* 韓國の古地図. Chan Lee. Paju: Bumwoo Pub., 2005. 556 p.
- Söyang kojido rül t'onghae pon Han'guk* 서양고지도를통해본한국 = *Korea in old western maps*. Taejön: Haengjöng Chach'ibu Kukka Kirogwön, 2007. 113 p.
<http://theme.archives.go.kr/next/oldmap/MainView.do>
- Chosön hyangt'o taebaekkwa* 조선향토대백과 = *Encyclopedia of North Korean geography and culture*. Chosön Kwahak Paekkwa Sajön Ch'ulp'ansa and Han'guk P'yönghwa Munje Yön'guso. Seoul: P'yönghwa Munje Yön'guso, 2005. 20 vols.
<http://www.cybernk.net/>
- The gazetteer of Korea*. Suwon: National Geographic Information Institute, 2009. 124 p.
<http://www.ngii.go.kr/en/main/main.do?rbsIdx=1> Key Activities > Land Survey
- Chibang haengjöng kuyök yoram* 지방행정구역요람 = *General review of local administrative districts*. Seoul: Haengjöng Anjönbu, 1953-.
<http://www.mospa.go.kr/> 업무안내>지방행정실>지방자치제도
- Han'gül Hakhoe chiün Han'guk chimyöng ch'ongnam* 한글학회지은한국지명 총람 [A survey of Korean place names]. Seoul: Han'gül Hakhoe, 1966-1986. 20 vols.
- Han'guk ttang irüm k'ün sajön* 한국땅이름큰사전 [Korean geographical dictionary]. Seoul: Han'gül Hakhoe, 1991. 3 vols.
- Han'guk chimyöng yuraejip* 한국지명유래집 = *The origin of Korean geographical names*. Suwön: Kukt'o Chiri Chöngbowön, 2008-2011. 4 vols.
<http://www.land.go.kr/portal/reference/publication01.do>

Han'guk ko chimyŏng sajŏn 韓國古地名辭典 [Dictionary of old Korean place names].

Chŏn Yong-sin, ed. Seoul: Koryŏ Taehakkyo Minjok Munhwa Yŏn'guso, 1993. 451 p.

Tallajin Pukhan ttang irŭm iyagi 달라진북한땅이름이야기 [Changes in North Korean geographical names]. Yang T'ae-jin. Seoul: Paeksan Ch'ulp'ansa, 2008. 715 p.

Kukt'o chosa yŏn'gam 국토조사연감 [National land survey]. Suwŏn: Kukt'o Chiri Chŏngbowŏn, 2004-. 2 vols.

<http://www.land.go.kr/> 국토조사 > 국토조사연감

Kukt'o haeyang t'onggye yŏnbo 국토해양통계연보 = *Statistical yearbook of MLTM*. Kwach'ŏn: Kukt'o Haeyangbu, 2008-.

A merger of the *Kŏnsŏl kyot'ong t'onggye yŏnbo* 건설교통통계연보 = *Statistical yearbook of construction and transportation* (1995-2007) and the *Haeyang susan t'onggye yŏnbo* 해양수산통계연보 = *Statistical yearbook of maritime affairs and fisheries* (1997-2007)

<https://stat.molit.go.kr/>

Hwan'gyŏng t'onggye yŏn'gam 환경통계연감 = *Environmental statistics yearbook*. Seoul: Hwan'gyŏngbu, 1995-.

Previously *Han'guk hwan'gyŏng yŏn'gam* 한국환경연감 = *Korea environmental yearbook* (1988-1994)

<http://www.me.go.kr/> 발행물 > 환경간행물

4.5.25 History

Historical dictionary of the Republic of Korea. 2nd ed. Andrew C. Nahm and James E. Hoare, eds. Lanham, Md.: Scarecrow Press, 2004. 313 p.

Historical dictionary of North Korea. Ilpyong J. Kim. Lanham, Md.: Scarecrow Press, 2003. 212 p.

Historical dictionary of the Democratic People's Republic of Korea. James E. Hoare. Lanham, Md.: Scarecrow Press, 2012. 489 p.

Yŏksa sajŏn 역사사전 [Dictionary of North Korean history]. 2nd ed. Sahoe Kwahagwŏn Yŏksa Yŏn'guso. P'yŏngyang: Kwahak Paekkwā Sajŏn Chonghap Ch'ulp'ansa, 1999- 2004. 6 vols.

- Han'guk tongnip undongsa sajön* 한국독립운동사사전 [Encyclopedia of the history of Korean independence movement]. Ch'önan: Tongnip Kinyömgwan Han'guk Tongnip Undongsa Yön'guso, 1996-2004. 7 vols.
- Ilche hyömyöng tanch'e sajön. Kungnae chungangpy'ön* 일제협력단체사전. 국내중앙편 [Dictionary of pro-Japanese organizations]. Ch'inil Inmyöng Sajön P'yönc'h'an Wiwönhoe, ed. Seoul: Minjok Munje Yön'guso, 2004. 889 p.
- The encyclopedia of the Korean War: a political, social, and military history.* Spencer C. Tucker, et al., eds. 2nd ed. Santa Barbara: ABC-CLIO, 2010. 3 vols.
- Historical dictionary of Pyongyang.* Justin Corfield. London: Anthem Press, 2013. 232 p.
- Han'guk kogohak sajön* 韓國考古學事典 = *Dictionary of Korean archaeology.* Seoul: Kungnip Munhwajae Yön'guso, 2001. 1391 p.
<http://portal.nricp.go.kr/kr/data/dic/>
- Chosön Ch'ongdokpu kongmunsö chonghap mongnokchip* 조선총독부공문서종합목록집 [Union list of official documents of Japanese Government-General of Korea]. Han'guk Kukka Kirok Yön'guwön, comp. P'aju: Hanul, 2005. 1783 p.
- Chosön Ch'ongdokpu kongmunsö tagyech'üng sangse mongnokchip. Hangmuguk sahoe kyoyuk munsögun p'yön* 조선총독부공문서다계층상세목록집. 학무국사회교육 문서군편 [List of documents of Japanese Government-General of Korea related to social education, held in the National Archives of Korea]. Han'guk Kukka Kirok Yön'guwön, comp. P'aju: Hanul, 2005. 843 p.
- The Korean War, an annotated bibliography.* Rev. 2nd ed. Keith D. McFarland. New York: Routledge, 2010. 429 p.
- Pukhan munhwajae kwan'gye munhön hwibo*北韓文化財關係文獻彙報 [Annotated bibliography of North Korean publications on Korean cultural heritage]. Seoul: Munhwajae Kwalliguk Munhwajae Yön'guso, 1990. 381 p.
- Pukhan munhwajae kwan'gye munhön hwibo: chüngbop'an, 1990-2006*北韓文化財關係文獻彙報: 增補版 1990-2006 [Annotated bibliography of North Korean publications on Korean cultural heritage: enlarged edition, 1990-2006]. Taejön: Kungnip Munhwajae Yön'guso, 2007. 336 p.
- Han'guk sahoejuüi undong inmyöng sajön* 한국사회주의운동인명사전 [Biographical dictionary of Korean socialists]. Kang Man-gil and Söng Tae-gyöng, eds. Seoul: Ch'angjak kwa Pip'yöngsa, 1996. 615 p.
- Ch'inil inmyöng sajön* 친일인명사전 [Biographical dictionary of pro-Japan collaborators]. Seoul: Minjok Munje Yön'guso, 2009. 3 vols.

Taehan Min'guksa yŏnp'yo 대한민국의사연표 [Chronology of the history of the Republic of Korea]. Kwach'ŏn: Kuksa P'yŏnch'an Wiwŏnhoe, 2008. 3 vols.

<http://db.history.go.kr/url.jsp?ID=tc>

Chosŏn chŏnsa. Yŏnp'yo 조선전사. 년표 [History of Korea. Chronology]. Rev. ed. Sahoe Kwahagwŏn Yŏksa Yŏn'guso. P'yŏngyang: Kwahak Paekkwā Sajŏn Ch'ulp'ansa, 1983-1991. 2 vols.

4.5.26 Language and Linguistics

Kugŏhak sajŏn 국어학사전 [Dictionary of Korean linguistics]. Seoul: Han'gŭl Hakhoe, 1995. 1122 p.

Uri t'obagi mal sajŏn 우리토박이말사전 [Dictionary of native Korean words]. Han'gŭl Hakhoe. Seoul: Ōmun'gak, 2002. 2127 p.

Uri mal ōwŏn sajŏn 우리말語源辭典 [Dictionary of Korean etymology]. Kim Min-su, et al., eds. Seoul: T'aehaksa, 1997. 1312 p.

Nŏlbŭn p'uri uri mal yuüiŏ taesajŏn 넓은풀이우리말유의어대사전 = 廣解類義語大辭典 = *A Korean thesaurus*. Seoul: Nanmal Ōhwi Chŏngbo Ch'ŏri Yŏn'guso, 2009. 7 vols.
<http://www.wordnet.co.kr/> (subscription-based)

Nŏlbŭn p'uri uri mal panüiŏ sajŏn 넓은풀이우리말반의어사전 = 廣解反義語辭典 = *A Dictionary of antonyms*. Seoul: Nanmal Ōhwi Chŏngbo Ch'ŏri Yŏn'guso, 2010. 510 p.
<http://www.wordnet.co.kr/> (subscription-based)

Uri mal paro ssŭgi sajŏn 우리말바로쓰기사전 [Dictionary of the correct usage of Korean words]. Kim Chŏng-sŏp, ed. P'aju: Chisik Sanŏpsa, 2008. 1135 p.

Han'guk kojŏn yongŏ sajŏn 한국고전용어사전 [Dictionary of classical Korean words]. Seoul: Sejong Taewang Kinyŏm Saŏphoe, 2001. 5 vols.

Nam-Pukhan mal pigyo sajŏn: Nam-Pukhan, Chungguk, Chungang Asia esŏ 3-man ōhwi rŭl karyŏ moŭn kyŏre mal sajŏn 남북한말비교사전: 남북한, 중국, 중앙 아시아에서 3 언어휘를 가려모은 겨레말사전 [Comparative dictionary of Korean words between South Korea and North Korea]. Rev. ed. Cho Chae-su. Seoul: Han'gyŏre Ch'ulp'an, 2007. 835 p.

- Yöng-Cho Cho-Yöng sajön: Pukhan yongö Yöngmun p'yogijip* 英·朝朝·英 辞典·북한용어영문표기집 [English dictionary of North Korean terms]. Kukka Chöngbowön, ed. Seoul: Hanul, 1999. 473 p.
- Han'guk oeraeö taesajön* 韓國外來語大辭典 [Dictionary of loanwords in the Korean language]. Han-Mi Kyoyuk Yön'guwön, ed. P'aju: Tongyang Söjök, 2009. 598 p.
- Oeraeö p'yogi yongnyejiip* 외래어표기용례집 [Dictionary of transliteration of foreign words into Korean]. Chöng Hüi-wön. Seoul: Kungnip Kugö Yön'guwön, 2002. 3 vols.
http://www.korean.go.kr/09_new/dic/rule/rule_foreign_index.jsp
- Handbook of Korean vocabulary: A resource for word recognition and comprehension*. Miho Choo and William D. O'Grady. Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press, 1996. 387 p.
- NTC's dictionary of Korea's business and cultural code words*. Boyé Lafayette DeMente. Lincolnwood, Ill.: NTC Publishing Group, 2004. 462 p.
- A guide to Korean characters: reading and writing Han'gül and Hanja*. Bruce K Grant. Elizabeth, NJ: Hollym, 2004. 367 p.
- Kugö yön'gam* 국어연감 [Korean language yearbook]. Seoul: Kungnip Kugöwön, 2005-.
http://www.korean.go.kr/09_new/data/kyear_list.jsp

4.5.27 Literature

- Han'guk hyöndae munhak taesajön* 한국현대문학대사전 [Encyclopedia of modern Korean literature]. Kwön Yöng-min, ed. Seoul: Söul Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2004. 1595 p.
<http://www.krpia.co.kr/pcontent/?svcid=KR&proid=43> (subscription-based)
- Han'guk minsok munhak sajön* 한국민속문학사전 = *Encyclopedia of Korean folk literature*. Seoul: Kungnip Minsok Pangmulgwan, 2012-2013. 4 vols.
<http://www.nfm.go.kr/> 자료마당 > 자료이용 > 발간자료 원문검색
<http://folkency.nfm.go.kr/main/main.jsp>
- Pukhan munhak sajön* 北韓文學事典 [Dictionary of North Korean literature]. Yi Myöng-jae, ed. Seoul: Kukhak Charyowön, 1995. 1206 p.
- 100-yön üi munhak yongö sajön* 100년의문학용어사전 [Glossary of literary terms of the past 100 years]. Han'guk Munhwa Yesul Wiwönhoe, ed. Seoul: Asia, 2008. 893 p.
- Han'guk hyöndae sosöl sosöro sajön* 한국현대소설소설어사전 = *The dictionary of Korean novelistic words*. Rev. ed. Kim Yun-sik and Ch'oe Tong-ho. Seoul: Koryö Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2000. 1727 p.

Pönan sosöro sajön 변안소설어사전 [Dictionary of words from Korean adapted novels]. Pak Chin-yöng, ed. Seoul: Hyönsil Munhwa, 2008. 832 p.

Munhak pip'yöng yongö sajön 문학비평용어사전 = *Dictionary of literary and critical terms*. Han'guk Munhak P'yöngnon'ga Hyöphoe, ed. Seoul: Kukhak Charyowön, 2006. 2 vols.

Han'guk hyöndaesi, siö sajön 한국현대시·詩語辭典 = *Dictionary of Korean poetry and poetic words*. Kim Chae-hong, ed. Seoul: Koryö Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 1997. 1245 p.

Han'guk sijo taesajön 韓國時調大事典 [Dictionary of Korean traditional poetry]. Pak Ŭl-su. Seoul: Asea Munhwasa, 1992. 2 vols. & 2007 suppl.

Kodae sosöl: a survey of Korean traditional style popular novels. W. E. Skillend. London: School of Oriental and African Studies, 1968. 268 p.

Han'guk munhak pönyök söji mongnok 한국문학번역서지목록 = *Bibliographies of Korean literature in foreign languages*. Kim Hüng-gyu, comp. Seoul: Han'guk Munhak Pönyök Kümgo; Koryödae Minjok Munhwa Yön'guwön, 1998. 935 p.

An annotated bibliography of Korean literature in translation, 1980-2002. Seoul: Korea Literature Translation Institute, 2002. 191 p.

http://eng.klti.or.kr/e_main.do Archive > Korean Literature in Translation

Han'guk kündae munin taesajön 韓國近代文人大事典 [Biographical dictionary of modern literary authors of Korea]. Kwön Yöng-min. Seoul: Asea Munhwasa, 1990. 1361 p.

Han'guk hyöndae munin taesajön 韓國現代文人大事典 [Biographical dictionary of Korean contemporary literary authors]. Kwön Yöng-min. Seoul: Asea Munhwasa, 1991. 2 vols.

Who's who in Korean literature. The Korean Culture & Arts Foundation, ed. Elizabeth, NJ; Seoul: Hollym, 1996. 555 p.

Han'guk hyöndae munhak chakp'um yönp'yo 한국현대문학작품연표 [Chronology of modern Korean literature, 1894-1994]. Kwön Yöng-min, comp. Seoul: Söul Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 1998. 2 vols.

Yönp'yo ro ingnün munhaksa 연표로 읽는 문학사 [Korean literature history through a chronology]. Kündae Munhak 100-yön Yön'gu Ch'ongsö P'yöngch'an Wiwönhoe. Seoul: Somyöng Ch'ulp'an, 2008. 563 p.

4.5.28 Music

Han'guk ūmak sajōn 韓國音樂事典 [Dictionary of Korean music]. Seoul: Yesurwōn, 1985. 544 p.

Kugak taesajōn 國樂大事典 = *Dictionary of Korean music*. Chang Sa-hun. Seoul: Segwang Ūmak Ch'ulp'ansa, 1984. 1095 p.

Akhak kwebōm yongō ch'onngnam 악학궤범용어총람 [Glossary of *Akhak kwebōm*]. Song Bang-song. Seoul: Pogosa, 2010. 563 p.

An annotated bibliography of Korean music. Pang-song Song. Providence, R.I.: Asian Music Publications, Brown University, 1971. 250 p.

Han'guk kŭndae ūmak saryo saeginjip. Munhōn charyo p'yōn 한국근대음악사료색인집. 문헌자료편 [Index to Korean modern music sources]. Song Pang-song and Sin Sōng-ung. Seoul: Minsogwōn, 2005. 682 p.

Kugak yōn'gam 국악연감 = *Gukak yearbook*. Seoul: Kungnip Kugagwōn, 1991-.
<http://www.gugak.go.kr/> 연구마당 > 학술연구 > 국악연감

Chosōn ūmak yōn'gam 조선음악년감 [North Korean music yearbook]. P'yōngyang: Munye Ch'ulp'ansa, 1985-1993.

Han'guk hyōndae ūmagin sajōn 한국현대음악인사전 = *Biographical encyclopedia of contemporary Korean musicians*. Song Pang-song. Seoul: Pogosa, 2011. 2 vols.

Han'guk kŭndae umagin sajōn 한국근대음악인사전 [Dictionary of Korean modern musicians]. Song Pang-song. Seoul: Pogosa, 2009. 624 p.

Chosōn ūmagin yōlchōn 조선음악인열전 [Biographical dictionary of Korean musicians of Chosōn dynasty]. Song Pang-song. Seoul: Pogosa, 2010. 625 p.

Han'guk ūmaksa yōnp'yo 韓國音樂史年表 [Chronology of Korean music]. Chang Sa-hun. Ch'ōngju: Ch'ōngju Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 1990. 490 p.

4.5.29 Philosophy and Intellectual History

Yugyo taesajōn 儒教大事典 [Dictionary of Confucianism]. Rev. ed. Seoul: Sōnggyun'gwan, 2007. 3 vols.

Uri mal ch'ōrhak sajōn 우리말철학사전 [Dictionary of philosophical terms in the Korean language]. Uri Sasang Yōn'guso, ed. Seoul: Chisik Sanōpsa, 2001-2007. 5 vols.

Han'guk ch'ŏrhak sajŏn. Yongŏ p'yŏn, inmul p'yŏn, chŏsul p'yŏn 한국철학사전. 용어편, 인물편, 저술편 = Dictionary of Korean philosophy. Han'guk Ch'ŏrhak Sajŏn P'yŏnch'an Wiwŏnhoe. Seoul: Tongbang ũi Pit, 2011. 719 p.

4.5.30 Political Science and International Relations

T'ongil, Nam-Puk kwan'gye sajŏn 통일·남북관계사전 [Dictionary of reunification and inter-Korean relations]. Kim Kŭn-sik, et al. Seoul: T'ongilbu T'ongil Kyoyugwŏn, 2004. 281 p.

Widaehan suryŏng Kim Il-sŏng tongji ũi nojak yongŏ sajŏn 위대한수령김일성동지의로작용어사전 [Glossary of terms in Kim Il-sŏng's works]. Tang Chŏngch'aek Haesŏl Tosŏ P'yŏnjippu, ed. P'yŏngyang: Kwahak Paek kwa Sajŏn Ch'ulp'ansa, 1982. 582 p.

*Han'guk minjuhwa undong charyo mongnokchip 한국민주화운동자료목록집 [List of resources related to Korean democratization movements]. Kwach'ŏn: Kuksa P'yŏnch'an Wiwŏnhoe, 2005-2010. 3 vols.
<http://library.history.go.kr/>*

*2002-yŏndo minjuhwa undong saryo mongnokchip 2002 년도민주화운동자료목록집 [List of democratic movement resources up to 2002]. Seoul: Minjuhwa Undong Kinyŏm Saŏphoe, 2002. 4 vols.
<http://www.kdemo.or.kr/> 자료마당 > 일반자료실*

Minjuhwa undong saryo mongnokchip: 1945-yon-1979-yon 민주화운동자료목록집: 1945 년-1979 년 [List of democratic movement resources: 1945-1979]. Seoul: Minjuhwa Undong Kinyŏm Saŏphoe, 2007. 1043 p.

Taet'ongnyŏng kiron gmul mongnokchip 대통령기록물목록집 = Guide to presidential archives, National Archives of Korea. Sŏngnam: Kukka Kirogwŏn Taet'ongnyŏng Kirokkwan, 2002-.

The following catalogs of presidential records are listed in order of presidency, with the publication year in parentheses.

Yi Sŭng-man, Yun Po-sŏn Taet'ongnyŏng munsŏ p'yŏn. 이승만, 윤보선대통령문서편 (2004).

Yi Sŭng-man, Yun Po-sŏn Taet'ongnyŏng sich'ŏnggak p'yŏn. 이승만, 윤보선대통령시청각편 (2005).

Pak Chŏng-hŭi Taet'ongnyŏng munsŏ p'yŏn 박정희대통령문서편 (2002).

Ch'oe Kyu-ha Taet'ongnyŏng, Pak Chung-hun Taet'ongnyŏng Kwŏnhan Taehaeng munsŏ p'yŏn 최규하대통령, 박중훈대통령권한대행문서편 (2010).
Chŏn Tu-hwan Taet'ongnyŏng munsŏ p'yŏn 전두환대통령문서편 (2009).
No T'ae-u Taet'ongnyŏng munsŏ p'yŏn 노태우대통령문서편 (2008).
Kim Yŏng-sam Taet'ongnyŏng munsŏ p'yŏn 김영삼대통령문서편 (2008).
Kim Tae-jung Taet'ongnyŏng munsŏ p'yŏn 김대중대통령문서편 (2006).
No Mu-hyŏn Taet'ongnyŏng munsŏ p'yŏn 노무현대통령문서편. 2 vols. (2012)
No Mu-hyŏn Taet'ongnyŏng sŏnmul p'yŏn 노무현대통령선물편. (2012)
Yi Sŭng-man~ No Mu-hyŏn Taet'ongnyŏng haengjong pangmul pyŏn
 이승만~노무현대통령행정박물편 (2013)

<http://www.pa.go.kr/> 정보마당>발간간행물

The Syngman Rhee presidential papers: a catalogue. Young Ick Lew, et al. comps. Seoul: Yonsei University Press, 2005. 232 p.

Kim Il-sŏng tongji ūi nojak saegin 김일성동지의 로작색인 [Index to Kim Il Sung's works]. Chosŏn Minjujuui Inmin Konghwaguk Sahoe Kwahagwŏn and Kungnip Chungang Tosŏgwan. P'yŏngyang: Sahoe Kwahak Ch'ulp'ansa, 1970. 772 p.

Taehan Min'guk oegyo yŏnp'yo 대한민국의교연표 = *Chronology of diplomacy, Republic of Korea*. Seoul: Oegyo T'ongsangbu, 1962-.

<http://diplomaticarchives.mofa.go.kr/> 외교사료편찬, 전시홍보 > 대한민국의교연표

Nambuk kwan'gye yŏnp'yo 1948-yŏn~2013-yŏn 남북관계연표 1948년~2013년 [Chronology of inter-Korean relations 1948-2013]. Seoul: T'ongil Yŏn'guwŏn, 2013. 574 p.

<http://www.kinu.or.kr/> KINU 발간물>기타

*Pukhan yŏnp'yo*北韓年表 = *Chronicle of major events in North Korea*. Seoul: Kukt'o T'ongirwŏn, 1980-1990. 7 vols.

<http://db.history.go.kr/> 시대별>통사>주제별연표>북한연표

*Pukhan ūi oegyo yŏnp'yo*北韓의 外交年表 = *A diplomatic chronology of North Korea*. Seoul: Taehan Min'guk Kukhoe Tosŏgwan, 1974-1984. 4 vols.

<http://dl.nanet.go.kr/> The volumes for 1978-1979 & 1980-1983 are available.

Calendar of diplomatic affairs Democratic People's Republic of Korea, 1945-1975. George Ginsburgs and Roy U. T. Kim. Moorestown, NJ: Symposia Press, 1977. 275 p.

Han'guk minjuhwa undongsa yŏn'p'yo 한국민주화운동사연표 [Chronology of Korean democratization movement]. Seoul: Minjuhwa Undong Kinyŏm Saŏphoe, 2006. 600 p.

4.5.31 Religion

- Han'guk sinhŭng chonggyo ch'onggam* 韓國新興宗教總鑑 [Survey on new religions in Korea]. Yi Kang-o. Seoul: Han'guk Sinhŭng Chonggyo Yŏn'guso, 1993. 1606 p.
- Kasan Pulgyo taesarim* 伽山佛教大辭林 = *Encyclopaedia of Buddhism*. Seoul: Kasan Pulgyo Munhwa Yŏn'guwŏn, 1998-.
- Han'guk Pulgyo taesajŏn* 韓國佛教大辭典 [Encyclopedia of Korean Buddhism]. Seoul: Poryŏn'gak, 1982. 7 vols.
- Han-Yŏng Pulgyo sajŏn* 한영불교사전 = *Korean-English Buddhist dictionary with Sanskrit and English equivalents*. Ko Yŏng-sŏp and Hwang Nam-ju, eds. Seoul: Sinasa, 2010. 887 p.
- Han'guk Pulgyo ch'ongnam: 2008-yŏnp'an* 韓國佛教總覽: 2008 年版 [Survey on Korean Buddhism, 2008]. Rev. ed. Seoul: Taehan Pulgyo Chinhŭngwŏn, 2008. 1268 p.
- Kŭrisŭdo sinmun, Yesugyo sinbo, Yesugyo hoebo saegin charyojip* 그리스도신문, 예수교신보, 예수교회보 색인자료집 [Index to Christian newspapers, 1897-1914]. Seoul: Han'guk Kidokkyo Yŏksa Yŏn'guso, 2003. 467p.
- Naehan sŏn'gyosa ch'ongnam, 1884-1984* 내한선교사총람, 1884-1984 [Directory of missionaries to Korea, 1884-1984]. Rev. ed. Kim Sŭng-t'ae and Pak Hye-jin, eds. Seoul: Han'guk Kidokkyo Yŏksa Yŏn'guso, 1996. 698 p.

4.5.32 Sociology

- In'gu taesajŏn* 인구대사전 = *Encyclopedia of population*. Han'guk In'gu Hakhoe 한국인구학회, ed. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 2006. 891 p.
- Han'guk simin sahoe yŏn'gam* 한국시민사회연감 = *Korea civil society yearbook*. Seoul: Simin Undong Chŏngbo Sent'ŏ, 2003-2006, 2009-.
- In'gu chut'ae ch'ong chosa pogosŏ* 인구주택총조사보고서 = *Population and housing census report*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 1992-. Multivolumes.
- In'gu tongt'ae t'onggye yŏn'bo* (ch'onggwŏl, ch'ulsaeng, samang p'yŏn) 인구동태통계연보 (총괄. 출생. 사망편) = *Annual report on live births and deaths statistics (based on vital registration)*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 2000-.

- In'gu tongt'ae t'onggye yŏn'bo (honin, ihon p'yŏn)* 인구동태통계연보 (혼인·이혼편) = *Annual report on the marriages and divorces statistics (based on vital registration)*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 2000-.
- Previously *In'gu tongt'ae t'onggye yŏnbo (in'gu tongt'ae sin'go e ūihan chipkye)* 인구동태통계연보 (인구동태신고에의한집계) = *Annual report on the vital statistics (based on vital registration)* (1986-1998) and *In'gu tongt'ae t'onggye (in'gu tongt'ae sin'go e ūihan chipkye)* 인구동태통계 (인구동태신고에 의한 집계) = *Vital statistics (based on vital registration)* (1980-1985)
- Kungnae in'gu idong t'onggye yŏnbo (chumin tŭngnok e ūihan chipkye)* 국내인구이동통계연보 (주민등록에의한집계) = *Annual report on the internal migration statistics (derived from resident registration)*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 2009-.
- Previously *In'gu idong t'onggye yŏnbo* 인구이동통계연보 (1970-2007)
- Kukche in'gu idong t'onggye yŏnbo* 국제인구이동통계연보 = *Annual report on the international migration statistics*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 2004-.
- Ch'uripkuk, oegugin chŏngch'aek t'onggye yŏnbo* 출입국·외국인정책통계연보 = *KIS [Korea Immigration Service] statistics*. Seoul: Pŏmmubu Ch'uripkuk Oegugin Chŏngch'aek Ponbu, 2007-.
- Previously *Ch'uripkuk kwalli t'onggye yŏnbo* 출입국관리통계연보 (1984-2005)
- Han'guk ūi in'gu, chut'aek: in'gu chut'aek ch'ong chosa chonghap pogosŏ* 한국의인구, 주택: 인구주택총조사종합보고서 [Population and housing in Korea: an analysis of the census results]. Ŭn Ki-su, et al., eds. Taejŏn: T'onggye Kaebawŏn, 2008. 475 p.
- Samang wŏnin t'onggye yŏnbo* 사망원인통계연보 = *Annual report on the cause of death statistics*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 1982-.
- Pogŏn pokchi t'onggye yŏnbo* 보건복지통계연보 = *Yearbook of health and welfare statistics*. Seoul: Pogŏn Pokchibu, 1995- 2007, 2010-.
- Previously *Pogŏn t'onggye yŏnbo* 보건통계연보 (1952?-1953), *Pogŏn sahoe t'onggye yŏnbo* 보건사회통계연보 (1954-1994) and *Pogŏn pokchi kajok t'onggye yŏnbo* 보건복지가족통계연보 (2008-2009)
- <http://stat.mw.go.kr/>
- Han'guk ūi sahoe chip'yo* 한국의사회지표 = *Social Indicator in Korea*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 1979-.
- Sahoe chosa pogosŏ* 사회조사보고서 = *Report on the Social Survey*. Taejŏn: T'onggyech'ŏng, 2008-.

- Previously *Sahoe t'onggye chosa pogosŏ* 사회통계조사보고서 = *Report on the Social Statistics Survey* (1996-2007)
- Han'guk chonghap sahoe chosa: KGSS* 한국종합사회조사: *KGSS = Korean general social survey*. Seoul: Sŏnggyun'gwan Taehakkyo Ch'ulp'anbu, 2005-.
- 2008 Han'gugin ūi ūisik, kach'igwan chosa 2008* 한국인의의식·가치관조사 [Survey of the consciousness and social values of Koreans]. Seoul: Munhwa Ch'eyuk Kwan'gwangbu, 2008. 722 p.
- Koyong nodong t'onggye yŏn'gam* 고용노동통계연감 = *Yearbook of employment and labour statistics*. Seoul: Koyong Nodongbu, 2010-.
- Previously *Nodong t'onggye yŏn'gam* 노동통계연감 = *Yearbook of labor statistics* (1978-2009) and *Han'guk nodong t'onggye yŏn'gam* 한국노동통계연감 (1971-1977)
<http://laborstat.molab.go.kr/>
- Nodong kyŏngje yŏn'gam* 勞動經濟年鑑 [Yearbook of labor economy]. Seoul: Han'guk Kyŏngyŏngja Ch'ong Hyŏphoe, 1981-2000.
- Pukhan it'al chumin kyŏngje hwaltong tonghyang: ch'wiŏp, sirŏp, sodŭk* 북한 이탈주민 경제활동동향: 취업, 실업, 소득 [Economic activities of North Korean refugees: employment, unemployment, income]. Seoul: Pukhan Inkwŏn Chŏngbo Sent'ŏ, 2007-.
<http://nkdb.org/> Requires free registration.

4.5.33 Women's Studies

- Han'guk ūi sŏng inji t'onggye* 한국의성인지통계 = *Gender statistics in Korea*. Seoul: Han'guk Yŏsŏng Chŏngch'aek Yŏn'guwŏn, 2009-.
- Previously *Yŏsŏng t'onggye yŏnbo* 여성통계연보 (1994-2007)
<http://gsis.kwdi.re.kr/>
- Women in Korea: statistical handbook*. Seoul: Korean Women's Development Institute, 2006-.
<http://gsis.kwdi.re.kr/>

Chapter 5

Information Technology

5.1. Introduction

By Hyoungbae Lee¹

When it comes to the area of information technology, commonly abbreviated as IT, the most drastic changes have been taking place since the publication of *Korean Librarianship outside of Korea* (2002). As the technology advances, the related issues in libraries also change and new problems and opportunities come along. While the chapter for technology and library services in the 2002 manual was mostly focused on the Korean input and display methods, reading and typing in Han'gŭl is not a major obstacle anymore in the current computing environment. Most applications in contemporary operating systems including mobile ones support Unicode. Windows 8, the most up-to-date version of Microsoft Windows as of 2014, went as far as to support Middle Korean (옛 한글) input method environment for the first time at the operating system level. The change of technology also ushered in a large range of digital resources available locally or online, which received relatively less attention in the previous manual. The importance of online resources cannot be too much emphasized these days among library communities.

In this chapter, those issues that have newly come to the fore with the advancement of technology in library environment will be discussed. The next two sections of this chapter will discuss online resources available in Korean commercially or freely on the web: Fee-based online resources in Korean and Free online resources in Korean. The following sections will illustrate online resources on Korea in English and address some of technological issues in current library practices and explore opportunities for improved productivity. Finally, in the last section, the discussion will resume commercial Korean online resources, probing the issues of subscriptions and opportunities of group purchase licensing.

¹ Korean Studies Librarian, East Asian Library and the Gest Collection, Princeton University

5.2. Korean Fee-based Online Resources

By Mikyung Kang²

5.2.1 Books/Texts

- **Kdatabase** 한국학 전자도서관 (<http://kdatabase.com/>)

A database of full-text journal articles, books, and primary sources, mainly on Korean modern and contemporary history; also known as *Han'guk hyöndaesa t'onghap teit'öbeisü* 한국현대사 통합데이터베이스. The majority of scholars who contributed to this database are affiliated with Han'guk Yöksa Yön'guhoe, Minjok T'ongil Yön'guso, Hyöndaesa Charyosil, Chungang Ilbo T'ongil Munhwa Yön'guso, etc., and about 200 scholars contributed their full-text articles and books to this database.

Many primary source materials, including archival collections and government documents, are listed for browsing by title in the main webpage. Links to two e-dictionaries, *Digital Pukhan paekkwa sajön* 디지털 북한백과사전 and *Digital Pukhan inmyöng sajön* 디지털 북한인명사전, are provided as supplements. *Digital Pukhan inmyöng sajön* covers 73,106 names in North Korea.

Some full-texts are in PDF format, others in text format. Two search options are available – keyword search from author and title, and expanded search. Browsing options are also provided on the first page by period, subject, author, and primary source reprint title.

- **KoreaA2Z** (<http://koreaa2z.com/>)

KoreaA2Z is a database of various contents such as dictionaries, old journals and newspapers, e-books of primary and secondary sources, and online courses. Some of the titles include scanned images of the originals as well as texts, and some titles are independently searchable by keywords. This database covers various subject areas in

² Librarian for the Korean Collection, Harvard-Yenching Library, Harvard University

general, mostly related to Korean Studies. Search options and display of contents vary title by title, depending on original data sources.

Included are journal and newspaper titles such as *Sasanggye* and *Ssial ūi sori*.

- **Books I&I : KSI e-books** (<http://ebook.kstudy.com/>)

A database of e-books published by KSI (Korean Studies Information), which contains more than 8,000 volumes as of March 2014. It is searchable by title and author, and browsing options are available by subjects. There are approximately 2,000 volumes of reprint set titles, originally published in the formats of serials, government documents, and archival collections. Many titles in humanities and social sciences are found in this database.

- **KRpia** (<http://www.krpia.co.kr/>)

A database of various primary source titles in Korean Studies. There are 102 titles as of March 2014, and some of the important primary sources contain the original version in texts, translation, and scanned images of the originals. The database has cross-searching capability of all titles in this database, while individual titles can be searched independently.

Keyword, author, title search options are provided as cross-searching of all titles within the entire database. Expanded search is also provided, with cross-searching capability within each of seven subject areas. It is also possible to browse titles by subject and Korean alphabet.

One exception is that one of the KRpia individual titles, *Yŏnhaengnok ch'onggan, chŭngbop'an* (燕行錄叢刊 增補版), is not part of the access through annual subscriptions of KRpia, even though this title is listed in KRpia. Full-text online access to this title has to be purchased independently. CD-ROMs are supplied as a back-up copy when purchased.

- **LawnB 로앤비** (<http://www.lawnb.com/>)

A database of information related to Korean Law in general, including laws, legislations, acts, precedents and cases, citations of secondary sources on Korean law, etc. It compares old and new legislation, and the history of the revisions of each law.

Keyword search is available with cross-searching, and search results are displayed by types of materials, such as cases, laws, secondary source citations, biographical dictionaries, news, etc. Each search result is displayed with the search words highlighted in the text. Browsing options are provided for laws and cases. Laws and legislation can be displayed by Korean alphabet, subject, and responsible ministries and offices.

- **Korean History & Culture Research Database** 한국역사 문화 조사자료 데이터베이스 (<http://www.excavation.co.kr/>)

A database of e-books and e-journals on Korean archaeology in PDF files, maintained by Zininzin. It contains approximately 4,000 titles of archaeological excavation reports published since the 1940's; regional reports of folklore and civilization published by 93 institutions; and fourteen scholarly journal titles on ancient Korea (Korean archaeology, history, folklore, and civilization).

Search options include keywords, titles, regions, periods, publishers in basic search; one can browse titles by institution, serial title, period, and region.

- **CNC Haksul Chŏngbo** CNC 학술정보 (<http://yescnc.com/>)

A database of North Korean sources, with material in the areas of language and literature, law, cookery, history, geography, culture and art, medicine, and sciences on North Korea. Full-texts and images are all searchable with cross-searching capability in all of the categorized databases, and are also individually searchable in each category.

The database is categorized into the following sub-databases:

- CNC 법률 North Korean Law (<http://law.yescnc.com/>): North Korea laws and legislation, treaties between North and South Korea
- CNC 어문학 Language and Literature (<http://language.yescnc.com/>): poems, novels, language dictionaries from North Korea
- CNC 역사 History (<http://history.yescnc.com/>): history books and museum catalogs from North Korea
- CNC 요리 Cookery (<http://food.yescnc.com/>): recipes of North Korean food
- CNC 문화예술 Art and Culture (<http://folk.yescnc.com/>): books on Korean folklore and culture, traditional music instruments, etc., published in North Korea
- CNC 한의학 Korean Medicine (<http://medicine.yescnc.com/>) : North Korean translations of traditional Korean medicine books

- **Online access of individual reprint set titles that are supplementary to other purchases:**

The following multi-volume reprint set titles are special cases of online resources. They are neither subscription-based nor one-time-purchase-based e-resources, nor are they considered to be individual e-book titles for online access. The online access of these titles is provided as supplemental resources when each reprint set title in print is purchased.

- Ilche ha chönsi ch'ejeji chöngch'aek saryo ch'ongsö 日帝下戰時體制期政策史料叢書 (<http://www.kstudy.com/japan/index.htm>)
- Kyöngsöng ilbo 京城日報 (http://www.kstudy.com/kyungsung_new/)
- Ilche sidae munhwa yujök chosa charyo 일제시대 문화유적 조사자료 (<http://chosun.excavation.co.kr/>)

5.2.2 Dissertations

- **RISS International** (<http://intl.riss.kr/>)

RISS International is an English interface of RISS (Research Information Service System), designed specifically for international institutions. It is a national union catalog of university libraries in Korea, maintained by KERIS (Korea Education & Research Information Service). It provides downloadable full-text theses and dissertations, journal articles, and bibliographic data of book and serial titles, including over 1.5 million Korean full-texts and 7.9 million bibliographic records. It is designed to provide MARC records, so that registered member institutions can download MARC records and utilize them in MARC 21 format for acquisitions or cataloging in their local library system or in OCLC after importing.

Full-text journal articles originally in DBpia, Hakjisa New Nonmun, Kyobo Scholar, and e-Article are not available directly from RISS International. These databases are referred to for full-text viewing from the search results.

Tables of contents and abstracts are also readily available from the search result list, and fee-based inter-library loan requests of journal articles, book chapters, and dissertations are available to users when full-texts are not available through RISS

International directly. ILL fees are charged per request, and are separated from the annual membership fee.

Basic and advanced search options are provided, and search results are displayed in four tabs – Articles, Theses, Books, and Serials. Citations of selected search results can be sent by e-mail, or export to text file or RefWorks.

5.2.3 Articles/Journals

- **KISS** (<http://kiss.kstudy.com/>)

KISS is a database of full-text journal articles in PDF format. As of March 2014, it contains more than 1,750 scholarly journals published by approximately 1,300 research institutions in Korea, covering from the beginning issue to the current of each journal title. It provides subject coverage in all areas, but journals in humanities and social sciences represent approximately 1,200 titles in this database.

Search functions are available by keywords, journal titles, article titles, authors, and publishers. There are options to browse journals by subject areas, with alphabetical Korean and English lists of journal titles to browse as well. Currently, KISS is available to use in mobile devices through <http://mkiss.kstudy.com>.

Each citation record shows abstracts. One may export citations to bibliography management tools, such as EndNote, RefWorks, Scholar's Aid, and also to Excel, email, text. Some article citation information is provided even without full-text articles as additional information, answering a request from database users.

- **DBpia** (<http://www.dbpia.co.kr/>)

This is a database of full-text journal articles in PDF format, including about 1,900 scholarly journal titles and more than 1.5 million articles, from the first to the most current issue. Basic search is available by author, journal title, publisher and keyword. There are also three levels of searching options: fast search (via journal title and issue, volume, or page number); expanded search; and Boolean search.

Browsing options are also provided by subject areas and by classification scheme (KDC). DBpia provides a list of authors (by Korean alphabet), with linked articles. Up to five pages of each article can be viewed by clicking 'Quick View,' while full-text articles are available for downloading. Exporting citations to bibliography management tools, such

as EndNote, RefWorks, Scholar's Aid, is available, but citations are also available to export to Excel, email, and Text as well.

The record for each article shows abstracts and table of contents with detailed citation information. There are options to export or save, information on other articles by same author, and information on other articles in the same issue. Mobile service is available through <http://m.dbpia.co.kr>.

- **Kyobo Scholar 교보문고 스킨라** (<http://scholar.dkyobobook.co.kr/>)

A database of full-text journal articles in PDF format. As of March 2014, it covers 520 scholarly journal titles issued by 339 publishers in Korea. Search options are available by article title, journal title, author, and subject area, and an expanded search option is also available. This database provides alphabetic lists of publishers and journal titles in Korean for browsing. Browsing by subject area is also available.

Each citation record shows table of contents and abstract, and gives options to export to EndNote and RefWorks.

- **E-Article** (<http://www.earticle.net/>)

This is a database of full-text journal articles in PDF format from 781 journals published by 536 research institutions in Korea, as of March 2014. Its focus is more on social sciences and humanities. All journals are covered from the beginning to the most recent issue. Each citation record shows table of contents and abstracts, with thumbnails of first 10 pages of articles. There are options to export citations to EndNote, RefWorks, Scholar's Aid, and to download to Excel or send to email, Twitter, and Facebook. There is a preview option to view first pages of each article as well.

Basic keyword search and expanded search options are available, and browsing options are also available by subject areas, journal titles and issues, and publishers. Mobile service is also available through <http://m.earticle.net>.

- **Hakjisa New Nonmun 학지사 뉴논문** (<http://newnonmun.com/>)

A database of full-text journal articles in PDF format, covering from the beginning to the most recent issue. Basic keyword search, expanded search, and Boolean search options are available and browsing options are also available by subject area, publisher, and journal title. Each citation record shows abstract and table of contents,

and also gives options to export citations to RefWorks and EndNote, and to Excel, Text, email, Facebook, Twitter, etc.

Social sciences are primary focus of New Nonmun titles, particularly education and psychology.

- **KPM 조선언론정보기지** (<http://www.dprkmedia.com/>)

A database of material from North Korea: full-text newspaper and journal articles in the humanities and social sciences, along with news photographs and videos. Included are six newspapers (*Nodong sinmun*, *Pyongyang times*, etc.), and fifteen journals, mostly in text format with some in PDFs. Coverage of each title varies, and not all newspaper and journal titles are covered from the beginning issues. Some journal titles are covered from late 1980's, while others date from 2003 or even later. Newspaper articles date from June 2005 to the present, and are updated on a real time basis.

Because the database company is located in Japan, there is an option to change the interface into Japanese, and some recent newspaper articles are translated into Japanese for Japanese viewers. However, articles in Japanese are quite selective and limited.

Keyword search is available for newspaper articles, journal articles, and news photographs, and for both interface versions - Korean and Japanese.

5.2.4 News

- **Chosŏn ilbo archive 조선일보아카이브** (<http://archive.chosun.com/>)

This is a digital archive database of *Chosŏn ilbo* (*Chosun ilbo*) from 1920 to the present. PDF images of original newspaper issues are available for all existing issues from 1920 onward, and they are browsable by date and year. Keyword search from full-text is available beginning with the 1990 issues, but keyword search from article titles is also available for all issues from 1920 on. Subject search is also provided, except for issues from 1990 to 1995.

- **Tonga ilbo archive** 동아일보아카이브 (<http://www.donga.com/pdf/archive/>)

A digital archive database of *Tonga ilbo* (*Dong-a Daily*) from 1920 to the present. PDF images of original newspaper issues are available for all existing issues from 1920 on, but keyword search from full-text is available from 1999 to now. Issues from 1920 to 1962 are indexed in subject and article titles, and searchable with index terms only for the issues in this period. Issues from 1962-1998 are only browsable by dates.

Issues of *Tonga ilbo* from 1920-1999 are also available through NAVER NewsLibrary, which is freely available and features keyword searching capability for the original images.

5.2.5 Images/Multimedia

- **KMDB VOD 한국영화 데이터베이스** (<http://www.kmdb.or.kr/VOD/>)

A database of Korean movies, maintained by the Korean Film Archive. This streaming video service for Korean movies is available for institutional members, and annual service fees are charged per PC.

As of March 2014, 395 film titles are covered under this service. Most of the movies date from the 1960's.

- **Korean History Culture Series** 진인진역사문화시리즈 (<http://www.hisculture.co.kr/>)

A collection of online audio-visual courses on Korean history and civilization, created by Zininzin. Seventeen courses are found in the course list as of March 2014, and three of them are prepared in English. All courses are in text, with optional sound and images for viewing. Images may be enlarged. There is an option for users to save texts and images.

5.3. Free Electronic Resources for Korean Studies

By Hee-sook Shin³

This list consists of freely available online portals, databases, and webpages which provide in-depth information. These resources are clustered either by format or by subjects, which were then arranged in alphabetical order. Some of these resources are repeated because they fall under more than one subject or format. Some of the detailed explanations of the resources were adopted from the sites. In order to access the full text, some of the resources in the list require that their own viewer be installed on the computer. Some resources may not be compatible with certain browsers, such as Firefox.

5.3.1 Bibliographies, Catalogs, and Indexes

- **Bibliographic Information of Translated Classics** 고전번역서 서지정보검색 (<http://db.itkc.or.kr/itkcdb/text/mks/mksMainPopup.jsp>)
A catalog of translated classics written in Hanmun (Chinese) developed by the Institute for the Translation of Korean Classics.
- **Korea Citation Index** 한국학술지인용색인 (<http://www.kci.go.kr/kciportal/main.kci?locale=ko>)
Provides citation information, statistical data and bibliographic information on domestic journals in Korea.
- **Korean Historic Magazines** 한국근현대 잡지자료 (<http://db.history.go.kr/item/level.do?itemId=ma>)
Provides indexes and full text of Korean historical journals and magazines from the early 20th century, offering browsable full images by specific dates.
- **Korea Historical Connection** 한국사서지검색 (<http://www.hongik.ac.kr/~khc>)
Korean history bibliography containing over 100,000 titles published from 1872 through 2012 relating to Korea, Asia, and Korean art.

³ Korean Studies Librarian, C.V. Starr East Asian Library, Columbia University

- **Korean Library Information System Network** 국가자료공동목록시스템
(<http://www.nl.go.kr/kolisnet>)

A union catalog of the public libraries in Korea, including the National Library. Bibliographic information is searchable by keyword, title, author, publisher, and there is browsing by subject.
- **Korean Magazine Museum Online** 한국잡지정보관
(http://museum.kmpa.or.kr/search/search_publish.asp)

Developed by The Korea Magazine Association, the database offers bibliographic information, front cover images, contents, and publishing information of the first issues of Korean magazines published since 1896. Browsible or searchable by title, publisher, and publication date.
- **Korean Old and Rare Collection Information System** 한국고전적종합목록시스템
(<http://www.nl.go.kr/korcis>)

A national catalog of Korean rare books and manuscripts which includes records from 83 institutions. It provides full-text access to over 36,000 items.
- **National Assembly Library** 대한민국 국회도서관 (<http://www.nanet.go.kr>)

An online catalog providing bibliographic information for resources housed in the National Assembly Library of Korea. It also provides more than 25 databases of government publications, documents issued by the National Assembly, periodical index, theses and dissertations since 1945, rare books, and other collections. Full text e-resources are partially available.
- **National Digital Library** 국가전자도서관 (<http://www.dlibrary.go.kr>)

Provides the bibliographic information from nine participating libraries and portal services. It also provides full-text information such as archives, official Gazette (1894-1945), Newspapers (before the year of 1945), Korean classic books, and so on.
- **Naver Book** 네이버책 (<http://book.naver.com>)

Offers bibliographic information as well as tables of contents and book reviews of publications, similar to Google Books.

- **Research Information Service System (RISS) 학술연구정보서비스** (<http://www.riss.kr>)

A union catalog of academic libraries of South Korea, similar to OCLC WorldCat, which consists of over nine million records for books, serials, and non-book materials. It also includes journal articles, and theses and dissertations. Some of the materials are available in full-text online, along with the abstracts.

5.3.2 Biographies

- **Artsnet Who's Who 아츠넷 미술인물사전** (<http://artsnet.co.kr>)

A searchable database of Korean artists from the Chosŏn dynasty to the present.

- **Biographical Dictionary of Korean People 한국인인명사전**
(<http://user.chol.com/~docex/imint.html>)

Provides various biographical links in various fields featuring both South and North Koreans.

- **Digital Dictionary of North Korean People 디지털 북한인명사전** (<http://www.kppeople.com>):

Includes biographies of over 73,000 North Koreans; contains the birth date and place, education, activities, photos and so on.

- **Historic Korean Figures 한국역대인물종합정보시스템** (<http://people.aks.ac.kr/index.aks>)

An online database of Korean people, featuring more than 16,000 historic Koreans from ancient to modern times, developed by the Academy of Korean Studies and the Korea Agency for Digital Opportunity and Promotion.

- **Joins People Search 중앙일보인물정보** (<http://people.joins.com>)

Provides short biographies of over 300,000 people, including profile information, but requires a fee for in-depth information.

- **Naver People Search 네이버인물검색** (<http://people.search.naver.com>)

Offers over 270,000 domestic biographies, including celebrities, politicians, artists, sportsmen, etc.

- **People Chosun = People 조선** (<http://people.chosun.com>)
Provides service similar to Naver People Search and Joins People Search.
- **The Yearbook of Korea People 한국인물연감** (<http://www.koreanvip.kr>)
Includes more than 12,000 Korean biographies in all areas, including profiles, photos and so on. Short biographies are free, but require a fee for more in-depth information.

5.3.3 Dictionaries and Encyclopedias

- **Daum Encyclopedia & Dictionary 다음백과사전 & 사전**
(<http://100.daum.net/top/index.do> , <http://dic.daum.net/index.do>)
Provides a searchable encyclopedia and multilingual dictionaries.
- **Doopedia 두산대백과사전** (<http://www.doopedia.co.kr>)
An online version of the encyclopedia, “*Tonga wŏnsaek segye taebaekkwa sajŏn*”
Developed by Doosan Corporation.
- **Encyclopedia Britannica Online Korea 브리टे니커백과사전** (<http://www.britannica.co.kr>)
The Korean version of the Encyclopedia Britannica, which contains thousands of articles, biographies, videos, and images. 30 % of the information in the encyclopedia is related to Korea.
- **Encyclopedia of Korean Culture (EncyKorea) 한국민족문화대백과사전**
(<http://encykorea.aks.ac.kr>)
An online encyclopedia of Korean history, language, and culture. Revised and updated version of “*Han'guk minjok munhwa taebaekkwa sajŏn*” published by the Academy of Korean Studies. It is also accessible through the search engine, Naver.
- **Encyclopedia of Korean Folklore Culture 한국민속대백과사전** (<http://folkency.nfm.go.kr>)
Compilation of eight encyclopedias on Korean folk life and traditions, developed by the National Folk Museum. Includes: “Encyclopedia of Korean Seasonal Customs (한국세시풍속사전)”, “Encyclopedia of Korean Folk Religion (한국민속신앙사전)”, “Encyclopedia of Korean Folk Literature (한국민속문학사전)”. To be added by the year 2023: “Encyclopedia of Korean Rites of Passage (한국일생의례사전)”, “Encyclopedia of Korean Folk Arts (한국민속예술사전)”, “Encyclopedia of Food, Clothing and Housing

in Korea (한국의식주생활사전)”, “Encyclopedia of Occupations and Skills in Korea (한국생업기술사전)” and “Encyclopedia of Korean Folk Society (한국민속사회사전)”. Contents consist of Korean folklore, rituals, folk art, sound, video and much more.

- **Encyclopedia of Local Korean Culture 한국향토문화전자대전**
(<http://www.grandculture.net>)
One-stop search encyclopedia of Korean local culture providing all the information on local history, politics, society, and so on. It also provides a digital map, name and geographical indexes and chronology.
- **Encyclopedia on North Korea 디지털북한 백과사전** (<http://www.kplibrary.com>)
Encyclopedia on North Korea, developed by Chungang Ilbosa, provides information including a glossary, chronology, dictionary, etc.
- **Glossary of Information Technology 정보통신 용어사전** (<http://word.tta.or.kr>)
A dictionary of information technology acronyms and terms.
- **Glossary of Korean Studies 한국학영문용어/용례사전** (<http://glossary.aks.ac.kr>)
Developed by the Academy of Korean Studies, this is an online dictionary that offers English language definitions of terms used in Korean studies.
- **Korea Computer Mission Dictionary 한국컴퓨터선교회사전**
(http://kcm.kr/search_dic.php)
Provides various dictionaries on Christianity.
- **Korean Classical Music Dictionary 국악사전**
(http://www.gugak.go.kr:9001/data/education/dictionary/dict_1st.jsp)
A Korean classical music dictionary developed by the National Gugak Center.
- **Korean Standard Dictionary 국립국어원 표준국어대사전** (<http://stdweb2.korean.go.kr>)
A online version of the Korean standard dictionary offered by The National Institute of the Korean Language, including idioms, proverbs, dialects, etc. The online dictionary is free to download.

- **Naver Encyclopedia & Dictionary** 네이버 지식백과 & 사전
(<http://terms.naver.com>, <http://dic.naver.com>)
Provides various encyclopedias and multilingual dictionaries.
- **Wikipedia** 위키백과 (<http://www.ko.wikipedia.org>)
The Korean version of a free encyclopedia that allows anyone to edit.
- **YBM All-in-All Integrated Dictionary** YBM 올인올통합사전
(<http://www.ybmallinall.com/index.asp>)
A digital dictionary which consists of 24 dictionaries on language, business, etc.; includes glossaries.
- **Yonsei Korean Dictionary** 연세한국어사전 (<http://www.britannica.co.kr> or directly at http://kordic.britannica.co.kr/sear_frame.asp?keyword=%20&keykind=all&sear_type=part)
A Korean dictionary developed by Yōnse Taehakkyo Onŏ Chongbo Kaebal Yōn'guwōn. It can be accessed through the Encyclopedia Britannica Online Korea.

5.3.4 Films and Multimedia

- **e Film Museum = e 영상역사관** (<http://film.ktv.go.kr/index.jsp>)
Provides government audio visual archives such as Taehan News, films, and voice recordings. Coverage begins in the 1950s and extends into the 1990s.
- **Korean Classic Film Theater on YouTube** 한국고전영화극장
(<http://www.youtube.com/user/KoreanFilm>)
Contains 83 Korean classic films with English subtitles produced since 1930, on YouTube, provided by the Korean Film Archive.
- **Korean Movie Database** 한국영화데이터베이스 (<http://www.kmdb.or.kr>)
Searchable Korean Movie Database on films, people, images, articles, criticisms, scenarios, and publications. It also includes a VOD which has Korean films from 1930 to 1990 including classical films, documentaries, national videos and independent films. Films are partially accessible.

- **Sine21 DB 씨네 21DB** (http://www.cine21.com/db/top_movie)
Developed by Han Kyöre, it contains information on over 30,000 Korean films including production notes, people, reviews, articles and so on. It also provides information on new films, comics, TV commercials.
- **Film Information Center 영화정보센터**
(<http://www.kofic.or.kr/kofic/business/infm/introData.do>)
Searchable Korean film database developed by the Korean Film Council includes films, people, and film companies. Directory and Korean Film News are also provided.

5.3.5 Geography and Maps

- **Chongno Public Library 종로도서관고문헌원문검색서비스**
(<http://jongnolib.koreanhistory.or.kr>)
Provides full text images of modern maps published between 1916 and 1927 and geographical materials published between 1927 and 1930.
- **Daum Maps 다음지도** (<http://map.daum.net>)
A mapping service provided by Daum.
- **Forest Geographic Information Services 산림공간정보서비스**
(http://www.forest.go.kr/newkfsweb/kfs/idx/SubIndex.do?orgId=fgis&mn=KFS_02_04)
Provides forest GIS including photos and satellite images developed by Korea Forest Service.
- **Land Portal 국토포탈** (<http://www.land.go.kr>)
As a portal, it provides a wide range of high quality geographic information which includes Human-Oriented Geographic Information System, Geographic Names Searching Service, Open API, Storytelling, and much more. It also provides online version of the atlas book, entitled “*Taehan minguk kukka chidojip*”

- **Map Services** 국토지리정보원 지도검색서비스 (<http://sd.ngii.go.kr:9000>)
Developed by the National Geographic Information Institute, this provides various geographic information of South Korea, such as national control points and national base maps, GIS, surveying, and mapping.
- **Naver Maps** 네이버지도 (<http://map.naver.com>)
A mapping service like Google Maps, offering street maps, public transportation and so on.
- **Old Maps** 고지도 (http://e-kyujanggak.snu.ac.kr/sub_index.jsp?ID=GZD)
Provides high-definition digital images of more than 220 old Korean maps along with detailed information about the regions that each map covers. A location index allows the user to search a location name on the maps.
- **Seoul Map** 서울지도 (<http://gis.seoul.go.kr>)
Detailed street map of Seoul hosted by the Seoul Metropolitan Government.
- **The National Library of Korea Web Search Service** 국립중앙도서관 고지도 웹검색서비스 (<http://www.dlibrary.go.kr/Map/main.jsp>)
Provides digital images of old Korean maps held in the National Library.
- **Tourism Digital Map** 관광전자지도 (<http://map.visitkorea.or.kr>)
Maintained by Korea Tourism Organization, it provides a digital map with tourist information such as attractions, accommodations, restaurants, and shopping.

5.3.6 Newspapers and News Media

- **Daily NK = 데일리 NK** (<http://www.dailynk.com/korean/dailynk.php>)
An online newspaper focusing on the reality of North Korea with the subject of North Korean democratization and human rights.
- **e Film Museum = e 영상역사관** (<http://film.ktv.go.kr/index.jsp>)
Provides government audio visual archives such as Taehan News, films, and voice recordings. Coverage begins in the 1950s and extends into the 1990s.

- **Korean Historic Magazines and Newspapers** 한국근현대 신문자료
 (<http://www.koreanhistory.or.kr/dirservice/chronicle/listNews.jsp?pLarDiv=CRONICLE&pMidDiv=NEWS>)

An integrated full text database of Korean historical newspapers published from 1905-1931, offering browsable full images by specific dates.
- **Korean News** 조선통신 (<http://www.kcna.co.jp/index-k.htm>)

Contents are NK news articles, photos and archives published by the Korean Central News Agency. Also provided are highlights and archives of “*Nodong Sinmun*”
- **Media Kaon** 미디어가온 (<http://www.kinds.or.kr>)

The new title of KINDS. This is a comprehensive online news database which provides full text of newspaper articles from national dailies, economic dailies, TV news programs, English language dailies, local dailies, professional newspapers, and news magazines. It also provides historical newspapers such as “*Tongnip Sinmun*” and “*Taehan Maeil Sinmun*”.
- **Naver News Library** 네이버 뉴스라이브러리 (<http://newslibrary.naver.com>)

PDF files of four Korean newspapers including “*Kyŏngnyang sinmun*”, “*Tonga Ilbo*”, “*Han Kyŏre*”, and “*Maeil Kyŏngje Sinmun*”, operated by Naver.com, covering from 1920 through 1999. It is browsable by dates and searchable by keywords.
- **Newspapers (-1950)** 국립중앙도서관전자도서관 (<http://www.dlibrary.net/dlibrary>)

Provides PDF files of pre-1945 Korean newspapers. It can be searchable by title and index keywords.
- **Newsstand** 가판대 (<http://www.newsstand.co.kr>)

A comprehensive directory of Korean newspapers and magazines.
- **NK Chosun** NK 조선(<http://nk.chosun.com>)

Provides information about North Korean current news as well as editorials, research reports, information on social conditions from North Korean defectors, etc.
- **Shinmoongage** 신문가게 (<http://www.newspaper.co.kr/click.html>)

A directory of over 80 Korean newspapers as well as English newspapers.

5.3.7 Statistics

- **Culturestat 문화센터** (<http://culturestat.mcst.go.kr>)
A portal which provides a variety of Korean arts and culture statistics. (please check the webpage)
- **Economic statistics System = ECOS 한국은행 경제통계시스템** (<http://ecos.bok.or.kr>)
A website for delivering economic statistics on the main sectors of the Korean economy for policymakers and the public. It covers financial economic statistics, national account statistics and various business and consumer survey statistics. Search stat contains useful functions including fluctuation rate calculation, chart and graph drawing and data downloading.
- **Gender Statistics Information System 성인지통계정보시스템**
(<http://gsis.kwdi.re.kr/gsis/kr/main.html>)
Operated by the Korea Women's Development Institute, this site provides integrated statistics related to gender as basic data for gender impact assessment and gender budgeting, and evaluating the efficient implementation of national policies for accomplishing gender equality. It provides not only national and regional gender statistics, but also global standardized information. It can be searched by theme, name, and topic.
- **Internet Statistics Information System 인터넷 통계정보검색 시스템** (<http://isis.kisa.or.kr>)
A database developed by Korea Internet & Security Agency that provides various statistics related to the Internet including IP addresses and Internet usage.
- **Korea Federation of Small and Medium Business 중소기업통계** (<http://stat.kfsb.or.kr>)
Statistical information on small and medium Korean industries operated by members of the Korea Federation of Small and Medium Business (Kbiz).
- **Korea Health Welfare Statistics (HAWELISIS) 보건복지통계** (<https://hawelsis.kihasa.re.kr>)
A statistical information service portal operated by the Korea Institute for Health and Social Affairs which provides a one-stop search database, including 'a diversity of report-type basic statistics', 'reporting statistics', 'health/welfare related statistics produced by various institutes and 'survey statistics' generated by KIHASA.

- **Korean Social Science Data Center 한국사회과학 데이터센터** (<http://www.ksdc.re.kr>)

Consists of all kinds of statistical yearbooks published by the government, public institutions and overseas institutions. The data is classified and processed through a new data-input system developed by the KSDC.
- **Korean Statistical Information Service (KOSIS) 국가통계포털** (<http://kosis.kr>)

Provides all kinds of Korean statistical information and data that is searchable by subject, institution, and name. It also includes online publications on Korean statistical information.
- **Korean Educational Statistics Service 교육통계서비스** (<http://std.kedi.re.kr/index>)

Provides educational statistics on Korean pre-primary, primary, secondary, and higher education, employment status of higher education graduates, and lifelong education, as well as international education statistics.
- **Media Statistics Information System 미디어통계 정보시스템**
(<http://211.51.233.18/index.asp>)

Provides statistical data and surveys on media which includes media industry statistics, media directory, media survey, and media yearbook.
- **Merchandise Trade Statistics 수출입무역통계**
(<http://www.customs.go.kr/kcsweb/user.tdf?a=user.statsIndex.StatsIndexApp&bid=PA012DM&npp=4&len=18>):

Provides statistics on merchandise trade; the site is operated by Korea Customs Service.
- **Employment and Labor Statistics of Korea 고용노동통계** (<http://laborstat.molab.go.kr>)

Provides labor-related statistical data and information on economically active population, wage and working hours, labor relations, the coverage of employment insurance, work permit system for foreign workers, industrial accidents, and much more.
- **Science and Technology Statistics Services 과학기술통계서비스** (<http://sts.ntis.go.kr/index.jsp>)

Consists of various statistical data including OECD statistics on Science and Technology by Ministry of Science, ICT & future planning.

- **Seoul Statistics 서울통계** (<http://stat.seoul.go.kr>)
Provides statistical data related to Seoul, including population, public transportation, education, environment and so on.
- **Statistics Korea 통계청** (<http://kostat.go.kr>)
Provides various statistical information, statistical publications, statistics, surveys, statistical databases and much more.
- **Tour.go 관광지식정보시스템** (<http://www.tour.go.kr>)
Contains statistical data on tourism such as tourism policies, research materials, and information on tour resources.

5.3.8 Arts & Culture

- **Culture and Arts Information Services 문화예술정보서비스** (artsonline.arko.or.kr)
A database which provides a comprehensive art and cultural information such as theater scripts, visual materials (play, music, dance, and traditional music) and much more.
- **Cultural Heritage Administration of Korea 문화재청** (<http://www.cha.go.kr>)
Provides information on cultural properties, palaces, royal tombs, North Korean cultural properties, and so on. It also provides cyber tour into cultural properties, maps, statistical data, dictionaries and glossary.
- **Cultural Heritage GIS Service 문화재공간정보서비스** (<http://gis-heritage.go.kr>)
A searchable GIS service which provides cultural property information. It provides not only description of cultural properties, but also photos, plans, video clips, and much more.
- **Cultural Heritage of North Korea 북한문화재 자료관** (<http://north.nricp.go.kr>)
Provides images and photographs of cultural properties in North Korea based on the book “*Chosŏn yujŏk yumul togam*” published from 1988 to 1996.

- **Cultural Heritage Research Knowledge Portal 문화유산 연구지식포털** (<http://portal.nricp.go.kr>)

The National Research Institute of Cultural Heritage collected cultural heritage research and compiled them into a database. The information including reports about Korean arts, architecture and cultural assets is accessible through the Cultural Heritage Research Knowledge Portal accompanied by metadata, image files, drawings, video and audio data and other multimedia content. Archaeological excavation and restoration projects are also accessible.

- **Cultural Portal 문화포털** (<http://www.culture.go.kr>)

An integrated portal which provides information on Korean art and culture including cultural news, exhibitions, performing events and so on.

- **Digital Archive of Performing Arts 공연예술 디지털아카이브** (<http://archive.ntok.go.kr>)

Provides archives on performing arts containing audio and visual materials, photos, posters, program brochures, and materials on performing arts.

- **Hanstyle 전통문화종합정보** (<http://www.han-style.com>)

One stop search portal which links to various Korean cultural sites and provides traditional culture-related information such as life, art, humanities, cultural heritage, and so on, through government and private webpages.

- **Korea Traditional Knowledge Portal 한국전통지식포털** (<http://www.koreantk.com>)

The Korean Intellectual Property Office's vast database of traditional knowledge includes documentation on old Korean and Chinese medicine, as well as a wide range of articles and patent documents. The database provides various search options.

- **Korean National Heritage Online 국가문화유산포털** (<http://www.heritage.go.kr>)

Detailed information about Korean national treasures, historic documents, traditional music, and cultural customs with photographs. Other features include Cyber Tour into Cultural Properties, Multimedia Folk Artifacts Gallery, and Cyber National Museum of Korea, which includes 72 national, public, and university museums in Korea.

- **Kugak Archives 국악아카이브** (<http://archive.gugak.go.kr>)
Contains resources on traditional music, dance, Yŏnhŭi and creative traditional music including private archives, video, audio, images, etc. Developed by Kungnip Kugagwŏn.
- **National Folk Museum of Korea 국립민속박물관** (<http://www.nfm.go.kr/>)
The National Folk Museum of Korea, serving an educational and cultural role, provides information on how Koreans lived in traditional times such as seasonal customs, twelve animals of the zodiac, traditional Korean folk rituals, and so on. Images and photographs about Korean culture are organized by directories and are searchable by keyword.
- **National Research Institute of Cultural Heritage 국립문화재연구소** (<http://www.nrich.go.kr>)
The searchable website provided by NRICH includes research papers, videos, sound on important intangible cultural properties in Korea and traditional rituals and food. It also provides basic dictionary of Korean history and the terms of cultural heritage.
- **Seoul Arts Center 예술의전당** (<http://www.sac.or.kr>)
This website is a comprehensive center for information related to performance arts at Seoul Arts Center, covering programs, theater, terminology, organizations, performance VOD, customs of performances, etc.

5.3.9 Economics & Business

- **Economic statistics System ECOS 한국은행 경제통계시스템** (<http://ecos.bok.or.kr>)
A website that delivers economic statistics on the main sectors of the Korean Economy for policymakers and the public. It covers financial economic statistics, national account statistics and various business and consumer survey statistics. Search stat contains useful functions including calculation of rate fluctuations, chart and graph drawing, and data downloading.
- **Korea Federation of Small and Medium Business 중소기업통계** (<http://stat.kfsb.or.kr>)
Statistical information on small and medium Korean industries; the site is operated by the Korea Federation of Small and Medium Business (Kbiz).

- **Korea Institute of Finance 한국금융연구원** (<http://www.kif.re.kr>)
Provides research and analysis on domestic and international financial trends, policy study for the development of financial systems and the financial industry, research and analysis on the managerial efficiency of financial institutions, and collection and compilation of information on the latest developments in the domestic and international financial sectors.
- **KOTRA Global Window 해외비즈니스정보포털** (<http://www.globalwindow.org>)
Provides information on global market, global investment, and trade, as well as a comprehensive guide to international business in over 90 major countries, etc. It also provides economic information on North Korea, and full text of special reports.

5.3.10 Education

- **Ministry of Education 교육부** (<http://www.moe.go.kr>)
Offers educational information such as policies, learning materials, school information, education statistics, projects, etc.
- **Korea Education and Research Information Service 한국교육학술정보원** (<http://www.keris.or.kr>)
Contains educational information such as white papers, annual reports, trends of education, etc.
- **Korean Educational Research Information Center 교육인적자원개발** (<http://www.keric.net>)
One stop search portal which provides various types of materials related to education. Full texts are partially available.
- **Korean Educational Statistics Service 교육통계서비스** (<http://std.kedi.re.kr>)
Offers various educational statistics in Korea developed by the Korean Educational Development Institute.
- **National Curriculum Information Center 국가교육과정정보센터** (<http://ncic.go.kr>)
A web based information sharing system on Korean and foreign national curriculums, administered by the Korea Institute for Curriculum and Evaluation. It covers educational curriculum archives since 1945, educational law, and educational policy at the national or regional level. Curriculums can be searched by school level, subject, and cycle.

5.3.11 Genealogy

- **Korean Genealogical Table 한국족보자료시스템** (<http://jokbo.skku.edu>)
A collection of genealogical data providing a record of families, blood relations, and so forth.
- **Shin Chong-u Who's Who 신종우의인명사전** (<http://www.shinjongwoo.co.kr>)
Provides information related to Korean genealogy including the history of family names, family name associations, and other references to persons with particular family names. It also provides a who's who of historic Koreans.

5.3.12 Government

- **Data.go.kr 공공데이터포털** (<https://www.data.go.kr>)
The official gateway to South Korean government documents; operated by the Korea Agency for Digital Opportunity and Promotion.
- **Electronic Government News 전자관보** (<http://gwanbo.korea.go.kr>)
An electronic edition of the official Korean government Gazette, since October 2000.
- **e Presidents 한국역대대통령** (<http://www.epresident.co.kr>)
Provides digital archives of Presidents of South Korea, including biographies and other related information.
- **e Yöngsang Yöksagwan = e 영상역사관** (<http://film.ktv.go.kr/index.jsp>)
Provides government audio visual archives such as Taehan News, films, and voice recordings. Coverage begins in the 1950s and extends into the 1990s.
- **Korea e-Government 대한민국전자정부** (<http://www.korea.go.kr>)
Official site of the e-government in South Korea. Contents include links to a range of government sites and policies, Korean news, government press release, Korean promotional periodicals, etc.
- **KTV 국민방송 (=한국정책방송)** (<http://www.ktv.go.kr>)
An on-air government news channel which provides policy broadcast, breaking news, news, culture documentaries, etc.

- **National Archives of Korea** 국가기록원 (<http://www.archives.go.kr>)
Provides a searchable database which includes 2.7 million archival sources including documents on the colonial period, audio-visual and photographs, and serials from government and non-government sources. It also holds presidential archives, foreign documents related to Korea, oral histories, etc.
- **Online Civil Affairs Services Minwon 24** 정부민원포털 민원 24 (www.minwon.go.kr)
A civil affairs information gateway which provides 5,000 civil affairs services, such as application submission, issuance and review, integrated civil service, authentication service, and change of address service. It is required to install its application or a keyboard secure program.
- **Policy Briefing** 정책브리핑 (<http://korea.kr>)
Provides government press releases and information about government publications.
- **Policy Research Information Service & Management** 정책연구관리시스템 (<http://www.prism.go.kr>)
Offers information about government policies for officials, departments and agencies and the public. Contents provided by NLK are government publications including research reports, and trends of dept. and agencies, etc. Research reports provide abstracts, table of contents and full text of some reports.

5.3.13 History

- **Complete Collection of the Korean Study of Confucian Classics**
한국경학자료시스템 (<http://koco.skku.edu>)
A database of 145 volumes of texts from the collection of Confucian classics published by Daedong Institute for Korean Studies at Sungkyunkwan University. Images of the original text are provided.
- **DB of Korean classics** 한국고전종합 DB (<http://www.minchu.or.kr>)
Consists of full-text images of ancient classics, original and translated text files, catalogs, bibliographical and philological information, and multimedia files of various

kinds; the site is maintained by Institute for the Translation of Korean Classics. Contents are translated Korean historical classical books from historical records written in Hanmun (Chinese) such as “*Kugyŏk Chosŏn wangjo sillok*” “*Kugyŏk Sŭngjŏngwŏn ilgi*”, “*Kugyŏk Ilsŏngnok*”, “*Han ’guk munjip ch ’onggan*”, and many more.

- **Tonghak Peasant Revolution Information System** 동학농민혁명종합지식정보시스템 (<http://www.e-donghak.go.kr>)

Provides information on Tonghak Incident by Donghak Peasant Revolution Foundation.

- **Historic Korean Figures** 한국역대인물종합정보시스템 (<http://people.aks.ac.kr/index.aks>)

An online database with information about historically significant Korean people, featuring more than 16,000 people from ancient to modern times.

- **Histopia** 한국사정보사이트 (<http://www.histopia.net>)

Provides searchable databases with subjects such as old geographic names, historic Korean figures, and Paekche cultural heritage and historic sites. It also contains many links to various sources on Korean history, photos related to Sinmiyangyo (신미양요) and much more.

- **Changsŏgak Royal Archives** 왕실도서관 장서각 디지털아카이브 (<http://yoksa.aks.ac.kr>)

A database of digitized collections of Changsŏgak, the library of the Academy of Korean Studies. It provides a variety of materials including diaries, early han'gŭl novels, the unofficial history of the Chosŏn Dynasty, and audiovisual materials about Korean culture, oral literature, folk songs, and dialects.

- **Korea Democracy Foundation Open Archive** 민주화운동아카이브시스템 (<http://db.kdemocracy.or.kr>)

Provides historical documents, images, and oral statements regarding the Korean democracy movement, provided by the Korea Democracy Foundation.

- **Korea Historical Connection** 한국사서지검색 (<http://www.hongik.ac.kr/~khc>)

Bibliography of Korean history, containing over 100,000 titles published from 1872 through 2012 relating to Korea, and Korean art, and Asia.

- **Korean History Database 한국사데이터베이스** (<http://db.history.go.kr>)

The Korean history full text database covering the pre-modern to modern history of Korea. Categories include rare and modern monographs, periodicals, documents/manuals, who's who, chronicles, and multimedia collection.

- **Korean History On-line 한국역사정보통합시스템** (<http://www.koreanhistory.or.kr>)

A portal site which provides a cross-search service for various historical databases built and shared by over 29 organizations, including the National Institute of Korean History, Academy of Korean Studies, Kyujanggak Institute of Korean Studies, etc. There is a directory organizing the materials according to type.

- **Kyujanggak Institute for Korean Studies E- Kyujanggak 서울대학교규장각 한국학연구원** (<http://e-kyujanggak.snu.ac.kr>)

Formerly functioned as the Royal Library during the Chosŏn dynasty. It offers more convenient access to digitized collections available either in full-text or as high-definition digital images. Digitized collections include old maps, books, documents, government records of the late Chosŏn dynasty and the colonial period, and much more.

- **Life – History Museum 옛문서생활사박물관** (<http://life.ugyo.net>)

Provides full text image of archives held by Korean Studies Advancement Center showing the daily life of ancient people. Contents include records of everyday life, manuscripts, multimedia, photos, etc.

- **Bibliography of Internet Resources on Korean History 한국사홈페이지목록** (<http://user.chollian.net/~toaya>)

Lists Korean-history related organizations and individual scholars' webpages. Organized by period.

- **National Institute of Korean History 국사편찬위원회** (<http://www.history.go.kr>)

Provides full text of materials related to Korean history. It is possible to search materials that the National Institute of Korean History publishes or holds through the Hanguksa Database. It also provides full text of “*Chosŏn wangjo sillok*”, “*Sŭngjŏngwŏn ilgi*”, Korean modern newspaper sources, series publications, documents, and much more.

- **National Memory Heritage Service** 국가기록유산 (<http://www.memorykorea.go.kr>)

It provides the history of creation of Hangul and the history of Korean paper. The ‘Archival Heritage’ includes national treasures, material on the alphabet and calligraphy. Full text documents are available.
- **Northeast Asian History Network** 동북아역사넷 (<http://contents.nahf.or.kr>)

A database of full-text collections of books, documents, maps, images, and online courses on Northeast Asian history, created by the Northeast Asian History Foundation.
- **Korean Epigraphic Visual Information System** 한국금석문종합영상정보시스템 (<http://gsm.nricp.go.kr>)

Provides comprehensive Korean epigraphic information from the National Research Institute of Cultural Heritage. This database is also searchable via **Korean History On-line**.
- **The Digital Library of Nammyŏng Study** 남명학고문헌시스템 (<http://nmh.gsnu.ac.kr/>)

Provides various kinds of old materials on Nammyŏng study which includes old books, collections of Confucian scholars' writings, documents, and engraved wood blocks.
- **The History of Korean Independence Movement Online** 한국독립운동사 정보시스템 (<http://search.i815.or.kr>)

A comprehensive information system which offers online access to materials held in the Independence Hall of Korea. This searchable database provides full texts, images, multimedia, and so on.
- **War Memorial of Korea** 전쟁기념관 (<http://www.warmemo.or.kr>)

A database containing a total of 3,130 cases of Korean War and the Vietnam War materials, including information on leading patriots, the two wars and battles, battle sites, monuments, weapons, military relics, military terms, and photographs concerning the wars and military history.

5.3.14 Labor

- **Daily Labor News** 매일노동뉴스 (<http://www.labortoday.co.kr>)
Provides daily labor news including politics, economics and social society.
- **Employment and Labor Statistics of Korea** 고용노동통계 (<http://laborstat.molab.go.kr>)
Provides labor Statistical data and information on economically active population, wage and working hours, labor relations, the coverage of employment insurance, work permit system for foreign workers, and industrial accidents and much more.
- **Korea Labor Institute** 한국노동연구원 (<http://www.kli.re.kr>)
Conducts policy-oriented research on a wide range of labor issues, including employment and wages, human resources development, industrial relations, health and safety and provides access to the full text of the research papers. The site also contains full text of its serials and KLI statistics archives.
- **Ministry of Labor** 노동부 (<http://www.moel.go.kr>)
Contains information about labor in terms of policies, laws and regulation about work-place health and safety and so on.

5.3.15 Language & Literature

- **DB of Korean classics** 한국고전종합 DB (<http://www.minchu.or.kr>)
Consists of full-text images of ancient classics, original and translated text files, catalogs, bibliographical and philological information, and multimedia files of various kinds. A thesaurus of classical terminology is provided.
- **King Sejong Institute** 세종학당 (www.sejonghacdang.org)
A website that provides integrated information on Korean language learning and Korean culture. There is also a Learning Management System (LMS) for the administrators of the King Sejong Institute, Korean learners, and Korean teachers.

- **KLTI DB 한국문학번역원 데이터베이스** (<http://www.klti.or.kr/>)

Provides databases of translated books, translated books published overseas, Korean writers, dictionaries, and information on Korean literature. It also includes the full-text of books on Korean literature in English.
- **Korean Short Story Index 한국단편소설 색인**
(<http://www.hawaii.edu/asiaref/korea/SSIndex/ssmain.htm>)

Consists primarily of Korean short story collections held by the Hamilton Library at the University of Hawaii at Manoa. Some medium or full-length stories and plays are also included as part of the collection. The site provides bibliographic information.
- **The National Institute of the Korean Language 국립국어원** (<http://www.korean.go.kr>)

This site promotes the development of the Korean language and the improvement of language used by the Korean people. It provides the most accurate and diverse information on the Korean language, along with the Institute's Standard Korean language dictionary and textbooks, its rules for dialects, pronunciation, grammar, and so on. It also provides integrated information on the Korean language including the 21st Century Sejong Plan.
- **The Korean Language Society 한글학회** (<http://www.hangeul.or.kr>)

Includes the current Korean spelling system and searchable databases on the Korean language.
- **Uri mal Paeumt'ŏ 우리말배움터** (<http://urimal.cs.pusan.ac.kr>)

A portal which helps with the learning of the Korean language. The contents include literary rules, various dictionaries, useful tools such as transliteration guidelines, spell/grammar check, etc.
- **Study Korean 스테디코리아안** (<http://study.korean.net>)

A free educational site created by the Foundation for Overseas Koreans, a government-sponsored organization under the direction of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs and Trade. It provides various information on learning Korean language and culture for Korean language teachers overseas. Contents include e classes, learning Korean for kids and adults, EBS contents, multimedia resources on Korean culture and history, and so on.

5.3.16 Law

- **Constitutional Court of Korea 헌법재판소** (<http://www.ccourt.go.kr>)
Provides full text of constitutional court information such as cases of constitutional adjudication and the publications of the Court.
- **ILaw 아이로** (<http://www.ilaw.go.kr>)
Developed by the Ministry of Justice, it provides one-stop search for legislation, cases, precedents, and legal research papers published both nationally and internationally.
- **Korean Law Information Center 국가법령정보센터** (<http://www.law.go.kr>)
The official government site for Korean legal information, maintained by the Korean Ministry of Government Legislation. It provides full-text, table of contents, and summaries.
- **State of the Republic of Korea 대한민국영문법령** (<http://elaw.klri.re.kr>)
An online database which provides English translation of the statutes of the Republic of Korea. Contents include the Constitution, and more than 1,400 major acts and subordinate statutes currently in force. It can be searched by statute name or statutory history.
- **Supreme Court of Korea Total Law Information 대한민국법원종합법률정보** (<http://glaw.scourt.go.kr>)
A searchable database covering Supreme Court case law, legislation, publications, etc., concerning the Supreme Court of Korea.
- **UNIL/W 통일과법률** (<http://www.unilaw.go.kr>)
A full text database which includes law information regarding unification and the relationship between South and North Korea.

5.3.17 North Korea and Unification

- **Encyclopedia on North Korea** 디지털 북한백과사전 (<http://www.kplibrary.com>)
This encyclopedia on North Korea developed by Chungang Ilbosa provides information including a glossary, chronology, dictionary, etc.
- **Information Center on North Korea** 북한자료센터 (<http://unibook.unikorea.go.kr>)
Provides extensive information resources on North Korea presented by the Ministry of Unification. Included are links to North Korean films, text books, comics, and much more. It also provides a portal, entitled Bukhan Chǒngbo Pōtal (북한정보포털).
- **Institute of North Korean Studies** 북한연구소 (<http://www.nkorea.or.kr>)
Provides information on North Korea and unification. Included is information about NK, bibliographical information of books and serials, streaming, photos, and so on.
- **Pukhan net** 북한네트 (<http://nk.joins.com>)
Provided by the Chungang Ilbosa, this website contains detailed information on North Korea including current news, politics, economics, and much more.
- **North Korean Encyclopedia** 북한백과 (<http://office.kbs.co.kr/tongil1>)
This information blog on North Korea developed by KBS provides information on the North Korean people, NK economics, arts, geography, and much more.
- **North Korea Human Geography** 북한지역 정보넷 (<http://www.cybernk.net>)
Provides a comprehensive database with these categories: administrative district information; natural geographical information; human geographical information; treasures and cultural properties; biographical information; folk culture; and multimedia.
- **The South-North Dialogue** 남북회담 (<http://dialogue.unikorea.go.kr>)
Provides records and minutes about the dialogues between South Korea and North Korea.
- **UNIL/W 통일과법률** (<http://www.unilaw.go.kr>)
A full text database which includes law information regarding unification and the relationship between South and North Korea.

- **Uriminjokkiri** 우리민족끼리 (<http://www.uriminzokkiri.com>)

Provides North Korean news from North Korea's Central News Agency. The contents include current news, the Korean Democratic Party, press releases, articles, literature, arts (movies, music) newspapers (*Nodong Sinmun*), etc.

5.3.18 Philosophy & Religion

- **Korean Computer Mission** 한국컴퓨터선교회 (<http://kcm.kr>)

Provides in-depth information on Christian Missions.

- **Sachal.net** 사찰넷 (<http://www.sachal.net>)

A portal which provides links to a variety of sources on Buddhism. It provides comprehensive information on Korea's traditional temples and a comprehensive compilation of Korean Buddhist architecture & cultural treasures which represent the spirit of Korean Buddhism.

- **The Nammyŏng Studies System for Old Materials** 남명학고문헌시스템 (<http://nmh.gsnu.ac.kr>)

Provides various kinds of old materials on Nammyŏng study which includes old books, collections of Confucian scholars' writings, documents, and engraved wood blocks.

- **Tripitaka Koreana knowlegebase** 고려대장경지식베이스 (<http://kb.sutra.re.kr>)

Tripitaka Koreana, also known as the Koryo Taejanggyŏng, "a synthesis of all of the Buddha's teachings," is divided into three sections, called *pitaka*, thus giving the name *Tripitaka* (三藏). These three include the Sutra Pitaka, the Vinaya Pitaka, and the Abhidharma Pitaka. The database also includes a Korean Buddhist dictionary as well as a dictionary of Chinese Buddhist terms.

- **Ugyonet** 유교넷 (<http://ugyo.net>)

A portal by the Korean Studies Advancement Center provides full text of manuscripts and archives on Confucianism.

- **Won-Buddhism** 원불교 (<http://www.wonbuddhism.or.kr>)

Provides detailed theories on Won-Buddhism. Also, it features scripture & dharma words, meditation materials, a dictionary, and much more.

5.3.19 Science & Information Technology

- **ITFIND** (<http://www.itfind.or.kr>)
A large portal which contains information on information technology.
- **Electronics Information Center 전자정보센터** (<http://www.eic.re.kr>)
A full-text collection of industry trend analysis, and technology development news regarding materials, batteries, semiconductors, etc.
- **Korea Biodiversity Information System 국가생물종 지식정보시스템** (<http://www.nature.go.kr>)
Developed by the Korea Forest Service and Korea National Arboretum, it provides a information on the state of national bio-resources such as plants, insects, fungi, wildlife resources, etc.
- **Korea Intellectual Property Rights Information Service 특허정보넷키프리스** (<http://www.kipris.or.kr>)
An internet based patent document search engine which covers publications of Korean IPR applications, legal status information, trial information, etc.
- **Korea Resource Sharing Alliance 학술정보공동활용협의회** (<http://www.korsa.or.kr>)
Operated by the Gwangju Institute of Science and Technology Library, this site allows for comprehensive search of journals held by the KORSA alliance organizations.
- **Mirian 미리안** (<http://mirian.kisti.re.kr>)
As a portal focused on future technology, it offers systematic information on the latest scientific technology trends and promising technologies, as well as in-depth analysis reports written by KISTI researchers.
- **National Digital Science Library 국가과학기술 정보센터** (<http://www.ndsl.kr>)
A portal which allows one to view full-text journals, research reports, patents, and dissertations. Includes seminar multimedia viewing capability.
- **National Science & Technology Information Science 국가과학기술지식정보 서비스** (<http://www.ntis.go.kr>)
Provides convenient one-stop access to information on government funded R&D projects, including the program details, human resources, equipment and facilities, and outcome, in real time collaboration with 15 ministries.

5.3.20 Social Science

- **Korean Social Science Data Archive 한국사회과학 자료원** (<http://www.kosdda.or.kr>)

This site holds a vast range of quantitative and qualitative data and literature across diverse social science disciplines, encompassing political, economic, social, and cultural areas. Korea Foundation provides a free access to this database, but registration is needed at (<http://www.kf.or.kr/?menuno=377>)

- **Korean Social Science Data Center 한국사회과학 데이터센터** (<http://www.ksdc.re.kr>)

Consists of all kinds of statistical yearbooks published by the government, public institutions and overseas institutions. The data is classified and processed through a new data-input system developed by the KSDC.

- **Multiculture.dibrary 다문화정보** (<http://multiculture.dibrary.net>)

Developed by the National Library of Korea, this site provides links to a variety of sources on multiculturalism, including lifestyles in Korea. It also provides a list of publications not only in Korean, but also in many languages and is accessible via the National Digital Library.

- **Pokchiro 복지로** (<http://www.e-welfare.go.kr>)

Provides a searchable database which provide access to information about the national welfare services that are provided in Korea. It also provides welfare news, policies, directories, and statistics.

5.4. English Databases for Korean Studies

By Kyungmi Chun⁴

This is a selective guide. Databases are categorized by type or subject and arranged in alphabetical order in each category. The URL is provided only for free databases. The annotations in this guide have mainly been extracted from the “About” pages of the databases. Content/database providers for each database are noted in parenthesis at the end of annotation.

5.4.1 Archival Collections and Primary Sources

- ***Archive Finder***

Bringing together *ArchivesUSA* and the cumulative index to the *National Inventory of Documentary Sources in the UK and Ireland (NIDS UK/Ireland)*, *Archive Finder* is a current directory which describes over 220,000 collections of primary source material housed in thousands of repositories across the US, the UK and Ireland. (Chadwyck-Healey/ProQuest)

- ***ArchiveGrid*** <http://beta.worldcat.org/archivegrid/>

A collection of over two million archival material descriptions, including MARC records from *WorldCat* and finding aids harvested from the web, for archival collections held by thousands of libraries, museums, historical societies, and archives primarily in the United States. (OCLC)

- ***Declassified Documents Reference System***

A full-text database, with some text blacked out by the issuing agency for security reasons, of previously classified documents originating from the White House and a variety of U.S. government agencies, which have been declassified by the U.S. Federal government. Date coverage is largely post-World War II through the 1970s. (Gale)

⁴ Korean Studies Librarian, Stanford University

- ***Nineteenth Century Collections Online***

A database of primary source collections for the 19th Century, sourced from the world's preeminent libraries and archives. Includes full-text/image of books, manuscripts, photographs, articles from newspapers and periodicals, and maps. (Gale)

- ***Online Public Access (OPA)*** <http://www.archives.gov/research/search/>

Online public portal to NARA (National Archives and Records Administration) records. The OPA prototype currently provides access to nearly one million electronic records currently in the *Electronic Records Archives (ERA)*, which are not available elsewhere online. (NARA)

- ***Wilson Center Digital Archive: International History Declassified***

<http://digitalarchive.wilsoncenter.org/>

Contains newly declassified historical materials from archives around the world, much of it in translation, and including diplomatic cables, high level correspondence, meeting minutes and more. (Wilson Center)

5.4.2 Book Reviews

- ***Book Review Digest Plus***

 - ***Book Review Digest Retrospective: 1903-1982***

Book Review Digest Plus indexes book reviews of fiction and nonfiction, from 1983 to the present, and provides review excerpts and many full text reviews. *Book Review Digest Retrospective* provides book summaries, abstracts, and citations for 1903-1982. (H.W. Wilson/EBSCO)

- ***Book Review Index Online***

 - ***Book Review Index Plus Online***

Book Review Index Online indexes book reviews from journals and national general interest publications and newspapers, from 1965 to the present. *Book Review Index Plus Online* provides full-text reviews. (Gale)

5.4.3 Dictionary

- ***CJKV-English Dictionary***

Chinese-Japanese-Korean-Vietnamese/English dictionary related to East Asian cultural, political, and intellectual history. (A. Charles Muller)

5.4.4 Dissertations and Theses

- ***Dissertations & Theses A&I***

 - ***Dissertations & Theses Full Text***

Provides access to index and abstract records for U.S. and some international dissertations and masters theses, spanning from 1743 to the present day. *Dissertations & Theses A&I* provides a 24-page preview of the document, if published after 1997 in electronic PDF format. *Dissertations and Theses Full Text* provides over 1 million full-text dissertations. Although *ProQuest Dissertations & Theses* is the most comprehensive source, some schools do not use this source. (ProQuest)

5.4.5 Government Publications

- ***AccessUN***

Indexes current and retrospective United Nations documents and publications. Also provides the full text or links to the full text of more than 35,000 of these documents and publications. (NewsBank)

- ***Congressional Publications***

Provides access to historical and current Congressional information and publications (1789 to present), including selected full-text for Congressional committee prints, House and Senate documents and reports (Congressional Serial Set), hearings, and legislative histories. (Congress of the United States/ProQuest)

- ***Declassified Documents Reference System***

see Archival Collections and Primary Sources section.

- ***FDsys: Federal Digital System*** <http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys/>

A service of the U.S. Government Printing Office that provides free online access to full text publications from Congress and Federal agencies. (U.S. Government Printing Office)
- ***OECD iLibrary*** <http://www.oecd-ilibrary.org/>

The online publications library of the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) featuring its books, papers and statistics and is the gateway to OECD's analysis and data. (OECD)
- ***Official Documents of the United Nations (ODS)*** <http://documents.un.org/>

Covers all types of official United Nations documentation, beginning in 1993. Also provides access to the resolutions from 1946 onwards. It does not contain press releases, UN sales publications, the United Nations Treaty Series or information brochures issued by the Department of Public Information. (United Nations)
- ***UNBISNET: United Nations Bibliographic Information System*** <http://unbisnet.un.org/>

Online catalogue of UN documents and publications. Also contains voting records and indexes to speeches. Provides access to a growing number of full text resources. (United Nations)
- ***UNdata: A World of Information***

see Statistics and Numeric Data section.
- ***United Nations Treaty Collection*** <https://treaties.un.org/>

Contains the texts of all bilateral and multilateral treaties in their authentic language(s), along with a translation into English and French, as appropriate, for those treaties registered with the Secretariat. (United Nations)

5.4.6 Newspapers and Newswires

- ***Access World News***
Contains news collection from worldwide print and online-only newspapers, blogs, newswires, journals, broadcast transcripts and videos. (NewsBank)
- ***Alt-PressWatch***
Provides full-text articles for over 210 newspapers, magazines, and journals of the alternative and independent presses, from 1970 to current issue. (ProQuest)
- ***Alternative Press Index***
Alternative Press Index Archives
Alternative Press Index (API) is a bibliographic database, with some full text, of journal, newspaper, and magazine articles from over 300 international alternative, radical, and left periodicals. Coverage begins in 1991. Earlier coverage (1969-1990) is available in the *Alternative Press Archive*. (Alternative Press Center/EBSCO)
- ***CountryWatch***
see Statistics and Numeric Data section.
- ***Ethnic NewsWatch***
Ethnic NewsWatch: A History
An interdisciplinary full text database of the newspapers, magazines and journals of the ethnic and minority presses in America. *Ethnic NewsWatch* covers 1990-present, and *Ethnic NewsWatch: A History* spans 1959-1989. (ProQuest)
- ***Factiva***
Provides worldwide full text coverage of newspapers, magazines, trade publications, newswires, press releases, television and radio transcripts, web sites, social media, and more. (Dow Jones)
- ***LexisNexis Academic***
Provides full text access to billions of searchable documents and records from more than 45,000 legal, news and business sources for professionals in the legal, risk management, corporate, government, law enforcement, accounting, and academic markets. (LexisNexis)

- ***NK News***

An independent news, information and data provider on North Korea. Content includes news, news aggregator, intelligence analysis, travel reports, and other data. (NK News)

- ***World News Connection***

Brings news from around the world, collected and translated by and for the U.S. Government, from 1995 to 2013. The information is obtained from newspaper articles, television and radio broadcasts, online sources, conference proceedings, periodicals, and non-classified reports. (East View)

5.4.7 Statistics and Numeric Data

- ***CountryWatch***

Provides country descriptions and statistical data on 192 countries, collected from national governments, international and intergovernmental organizations, and commercial publishers. (CountryWatch.com)

- ***LABORSTA Internet*** <http://laborsta.ilo.org/>

A database on labor statistics operated by the International Labour Organization Department of Statistics. Includes statistics of employment, unemployment, hours of work, wages, labor cost, consumer price indices, occupational injuries, strikes and lockouts, household income and expenditure and international labor migration. Dates for statistic coverage vary. (International Labour Organization (ILO))

- ***OECD iLibrary***

see Government Documents section.

- ***Polling the Nations***

An online database of public opinion polls containing the full text of 600,000+ questions and responses, from 18,000+ surveys and 1,700+ polling organizations, conducted from 1986 through the present in the United States and more than 100 other countries around the world. (ORS Publishing)

- ***UNdata: A World of Information*** <http://data.un.org/>

Provides major UN databases and those of several international organizations in one single Internet environment. It currently contains 60 million records in 34 databases, covering crime, education, energy, environment, finance, food and agriculture, gender, health, HIV/AIDS, human development, indicator database, industry, information and communication technology, labor, national accounts, official development assistance, population, refugees, tourism, and trade. (United Nations)

- ***World DataBank*** <http://databank.worldbank.org/data/home.aspx>

An analysis and visualization tool that contains collections of time series data on a variety of topics. Dates of coverage begin in 1960 but vary by dataset and country. One can create one's own queries; generate tables, charts, and maps; and easily save, embed, and share them. About 50 databases are provided, including world development indicators, education statistics, gender statistics, health nutrition and population statistics, poverty and inequality database, etc. (The World Bank)

5.4.8 Multidisciplinary Sources

- ***Academic Search Premier***

Offers indexing and abstracts for more than 8,500 journals and full text for more than 4,600 journals, including nearly 3,900 peer-reviewed titles. PDF backfiles to 1975 or further are available for well over one hundred journals, and searchable cited references are provided for more than 1,000 titles. (EBSCO)

- ***Bibliography of Asian Studies***

Includes citations to Western-language periodical articles, monographs, chapters in edited volumes, conference proceedings, anthologies, and Festschriften, etc., published worldwide from 1971 to the present. Monographs published since 1992 are no longer being added to the database, but chapters in edited volumes are. (Association for Asian Studies)

- ***C19, the Nineteenth Century Index***

Indexes nineteenth-century books, periodicals, official documents, newspapers and archives. (Chadwyck-Healey/ProQuest)

- ***Humanities & Social Sciences Index Retrospective: 1907-1984***

Provides citations to 1,300,000 articles in nearly 1,100 periodicals and to over 240,000 book reviews covering humanities, social sciences, and interdisciplinary fields. (H.W. Wilson/EBSCO)

- ***Humanities Full Text***

Provides indexing of nearly 700 periodicals, dating as far back as 1910, and full-text articles from over 330 journals. Topics covered include art, classical studies, dance, film, journalism, philosophy, religion and more. (H.W. Wilson/EBSCO)

- ***IngentaConnect***

Contains citations, abstracts, and table of contents information for millions of articles from over 10,000 publications in all subject disciplines. Full text access is available for journals to which individual or institution subscribes. Access to individual articles through pay per view is also available. (Ingenta)

- ***International Bibliography of the Social Sciences (IBSS)***

Includes over two million bibliographic references to journal articles and to books, reviews and selected chapters dating back to 1951 from over 100 countries and languages. (ProQuest)

- ***JSTOR***

Includes full text of more than 2,000 academic journals, dating back to the first volume ever published, along with thousands of monographs and other materials. (ITHAKA)

- ***Left Index***

A complete guide to the diverse literature of the left, with an emphasis on political, economic, social and culturally engaged scholarship inside and outside academia. Other topics covered include the labor movement, ecology & environment, race & ethnicity, social & cultural theory, sociology, art & aesthetics, philosophy, history, education, law, and globalization. Coverage includes more than 507,000 citations and abstracts (with some full text) and spans from 1982 and earlier to present. Historically significant early Left publications written in the formative years of the Left are also covered. (EBSCO)

- ***PAIS International***

Provides citations and abstracts, covering the world's public affairs, public and social policies, international relations, and world politics through a wide variety of international sources including journal articles, books, government documents, statistical directories, grey literature, research reports, conference papers, web content, and more. It includes two databases, *PAIS International* (1972 to present) and *PAIS Archive* (1915-1976). (Public Affairs Information Service/ProQuest)

- ***Periodicals Index Online***
Periodicals Archive Online

Periodicals Index Online is a database of millions of citations for articles published in 37 key subject areas in the arts, humanities and social sciences, across more than 300 years (up to 2001). *Periodicals Archive Online* provides access to the full text of over 700 periodicals that have been indexed in *Periodicals Index Online*. (Chadwyck-Healey/ProQuest)

- ***Project MUSE***

Provides full-text access to scholarly journals from over 120 publishers in the arts and humanities and social sciences. Dates covered vary for each journal. (Johns Hopkins University Press)

- ***ProQuest Research library***

A multidisciplinary resource featuring a diversified mix of scholarly journals, trade publications, and magazines covering over 150 subject areas. Currently includes more than 6,000 titles, 75% of which are available in full text from 1971 forward. (ProQuest)

- ***Readers' Guide Full Text***
Readers' Guide Retrospective

Contains comprehensive indexing of the most popular general-interest periodicals published in the United States. *Readers' Guide Retrospective: 1890-1982* provides indexing of over three million articles from more than 550 leading magazines. *Readers' Guide Full Text* provides indexing from 1983 and full text articles (as far back as 1994 for some titles) from both the popular press and peer reviewed journals. (H.W. Wilson/EBSCO)

- ***Social Sciences Full Text***

Covers the latest concepts, trends, opinions, theories and methods from both applied and theoretical aspects of the social sciences. It includes citations and abstracts from a broad array of important international, English-language periodicals, and full-text for selected key periodicals, dating as far back as 1972. (H.W. Wilson/EBSCO)

- ***Web of Science***

Includes 7 citation indexes: *Science Citation Index Expanded*, *Social Sciences Citation Index*, *Arts & Humanities Citation Index*, *Conference Proceedings Citation Index- Science*, *Conference Proceedings Citation Index- Social Science & Humanities*, *Book Citation Index- Science*, and *Book Citation Index- Social Sciences & Humanities*. Can be searched by cited reference. Cross-database searching is enabled. (Thomson Reuters)

5.4.9 Anthropology

- ***AnthroSource***

Offers full-text resources from the American Anthropological Association journals, newsletters, bulletins and monographs. (Wiley-Blackwell)

- ***Anthropology Plus***

Combines *Anthropological Literature* from Harvard University and the *Anthropological Index*, Royal Anthropological Institute from the UK. Indexes articles, reports, commentaries, and obituaries from journals and edited works in the fields of anthropology, archaeology, and related interdisciplinary research the early 19th century to today. (EBSCO)

- ***Family & Society Studies Worldwide***

Provides indexing with abstracts for literature on the family and family-related subjects. Coverage spans from 1970 to the present. (EBSCO)

5.4.10 Architecture, Art, and Art History

- ***ARTSTOR***

Provides digital images in the arts, architecture, humanities, and sciences from international museums, photographers, libraries, scholars, photo archives, and artists and artists' estates. (Artstor)

- ***Art Full Text***

 - ***Art Index Retrospective: 1929 -1984***

Art Full Text contains full-text articles dating back to 1995 and citations with abstracts dating as far back as 1984 of art periodicals, yearbooks, and museum bulletins. Covers fine, decorative and commercial art, folk art, photography, film, and architecture. *Art Index Retrospective: 1929-1984* indexes articles covering the period 1929-1984. (H.W. Wilson Company/EBSCO)

- ***ARTbibliographies Modern (ABM)***

Provides citations and abstracts of journal articles, books, essays, exhibition catalogs, PhD dissertations, and exhibition reviews on all forms of modern and contemporary art. Entries date back as far as the late 1960s. (ProQuest)

- ***Avery Index to Architectural Periodicals***

Indexes worldwide architectural periodicals (scholarly and popular periodical literature and publications of professional associations) on architecture and design, including the history and practice of architecture, landscape architecture, city planning, historic preservation, and interior design and decoration. Dates covered are 1934 to present, with selective coverage back to 1741. (ProQuest)

5.4.11 Business

- ***ABI/INFORM Global***

Contains business and financial information, most of it in full-text, from journals, key trade publications, dissertations, conference proceedings, and market reports, from 1923 to the present. (ProQuest)

- ***Business Source Complete***

Provides citations and full text in all disciplines of business, including marketing, management, MIS, POM, accounting, finance and economics. Indexing and abstracts for the most important scholarly business journals back as far as 1886 are included. (EBSCO)

- ***Factiva*** see Newspapers and Newswires section.

- ***LexisNexis Academic*** see Newspapers and Newswires section.

5.4.12 Communication

- ***ComAbstracts***

Contains citations and abstracts of articles and books published in the professional literature in the field of communication studies, mass media and journalism. Dates coverage vary depending on individual journal title. Earliest entries are from 1915. (Communication Institute for Online Scholarship)

- ***Communication & Mass Media Complete***

Offers indexing and abstracts for journals, encyclopedias, and handbooks, dating as far back as 1915, in communication, mass media, and other related fields, with full text for over 450 journals. (EBSCO)

5.4.13 Economics

- ***EconLit***

- ***EconLit with Full Text***

EconLit indexes and abstracts journal articles, books, collective volume articles, dissertations, working papers, and book reviews, dating back to 1886. Covers all fields of economics, including capital markets, country studies, econometrics, economic forecasting, environmental economics, government regulations, labor economics, monetary theory, urban economics, and much more. *EconLit with Full Text* contains all of the indexing available in *EconLit*, plus full text for nearly 600 journals. (American Economic Association/EBSCO)

5.4.14 Education

- ***Education Full Text***
Education Index Retrospective: 1929-1983

Education Index Retrospective indexes more than 800 periodicals and yearbooks, and cites approximately 850,000 articles, including book reviews. *Education Full Text* provides full text of articles from over 350 journals as far back as 1996, in addition to indexing of over 770 periodicals dating back to 1983. Subject coverage includes adult education, continuing education, literacy standards, multicultural/ethnic education, teaching methods and much more. (H.W. Wilson/EBSCO)

- ***ERIC***

Sponsored by the U.S. Department of Education, *ERIC (Education Resource Information Center)* provides coverage of journal articles, conferences, meetings, government documents, theses, dissertations, reports, audiovisual media, bibliographies, directories, books, and monographs. Links to more than 323,000 full-text documents dating back to 1966. The *ERIC* is also publicly accessible at <http://eric.ed.gov/> and covers publications since 1995. (Institute of Education Sciences/EBSCO, ProQuest)

5.4.15 Film, Theatre, and Performing Arts

- ***Film & Television Literature Index***
Film & Television Literature Index with Full Text

Provides citations and abstracts for motion picture and television journals, magazines, books, encyclopedias, and trade publications. Subject coverage includes film & television theory, preservation & restoration, screenwriting, production, cinematography, technical aspects, and reviews. *Film & Television Literature Index with Full Text* provides full text from more than 200 journals and books. (EBSCO)

- ***Film Literature Index*** <http://webapp1.dlib.indiana.edu/fli/index.jsp>

Provides free access to approximately 700,000 citations to articles, film reviews and book reviews published from 1976 to 2001. (Film & Television Documentation Center & Indiana University Digital Library Program)

- ***International Bibliography of Theatre & Dance with Full Text***

Contains full text for more than 140 journal titles and citations for more than 60,000 journal articles, books, book articles and dissertation abstracts on all aspects of theatre and performance in 126 countries. (EBSCO)

5.4.16 Geography

- ***CountryWatch***

see Statistics and Numeric Data section.

5.4.17 History

- ***Historical Abstracts***
Historical Abstracts with Full Text

Provides indexing of historical articles from more than 1,800 journals in over 40 languages from more than 90 countries back to 1955. Also includes book citations, dissertations and theses. Coverage extends to related disciplines such as archeology, anthropology and sociology. *Historical Abstracts with Full Text* provides access to the full text of more than 349 journals and more than 120 books. (ABC-CLIO/EBSCO)

5.4.18 Language, Linguistics, and Literature

- ***Linguistics and Language Behavior Abstracts (LLBA)***

Provides abstracts of journal articles and citations to book reviews drawn from over 1,500 serials publications, and also provides abstracts of books, book chapters, and dissertations, covering all aspects of the study of language including phonetics, phonology, morphology, syntax and semantics. (ProQuest)

- ***MLA International Bibliography***

Indexes journal articles, series, monographs, dissertations, bibliographies, proceedings and other materials, dating back to the 1920s, on literature, language and linguistics, folklore, literary theory & criticism, dramatic arts, historical aspects of printing and publishing, rhetoric and composition and the teaching of language and literature. (Modern Language Association/EBSCO)

5.4.19 Music

- ***International Index to Music Periodicals***

Provides indexing and abstracts for several hundred international music periodicals from over 20 countries, covering both scholarly and popular periodicals. Provides both current and retrospective coverage, with indexing back to 1874. (ProQuest)

- ***Music Index***

Contains cover-to-cover indexing and abstracts of articles about music, musicians, and the music industry for more than 475 periodicals, as well as book reviews, obituaries, news, and selective coverage for more than 230 periodicals from 1970 to present. (EBSCO)

- ***RILM Abstracts of Music Literature***

A comprehensive world music bibliography drawn from collections of essays, conference proceedings, critical editions of music, digital media, dissertations, journal articles, monographs, online resources, reference materials, reviews, technical drawings of instruments, and sound recordings and motion pictures that present the results of scholarly research of fieldwork from all over the world. Coverage spans 1967 to the present. (International RILM (Répertoire International de Littérature Musicale)/EBSCO)

5.4.20 Philosophy

- ***The Philosopher's Index***

Covering scholarly research in all major areas of philosophy, this Index contains citations for journal articles and books drawn from over 1600 journals, originating from 139 countries in 37 languages. The literature coverage dates back to 1940 and includes print and electronic journals, books, anthologies, contributions to anthologies, and book reviews. (Philosophers Information Center/ProQuest, EBSCO, OVID)

5.4.21 Political Science

- ***CountryWatch***

see Statistics and Numeric Data section.

- ***Worldwide Political Science Abstracts***

Provides abstracts and indexing of the international literature, from 1975 to present, of political science and international relations, along with complementary fields, including international law and public administration/policy. Provides abstracts of journal articles and citations to book reviews drawn from over 1,500+ serials publications and also provides abstracts of books, book chapters, dissertations and working papers. (ProQuest)

5.4.22 Psychology

- ***PsycINFO***
PsycARTICLES

PsycINFO contains abstracts from more than 2,500 journals published by many different publishers in behavioral science and related fields ranging from education, to nursing, to business, to neuroscience, covering from as early as 1894. *PsycARTICLES* offers access to the full text of more than 100 journals. (American Psychological Association (APA))

5.4.23 Religion

- ***ATLA Religion Database with ATLASerials***

Indexes journal articles, book reviews, and collections of essays in all fields of religion and provides full-text of articles and book reviews in *ATLASerials*. (American Theological Library Association/EBSCO)

- ***Digital Dictionary of Buddhism 電子佛教辭典***

A compilation of Chinese logograph-based terms, texts, temples, schools, persons, etc. found in Buddhist canonical sources. (A. Charles Muller)

5.4.24 Social Work

- ***Family & Society Studies Worldwide***

see Anthropology section.

- ***Social Services Abstracts***

Provides indexing and abstracts for journal articles and dissertations and citations to book reviews, focused on social work, human services and related areas, including social welfare, social policy and community development, from 1979. (ProQuest)

5.4.25 Sociology

- ***LGBT Life***

- ***LGBT Life with Full Text***

LGBT Life contains indexing and abstracts for hundreds of LGBT (Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual and Transgender)-specific core periodicals, books and reference works, and data mined from priority periodicals and thousands of select titles. *LGBT Life with Full Text* contains all of the content available in *LGBT Life* as well as full text for more than 120 of the most important and historically significant LGBT journals, magazines and regional newspapers, as well as more than 150 full-text monographs/books. (EBSCO)

- ***Sociological Abstracts***

Provides abstracts of journal articles, books, book chapters, dissertations, conference papers, and citations to book reviews drawn from over 1,800+ serials publications in the social and behavioral sciences, dating back to 1952. (ProQuest)

5.4.26 Women's and Gender Studies

- ***Contemporary Women's Issues***

Provides full-text access to articles on women in over 190 countries. Includes relevant content from mainstream periodicals, "gray" literature, and the alternative press. (Gale)

- ***GenderWatch***

Provides citations and full text of journals, magazines, newspapers, newsletters, regional publications, books and NGO, government and special reports, dating from 1970 to the present, on the topics related to gay, lesbian, bisexual, and transgender (GLBT) studies; family studies; gender studies, and women's studies. (ProQuest)

- ***The Gerritsen collection of Aletta H. Jacobs***

Contains indexing with citations and full images of books, pamphlets and periodicals reflecting the evolution of a feminist consciousness and the movement for women's rights. Dates covered are 1543-1945. (Chadwyck-Healey/ProQuest)

- ***Women's Studies International***

Indexes journals, newspapers, newsletters, bulletins, books, book chapters, proceedings, reports, theses, dissertations, NGO studies, Web sites & Web documents, and grey literature from throughout the world, spanning from 1972 and earlier to present. (EBSCO)

5.5. Technology and Library Services

By Hyoungbae Lee⁵

5.5.1 Korean IME (Input Method Editor)

Under the environment of Windows XP or earlier versions, installing and adding the Korean language font and input method used to be quite a hassle. Since Microsoft officially terminated its technical support of Windows XP as of April 8, 2014, explicating the hassle in this manual will be irrelevant. In addition, the setup for Korean input is subtly different depending on the version of Windows. Therefore instead of showing the setup process of a specific version of Windows, I will explain how to find and add the Korean language component rather in a general way, so that users can find assistance regardless of their Windows versions. In order to add Korean language, one needs to open the Control Panel, which can be found in the Windows Menu. The Control Panel can be opened by pressing Windows key (⊞) and C key together. In Windows 8, the key combination is different: Windows key (⊞) and X key first, then P key opens the pop-up menu. Once the control panel is opened, there is a link to the setting for the language and region. Clicking the link will lead to the option menu for languages, where display and input methods of languages can be added or deleted. Unless the operating system is Windows XP or earlier, the installation disk is not required. Make sure that you add both display and input methods in the option. The process is the same for all other languages, if you add more than one language.

Once the Korean IME is added, the system will now have more than one input language, and the default language is the language of the operating system (English in most cases). For example, if you have English Windows, your default input language is English and you need to switch to Korean Input Method whenever you want to type Han'gŭl and vice versa. Switching to a different language input method can be done by clicking the language bar at the bottom of the screen or pressing Left Alt Key and Left Shift Key together (Windows Key and Space in Windows 8). Having the Korean IME on top will change your keyboard layout, reserving the Right Alt Key and Right CTRL Key for

⁵ Korean Studies Librarian, East Asian Library and the Gest Collection, Princeton University

different purposes: the Right Alt Key toggles between alphabet and Han'gŭl input, and the Right CTRL Key converts Han'gŭl to Hancha or vice versa.

The Right CTRL Key for Hancha conversion is useful because Korean specialists often encounter the need to convert Han'gŭl to Hancha and vice versa in cataloging, searching, word-processing, etc. Unless the Right CTRL Key is pressed within an application containing a built-in Korean dictionary, conversion is always character by character and users have to select relevant characters out of many homophonic variants: for example, when one wants to convert 대한민국 to 大韓民國 in web browsers or cataloging software, one has to type 대 and select 大, then type 한 and select 韓, and so forth. If you type more than one character at once, you cannot convert all the characters to Hancha. On the other hand, word processing software such as Microsoft Word has a built-in Korean dictionary which enables users to convert Han'gŭl word by word. Within supported applications, one can type 대한민국 as a word and press Right CTRL to convert the word to the corresponding Hancha 大韓民國 automatically. This conversion based on a dictionary is useful for finding corresponding Han'gŭl scripts when characters have more than one reading or infrequent and difficult characters are used. For example, 陝 has two variations of reading, that is, *hap* and *hyŏp*, and it must be read as *hap* in the geographical name 陝川 *Hapch'ŏn*. Microsoft Word, the dictionary of which includes 陝川, never fails to convert this name to 합천, whereas one cannot expect the same result in OCLC. In fact, it is not difficult to find bibliographic records that read 陝川 as 협천, which is wrong. Using applications with a built-in Korean dictionary may help reduce such errors.

5.5.2 Internet Browsers

According to the statistics provided by StatCounter⁶, Internet Explorer was used by more than half of the website visitors around the world five years ago, while Chrome was used only by 6.04%. As of January 2014, Chrome is the leader occupying 43.67% and is followed by Internet Explorer (22.85%) and Firefox (18.90%). Although the ratio is not evenly distributed, it is evident online service providers will want to have their website compatible at least with these three browsers to accommodate as many visitors as possible.

⁶ Online web traffic analysis tool (<http://www.statcounter.com>)

<Distribution of web browsers (World)>

	Chrome	Internet Explorer	FireFox
2014 JAN	43.67%	22.85%	18.90%
2010 JAN	6.04%	55.25%	31.64%

However, this is not the case with the Internet environment in South Korea. 97 out of 100 people were using Internet Explorer five years ago, and as of January 2014, the Internet Explorer is still the most prevalent web browser in South Korea. This means that Korean web developers almost never needed to pay attention to the compatibility issue five years ago, and as a result, almost all the online resources in South Korea required Internet Explorer.

<Distribution of web browsers (South Korea)>

	Chrome	Internet Explorer	FireFox
2014 JAN	17.76%	78.83%	1.45%
2010 JAN	0.77%	97.00%	1.66%

Though the percentage of Chrome use rose to 17.76% from 0.77% in 2014 statistics, Internet Explorer has had the status of a de facto standard browser in South Korea. Commercial database providers have recently started responding to the diversification of web browsers taking place in South Korea as well, but still Internet Explorer is the recommended web browser when you try to access to Korean online resources, especially those provided by the government or in public domain.

5.5.3 Unicode, Han'gŭl, and Hancha

According to the introduction to Unicode at www.unicode.org, "Unicode provides a unique number for every character, no matter what the platform, no matter what the program, no matter what the language." In other words, users can see any character set on their computer screen, as long as the character set is included in Unicode and the program supports Unicode. Unicode is important for Korean specialists because they have to deal with enormous amounts of information in Han'gŭl and Korean romanization on a daily

basis, and cannot read or write on their computer without Unicode support. Since recent operating systems and applications mostly support CJK Unicode, one may take it for granted, but when it comes to cataloging and searching, everything is not quite so straightforward. It is crucial to know the limitations of the current Unicode application to cataloging and searching functionality in the library.

While Unicode 5.2, which came out in 2009, includes 옛 한글, it is not relevant to deal with it in this manual. The most common set of Han'gŭl is 11,172 characters that are from 가 (AC00) to 흥 (D7A3), which are all the possible combinations of three elements in a Han'gŭl syllable. Having all these 11,172 characters in Windows does not necessarily mean that one can use the same number of characters in bibliographic records, because the valid characters are limited by the MARC-8 character set, which is a much smaller set than the set of all the possible Han'gŭl characters. A large number of unused characters in real texts such as 백 or 흥, for example, are not usable in the library world, which is understandable, but some legitimate characters are also excluded, which is problematic. For example, 뱀 as in 침을 뱀다 'to spit' and 웹⁷ as in 웹사이트 'website' are some of the examples that are legitimate in Korean but are not usable in bibliographic records. Any book containing 뱀 or 웹 in its title cannot be retrieved by searching in Han'gŭl, simply because the record cannot include the invalid characters in the first place. This problem need and probably will be solved in the long run as the Unicode support evolves, but as of 2014, Korean specialists are supposed to be aware of this problem for searching and cataloging.

Another peculiarity in Korean Unicode (unlike in Chinese or Japanese) is related to a group of Chinese characters that have more than one pronunciation, such as 惡 (악, 오) and 易 (역, 이), or those that have more than one pronunciation because of phonological rules, such as 女 (녀, 여) and 利 (리, 이). For example, 惡 has two pronunciations depending on its meaning, which is also the case with Chinese and Japanese, but the conversion process is different in Korean in that two representations in Han'gŭl have separate Unicode mapping: 역 is mapped to C5ED and 易 converted from 역 is mapped to 6613, while 이 is mapped to C774 and 易 converted from 이 is mapped to F9E0. This means that the first 易 and the second 易 are treated as two different characters by computers even though they look the same in appearance. To make things worse, only the first 易, which is mapped to 6613, is valid in the MARC-8 character set. If one tries to

⁷ While 뱀 is used in native Korean words, 웹 does not exist in native Korean words and is used only in borrowed words or names of Western origin as in 웹사이트 or 웹스터.

input 간이 ‘easiness’ and then convert it to corresponding Hancha 簡易, cataloging system will indicate the 易 is an invalid character, and the searching system will yield zero result because of the character. Instead, one has to type and convert 역 to 易, which is counterintuitive, in order to obtain satisfactory results for cataloging and searching. On the other hand, 利, pronounced 리 in 有利 and 이 in 利益, has two pronunciations depending on its location within a word, which is not the case with Chinese and Japanese. Though the origin of the two pronunciations is different, 利 has the same problem in MARC-8 as 易, and must be always typed as 리 and converted to 利 in order to be validated in cataloging and searching system. 樂, one of the most often used characters, represents the most complicated case, because the character not only has three different pronunciations depending on its meaning (악 ‘music’, 락 ‘happy’, 요 ‘to like’), but also has two different pronunciations for 락 ‘happy’ depending on its location (락, 낙), yielding four different pronunciations and accordingly four different code variations for seemingly one character 樂. Only one variation (樂 from 악) is valid in cataloging and searching. This situation is quite confusing both to librarians and users, but Korean specialists need to know about this Unicode problem, in order not to be misled by the Chinese characters which are the same in appearance but different in the background. For example, if you type and convert 구급간이방 to 救急簡易方 cataloging system will always refuse to save the Hancha due to the invalid 易, and searching system will always fail to find the title. You need to type 구급간역방, which is the wrong reading and sounds awkward, to convert it to the corresponding Hancha. These examples are not isolated cases but there are currently a total of 267 Chinese characters in Unicode that have the same issue of multiple pronunciations with multiple mappings. The following table shows some of frequently used characters involving this problem.

Hancha	Pronunciation	MARC-8 Valid	MARC-8 Invalid
李	이 or 리 depending on <i>location</i>	674E (李 from 리)	F9E1 (李 from 이)
老	노 or 로 depending on <i>location</i>	8001 (老 from 로)	F934 (老 from 노)
不	불 or 부 depending on <i>location</i>	4E0D (不 from 부)	F967 (不 from 불)
金	금 or 김 depending on <i>meaning</i>	91D1 (金 from 김)	F90A (金 from 금)

Hancha	Pronunciation	MARC-8 Valid	MARC-8 Invalid
車	차 or 거 depending on <i>meaning</i>	8ECA (車 from 차)	F902 (車 from 거)
北	북 or 배 depending on <i>meaning</i>	5317 (북 from 북)	F963 (北 from 배)
樂	악, 락 or 요 depending on <i>meaning</i> 락 or 낙 depending on <i>location</i>	6A02 (樂 from 악)	F914 (樂 from 낙) F95C (樂 from 락) F9BF (樂 from 요)
率	솔 or 률 depending on <i>meaning</i> 률 or 율 depending on <i>location</i>	7387 (率 from 솔)	F961 (率 from 률) F9DB (率 from 율)

The Korean family name 曹 (조 / *Cho*) also represents a similar case, in that there are two variants mapped separately, although the character itself has only one pronunciation. 曹 (66FA) and 曹 (66F9) are the same characters with a difference by one stroke and pronounced only as Cho in Korean: the former is used for Korean surname 조 as in 南冥 曹植 *Nammyōng Cho Sik*, and the latter used for all other occasions as in 法曹人 *pōpchoin* and 曹溪宗 *Chogyejong*. However, the latter character is valid in MARC-8, while the former is not. As a result, 曹植 (*Cho Sik*), the Korean Neo-Confucian scholar, appears as [Cho]植 in many bibliographic records, while 曹植 (*Cao Zhi*), the Chinese poet and son of the famous 曹操 (*Cao Cao*), appears correctly without a problem. Unlike the other cases mentioned above, both 曹 and 曹 are converted from the same Han'gŭl 조, and users only need to avoid using the correct form of Korean surname 曹 in searching and cataloging.

Best practice:

Always type Han'gŭl in the column of the MARC-8 Valid in the table above to convert corresponding Hancha regardless of the irrelevant pronunciation. For example, type 악 and 원 for 樂園 instead of 낙원, type 패 and 북 for 敗北 instead of 패배, type 비 and 솔 for 比率 instead of 비율, etc. in order to obtain satisfactory results in cataloging and searching. As mentioned above, there are 267 characters that have the same issue. If you want to check if a character is valid or not, the Unicode consortium provides a handy tool for validation of MARC-8 characters on its website: <http://www.unicode.org/charts/unihan.html>.

5.5.4 Ayn, Alif, and Apostrophe

Ayn and Alif were originally used for Arabic romanization, and had been employed in Korean romanization as well until the 2009 revision of ALA-LC Romanization Table replaced them with the apostrophe. This change did not generate much impact on searching practice at that time. As of 2014, however, when many libraries have implemented a so-called next generation OPAC system, the replacement may cause significant problems unless properly addressed locally at the institution level. In Voyager OPAC, which is one of the older OPAC systems, ayn, alif, and apostrophe are all ignored in searching, yielding consistent search results whether you include them or not in a search string. For example, a keyword search with *taejo*, *T'aejo*, or *T'aejo* brings all the records that include *T'aejo*, which was created or converted after the 2009 revision, or *T'aejo*, which was created before the 2009 revision and remained unconverted, because all these instances are treated as if they are *taejo* in Voyager. In addition, these words were never indexed as *aejo*. In Primo, one of next-generation OPAC systems, on the other hand, ayn and alif are still ignored, but apostrophe is not. This change of practice dealing with apostrophe is immense improvement for European languages that used to suffer problems in searching for words like *l'amour*, *d'amore*, etc., while the same change of practice causes chaos in searching with Korean romanization. In Primo, 太祖 *T'aejo* is never indexed as *taejo*, and keyword search with *taejo* does not retrieve *T'aejo* anymore, contrary to the same search in Voyager. While *T'aejo* is being correctly indexed as such, it is also incorrectly indexed as *aejo* just as French *l'amour* is also indexed as *amour*, which was not the case with Voyager.

Best practice: the problem related with ayn, alif, and apostrophe implies two things: 1) in a next-generation OPAC environment, users must include the apostrophe correctly to retrieve relevant records; 2) If the local OPAC still contains old records including ayn and alif, users must try a second search without the apostrophe to retrieve those old records.

5.5.5 Macros

A macro, which stands for macro-instruction, is defined as “an instruction written so as to be equivalent to a chosen set of several instructions” in the Oxford English Dictionary. In other words, a macro is a new simpler instruction that replaces a set of multiple instructions when those instructions occur in pattern. A macro is useful when the same pattern of output sequence takes place repeatedly in a workflow. For example, Korean

romanization utilizes a superscript symbol called brève as in \ddot{o} and \ddot{u} to represent certain vowels which cannot be represented by Roman alphabet alone. Inserting brève requires searching for relevant commands and several mouse clicks, and the sequence of these steps is always identical within one application. Therefore, this sequence can be mapped into one command making the job much simpler by making a macro that automatically identifies the current application and sends a set of instructions to enter appropriate characters and brève according to the environment of the application in the question. This is a simple type of macro, and the more useful macros can be, the more time-and-energy consuming instructions they may embrace. For example, assume that you have 100 volumes, all the item records of which need to be modified with the location and the lending period. Without a macro, you have to change the two elements and save the record back to the database for each volume, for which it will take you at least 300 clicks and as much time. With a relevant macro, this task can be done by just a couple of clicks saving time and labor significantly. More complicated tasks can be defined in terms of macros, as long as one can define the pattern of a task - whether the pattern is textual or procedural.

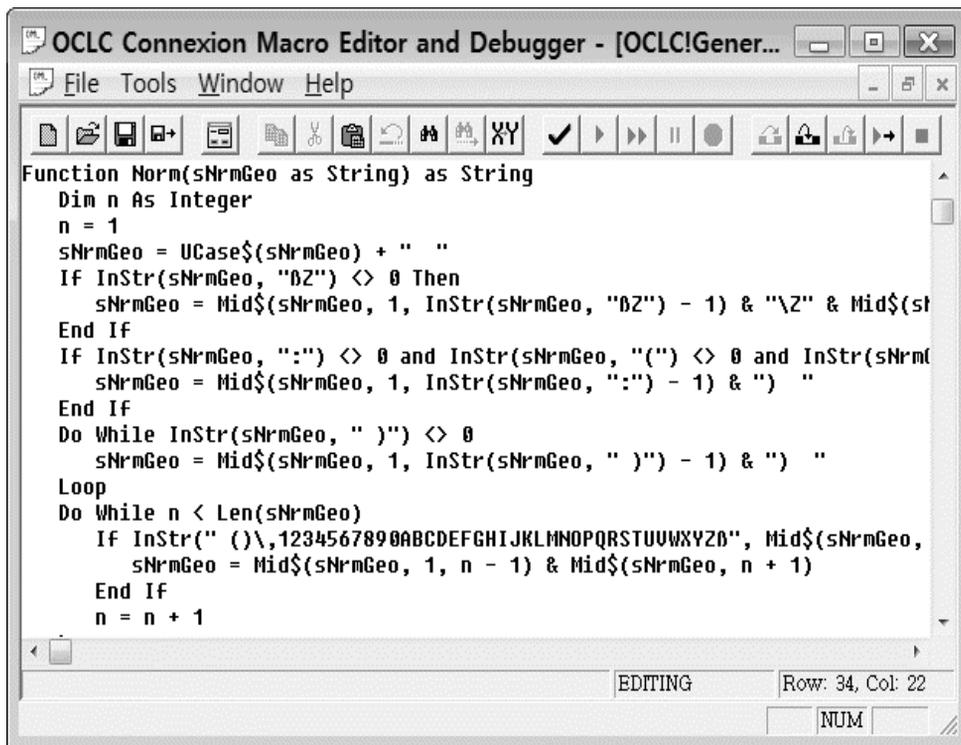
Users need to train themselves in macro languages or macro software in order to produce macros appropriate for their own uses, and macro language in each application is different. Some applications have embedded macros that are optimized for that specific application. Other macros are generic ones and can be used in combination with any other procedure. In this manual, three different types of macro applications will be discussed: 1) OCLC Macro Language, 2) Macro Express 3, and 3) AutoIt.

1) OCLC Macro Language (OML henceforth) is an example of embedded macro. The online lesson provided by Joel Hahn is a good start point for beginners. The lesson is available at <http://www.hahnlibrary.net/libraries/oml/lessons/index.html>, which is sponsored and endorsed by OCLC Online Computer Library Center, Inc. While OML is working only within the OCLC Connexion Client software, it can provide more opportunities for OCLC Connexion than any other generic macro languages, since OML has the direct access to each field in bibliographic records. Joel Hahn also created many useful macros using OML and made them available at <http://www.hahnlibrary.net/libraries/oml/connex.html>. To introduce two of them:

- AlifAyn2Apostrophe: a macro to convert all the instances of alif or ayn often found in Korean bibliographic records into apostrophe observing the current ALA-LC Korean romanization Table.
- Korean2Latin: a macro to create the parallel field for a field containing Han'gŭl and link them. This macro must be used with a caveat: as the author indicated,

this macro is “a first draft at best,” and provides only mechanical transliteration. It means that the macro has many limitations and especially that it does not handle cases where romanization involves anomalies or exceptions. Users must be acquainted with ALA-LC Korean romanization table well enough to work on their own before they use this macro.

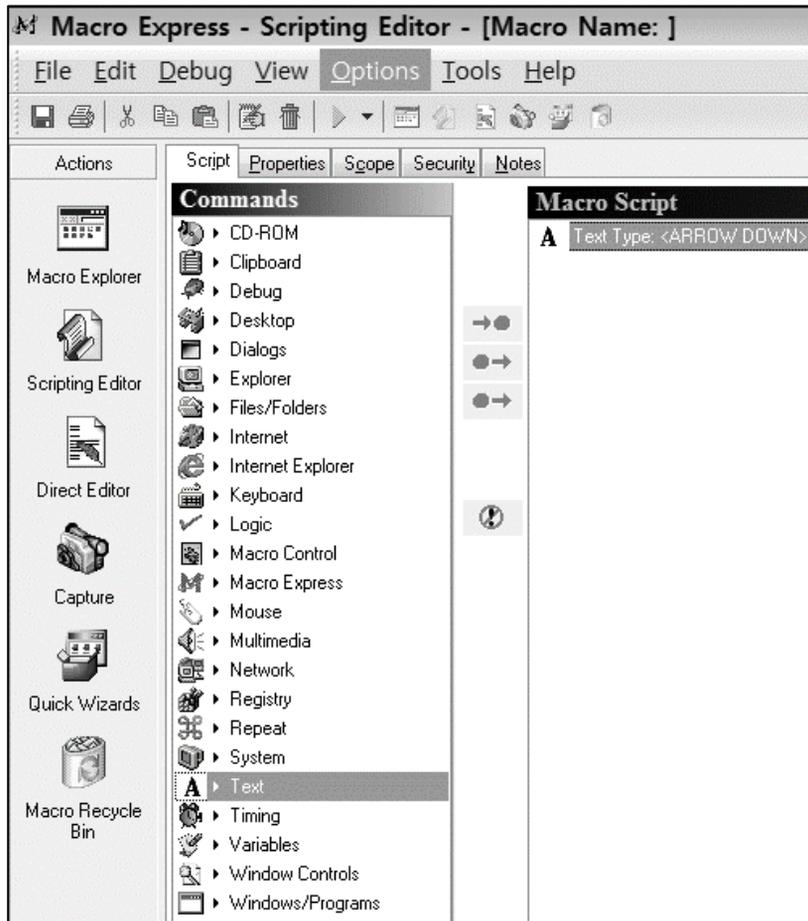
Consult the following webpage made by Joel Hahn to learn how to load OML into user’s own workstation: <http://www.hahnlibrary.net/libraries/oml/webmacros.html>.



<OCLC Macro Editor>

- 2) Macro Express 3 (ME3 henceforth) is a commercial macro application for Windows that many libraries are already using for office automation. This macro can help increase productivity in many ways because it is a generic macro. In other words, you can use it anywhere within your operating system. One of the strengths is that ME3 provides an easy GUI environment, and therefore, users are not required to know about the script language working in the background. This helps users unfamiliar with programming languages learn and use macros easily. While good for beginners, ME3 has a drawback for CJK users in that it does not support

Unicode. ME3 can help copy-and-paste Han'gŭl strings or brève one by one, but cannot store those strings as variables, which is one of the major obstacles for building macros for libraries. As a result, users have to struggle to find a workaround solution in order to tackle tasks involving Unicode strings. The tutorial for ME3 by the manufacturer is available at: <http://www.macros.com/tutorial/ME3Tutorial.htm>.



<GUI environment of Macro Express 3>

- 3) AutoIt is a free yet powerful closed source macro application for Microsoft Windows. After its initial release in 1999, it has evolved into a much more powerful tool than other popular freeware solutions. The most current version (as of March 2014) is called AutoIt3 (AI3 henceforth) and is available for free download at the official website: <http://www.autoitscript.com/site/autoit/>. AI3 is also a generic application like ME3, but requires knowledge in script writing because it does not provide a GUI environment like

ME3. On the other hand, AI3 fully supports Unicode, thus causing no headache for the use of CJK strings. This allows users to compile a script into a stand-alone executable program so that the script may be used anywhere, even without the installation of AI3. Using an AI3 macro, I have created a sample application to help typing Korean romanization, which can be downloaded at <http://www.princeton.edu/~hyoungl/utills>.

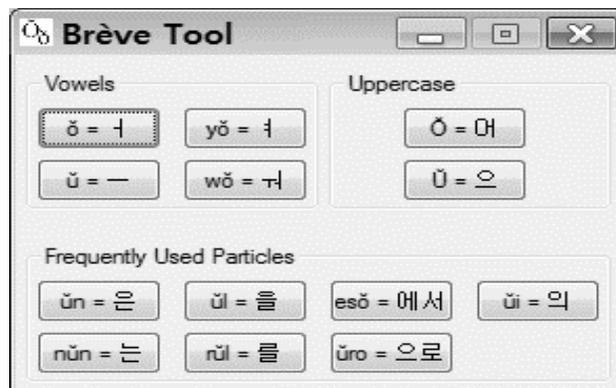
```

76
77 While 1
78     $Msg = GUIGetMsg()
79     Opt("WinTitleMatchMode", 2)
80     ;~ ClipPut("")
81     Select
82     |
83     | Case $Msg = $GUI_EVENT_CLOSE
84     |     Exit
85     |
86     | Case $Msg = $Butt1 ;small o breve
87     |     $OValue = ClipGet()
88     |     sleep(50)
89     |     Send ("!{TAB}")
90     |     If WinActive ("OCLC Connexion - [") Then
91     |     ClipPut("ö")
92     |     Else
93     |     ;~ HLight()
94     |     ClipPut("ø")
95     |     EndIf
96     |     Sleep(50)
97     |     Send ("^v")
98     |     ClipPut($OValue)

```

li=61 co=74 INS (CR+LF)

<AutoIt3 Script Editor>



<Sample application created with AutoIt3 macro>

4) Combination of macros

While there are many macro solutions available, whether free or commercial, there is simply no one-fits-all macro for all needs. Some macros are embedded and more specialized in specific applications, and others are generic and can handle a broader range of tasks across applications. Some macros fully support Unicode, and others don't. Some macros are easy to learn but rather limited, and others are difficult to learn but more powerful. This is why using multiple macro solutions yields more efficiency depending on one's need. For example, if you want to make a stand alone searching utility that collects bibliographic information in Han'gŭl from a record in OCLC, you need to use OML macro that can access directly to the field level in order to retrieve the necessary information in raw data format. Then you can use AutoIt3 in order to create a program that converts the retrieved raw data into proper Han'gŭl text. This kind of task cannot be performed by one of the macros without the other.

5.6. Korean Studies Electronic Resources: Purchase and Subscription through Group Collaboration

By Miree Ku⁸

5.6.1 Introduction

The acquisition of electronic resources represents an increasingly important component of library collection development; but electronic resources (or e-resources) come with more complexity in license agreements and pricing terms than other library materials. It is the job of the librarian to negotiate with vendors for the best possible deal on e-resources for the library.

Korean collections endeavor to provide a wide array of e-resources in order to better serve their users. Much effort has been made by Korean Studies librarians in North America to find reasonable ways to access a wide array of Korean Studies e-resources but keep costs at a minimum. Since 2004, group collaboration on purchasing and licensing of e-resources has helped to achieve this goal.

This section covers the brief history and current status of purchasing and subscribing to Korean Studies e-resources as well as the grant programs to support eligible libraries from outside of Korea access to these e-resources.

5.6.2 History⁹ and Current Status of Purchasing/Subscribing to Korean Studies E-Resources

The group purchase of CD-ROM versions of databases related to Korean studies was first attempted in 1998 by the University of California, but it failed due to technical issues: the English-language-based Windows 98 didn't operate with any of the Korean-language-based CD-ROMs. In 2003, the efforts of Korean Studies librarians came to fruition in providing access to commercial electronic Korean resources through collaborative purchase and/or subscription.

⁸ Korean Studies Librarian, International & Area Studies, Perkins Library , Duke University

⁹ Chang, Jaeyong, and Mikyung Kang. "Group Purchasing of Online Korean Databases." *Journal of East Asian Libraries* 140 (Oct. 2006): 80-87.

1. The First Group Negotiation in 2003

- Initiated by two University of California campuses, the Consortial Working Group for Korean Online Databases (“The Working Group” hereafter) was formed with 4 members; Jaeyong Chang (UC Berkeley), Mikyung Kang (UCLA), Yunah Sung (Univ.of Michigan), and Hee-sook Shin (Columbia Univ.).
- After having a 6-month free trial of selected databases, the Working Group began negotiating with the vendors; database prices were set differently for participating libraries depending on whether they had a full-time Korean Studies librarian.
- The following 5 databases from 3 vendors were negotiated at a fixed price for 5 years (January 2004 to December 2008).

Table 1. Korean Databases for the Group Negotiation in 2003

Databases	Company (Vendor)	Number of Participating Institutions in 2004
EncyKorea	DongBang	7
Korea A2Z	DongBang	9
DBpia	Nurimedia	6
KRpia	Nurimedia	6
KISS	Korean Studies Information	9

- The number of participating institutions has increased: 29 institutions for Nurimedia databases, 32 institutions for Korean Studies Information databases, and 11 for DongBang databases in 2008.
- These e-resources were licensed between participating libraries and vendors using a standard license agreement, a revised version of UC system’s standard license format prepared by Mikyung Kang, Korean Studies Librarian at UCLA. Individual libraries finalized and signed agreements for each database selected.
- The Working Group’s role was to select databases, request the trial and technical requirements, communicate and negotiate with vendors about price structure and term of a contract, and prepare drafts of standard license agreements on behalf of participating libraries.
- Each participating library’s responsibility was to pay the annual subscription cost to each vendor and to report and communicate any technical issues to each vendor directly.

2. The Second Group Negotiation in 2005

- Given the success of the first group negotiation in 2003, the second group negotiation for the remaining five databases followed the same procedures as the first group negotiation.
- The following 5 databases from 3 vendors were negotiated at a fixed price for 5 years (July 2005 to June 2010).

Table 2. Korean Databases for the Group Negotiation in 2005

Database	Company (Vendor)	Number of Participating Institutions
Kdatabase	Korea Contents Lab	9
KPjournal	Korea Contents Lab	0
Choson Ilbo Archive	Korean Studies Information	12
Ilche sidae munhwa yujök charyo chosa	Zininzin	5
Zininzin palgul pogosö database	Zininzin	0

3. The Third Group Negotiation in 2008

- The Task Force on Korean Online Database Negotiation (“The Task Force” hereafter) was formed in April, 2008, in order to make a group negotiation with e-Korean Studies (“EKS” hereafter), which was launched as an integrated Korean database service for libraries from outside of Korea in 2008.
- EKS was launched as a consortium of 6 major database companies in 2008; Korean Studies Information (KIS), Nurimedia, Dongbang Media, Korea Contents Lab, Zininzin, and LawnB
- The Task Force consisted of 5 members; Helen Kim (Univ. of British Columbia), Chanung Park (Ohio Univ.), Hee-sook Shin (Columbia Univ.), Jaeyong Chang (UC Berkeley), and Hana Kim (Univ. of Toronto).
- e-Korean Studies (EKS) included the following 11 databases from 6 vendors;
 - KISS (Korean Studies Information)
 - KSI e-book (Korean Studies Information)

- DBpia (Nurimedia)
 - KRpia (Nurimedia)
 - Digital Culture Art Course (DongBang Media)
 - KoreaA2Z (DongBang Media)
 - Kdatabase (Korea Contents Lab)
 - KPjournal (Korea Contents Lab)
 - Korean History & Culture Research Database (Zininzin)
 - History Culture Series (Zininzin)
 - LawnB's Legal Information Service (LawnB)
- The trial service started from May, 2008 through October 31, 2008, but was later extended until March 31, 2009.
 - The Task Force not only conducted a survey of the availability of affordable pricing, database preference, and e-resource related opinions, but also put a great deal of effort into conducting effective negotiations for the best price deal with EKS.
 - At the same time, the Task Force succeeded in persuading the Korea Foundation to support overseas Korean collections in obtaining Korean Studies e-resources. As a result, the participating institutions received a grant from the Korea Foundation, which was 40% of the total subscription price, but institutions belonging to Group A (national libraries) were excluded from the grant program.
 - A total of 29 institutions from 3 countries took advantage of this group negotiation and grant program. The total amount of the grant supported by the Korea Foundation was \$117,000.
 - The initial annual subscription price for 11 databases was \$68,000. However, thanks to incredible efforts by the Task Force, the annual subscription price for five categorized groups were finalized for one year (January 2009 to December 2009)¹⁰ as follows:

¹⁰ Due to many requests from institutions belonging to Groups D and E, the trial service period and the dates for KF's application submission and notification have been extended. Therefore, the terms of each contract were somewhat different, depending on each institution.

Table 3. Group Subscription Prices in 2009

Group	Subscription Cost	Cost sharing (KF 40%)	Cost sharing (University 60%)	Number of Participating Institutions
A	\$17,400	N/A	\$17,400	0
B	\$14,500	\$5,800	\$8,700	12
C	\$11,600	\$4,640	\$6,960	1
D	\$8,700	\$3,480	\$5,220	4
E	\$5,800	\$2,320	\$3,480	12

*Group A: National libraries

*Group B: Member institutions of the Korean Collections Consortium of North America (KCCNA)

*Group C: Institutions with full-time Korean Librarian, but not a member of KCCNA

*Group D: Institutions with part-time Korean Librarian

*Group E: Institutions with East Asian Librarian

4. The Fourth Group Negotiation in 2010

- EKS was launched as a consortium of 6 major database companies in 2008. However, Nurimedia decided to separate from EKS in 2009, and as a result, the Task Force needed to work on group negotiation with EKS and Nurimedia.
- The new Task Force on Korean Studies e-resources¹¹ was formed in October 1, 2009, with 4 members; Mikyung Kang (Harvard Univ.), Miree Ku (Duke Univ.), Sun-Yoon Lee (Univ. of Southern California), and Yunah Sung (Univ. of Michigan).
- The Task Force members discussed a new strategy of negotiations putting emphasis on
 - Evaluating the group classification of 2009
 - Evaluating e-resources that were included in group negotiations the previous year
 - Considering small Korean collections that had a Korean Studies librarian
 - Considering East Asian collections without a Korean studies librarian

¹¹ The former name in 2008 was “the Task Force on Korean Online Database Negotiation.”

- Considering Korean studies e-resources that had not been included for group negotiation until then
- Checking whether or not the Korea Foundation’s grant program would continue
- After two months of in-depth discussion via email and phone¹², the Task Force members flew to Korea at their own expense in part¹³ and had meetings with database vendors and the Korea Foundation from December 8 to 11 in Seoul. Without mutual trust and effective communications, the group negotiation could not have produced a successful outcome.
- The new prices for EKS (9 databases) and Nurimedia (2 databases) were finalized for 4 groups for 3 years (March 2010 to February 2013) with a 3% annual increase.¹⁴

Table 4. Group Subscription Prices in 2010

Library Group	EKS Price ¹⁵	Nurimedia ¹⁶ Price	Total
NL	\$11,400	\$8,826	\$20,226
A	\$11,400	\$6,771	\$18,171
B	\$6,840	\$5,307	\$12,147
C	\$4,560	\$3,820	\$8,380

¹² The TF members created a google group to share and archive its in-depth discussion among members. From October 2009 to March 2010, the members exchanged about 1,700 emails regarding the group negotiation on e-resources, and archived the analyses of the contents, statistics, and prices of each database. Those efforts lead to a positive outcome when the members had meetings with vendors in Korea.

¹³ Only one member of the Task Force could get travel support from her institution, and another member didn’t get any support. Two other members received the round-trip airfare only.

¹⁴ The Korea Foundation supported up to 50% of the total subscription fee, not to exceed \$5,000 per institution.

¹⁵ EKS’s first offer was \$16,675 (Group A), \$10,005 (Group B), and \$6,670 (Group C), which was a 15% increase from the last year’s price. At this point, Nurimedia’s databases were included in EKS. The Task Force negotiated with EKS, and finalized the price as \$11,400 (Group A), \$6,840 (Group B), and \$4, 560 (Group C).

¹⁶ Nurimedia’s first offer was \$16, 650 (Group A), \$13, 050 (Group B), \$9,450 (Group C) and finalized with \$6,771, \$5,307, and \$3,820 respectively after negotiation with the Task Force.

- The new group classification which was much simpler than the previous year was as follows:

Table 5. Group Classification in 2010

Library Group	Description
NL	National Library
A	Member Institutions of the Korean Collections Consortium of North America (KCCNA)
B	Institutions with a Korean Studies Librarian, but not a member of the KCCNA
C	Institutions without a Korean Studies Librarian, or with a part time Korean Studies Librarian who manages Korean materials

- For the group negotiation, e-Korean Studies (EKS) included 9 databases and Nurimedia included 2 databases as follows:

Table 6. Korean Databases for the Group Negotiation in 2010

DB package	DB Company	Database
EKS	Korean Studies Information	KISS
	Korean Studies Information	KSI e-book
	Korea Contents Lab	Kdatabase
	Korea Contents Lab	KPjournal
	Dongbang Media	KoreaA2Z
	Dongbang Media	Digital Culture Art Course
	Zininzin	Korean History & Culture Research
	Zininzin	History Culture Series
	LawnB	Legal Information Service
Nurimedia	Nurimedia	DBpia
	Nurimedia	KRpia

- On behalf of the Korea Foundation, the Task Force announced the Support for Korean Studies E-resources Program (2010) through the Eastlib and KS mailing lists.
 - The object of the program was to provide support to eligible universities to offset the user/subscription fees that are required to access online Korean

Studies resources. This was a great benefit of Korean studies-related scholars and graduate students.

- The followings are the summary of the Support program in 2010;
 - Application deadline: February 12, 2010
 - Notification: By the end of February, 2010
 - Scope of Support: Up to 50% of the user/subscription fee and limited to \$5,000
 - Applicable e-resources: online databases; e-journals; e-books, such as E-Korean Studies (including KISS), Nurimedia (DBpia and KRpia), and RISS International; and other fee-based online databases on Korean Studies
- In 2010, a total of 41 institutions from 8 countries took advantage of this group negotiation and grant program. The total amount of the grant supported by the Korea Foundation was \$138,000. The Korea Foundation gave \$168,000 to 45 institutions from 8 countries in 2011.
- In 2010, Miree Ku, a member of the Task Force, created the LibGuide on "the Collective Subscription of Korean e-resources" which includes relevant information on various Korean e-resources, vendor information, the Korea Foundation Support Program, and frequently asked questions about the Collective Subscription of Korean Studies e-resources, etc.
(http://guides.library.duke.edu/korean_eresources)
- The Task Force on Korean Studies E-Resources has played a great role in negotiating a group price deal for fast growing Korean e-resources on behalf of participating institutions in North America. Given its important role, the Committee on Korean Materials (CKM) decided to establish the Subcommittee on Korean Studies E-Resources ("the Subcommittee" hereafter) to continue to carry out the Task Force's mission. In January 2011, the establishment of the Subcommittee and its members were announced; Miree Ku (chair, Duke Univ.), Mikyung Kang (Harvard Univ.), Sun-Yoon Lee (Univ. of Southern California), and Hee-sook Shin (Columbia Univ.).

5. The Fifth Group Negotiation in 2012

- During the Council on East Asian Libraries (CEAL) Annual Meeting held in Toronto, Canada from March 12 to 16, 2012, (and again in Korea in June of the same year) the Subcommittee members had meetings with database vendors and the Korea Foundation to discuss the next contract term and pricing.
- EKS and Nurimedia proposed to the subcommittee new group pricing for new group categories. It would be very difficult for the Subcommittee and participating members to have different prices and group categories every contract period, so the Subcommittee focused on setting up a more stable group subscription plan for the future.
- Nurimedia’s new group price policy
 - In 2011, Nurimedia designated East View Information Services (“East View” hereafter) as an authorized overseas agency. According to East View’s Nurimedia database prices based on Carnegie Category¹⁷, most of the participating members for group subscription seemed belong to Carnegie Category 1.

Table 7. East View’s Nurimedia Database Prices in 2011

	Carnegie Cat.1	Carnegie Cat.2	Carnegie Cat.3	Government	Corporate
DBpia	\$14,713	\$9,956	\$4,778	\$17,655	\$19,421
KRpia	\$5,053	\$3,032	\$1,516	\$6,063	\$6,670
Total	\$19,766	\$12,588	\$6,294	\$23,718	\$26,091

- In fact, according to KESLI consortium in Korea¹⁸, the Nurimedia’s DBpia consortium price in 2012 was about \$3,380~\$27,500 for 9 group categories, which was classified based on the number of full-time equivalents (FTE)

¹⁷ East View and Nurimedia adopted the “Carnegie Classification of Institutions of Higher Education,” which is a framework for clarifying, or grouping, colleges and universities in the United States.

¹⁸ The Korean Electronic Site Licensing Initiative (KESLI) was formed in 1999 with approximately 70 university libraries, medical centers, and research institutes. KESLI grew to a 566-member collaboration with a total of 191 consortia in 2012. The main charges for KESLI are to cope with the problem of consistently rising subscription fees, and to provide significant benefits to participating institutions.

including students, faculty and staff.¹⁹ Compared to consortium prices in Korea, the group subscription prices were considerably lower. However, the Subcommittee emphasized that the users of overseas institutions could not be considered the same as the number of FTE. This shows how complicated vendor negotiations can be.

- Nurimedia proposed two options;
 - Option 1: If the Subcommittee preferred to keep the current group price, Nurimedia wanted to have a 15% annual increase

Table 8. Nurimedia’s Proposed Prices with Current Group Categories (Option 1)

	2012	2013	2014	2015
Group A	\$7,183.35	\$8,260.35	\$9,499.98	\$10,924.98
Group B	\$ 5630. 20	\$6,474.73	\$7,445.94	\$8,562.83
Group C	\$4,052.64	\$4,660.54	\$5,359.62	\$6,163.56

- Option 2: If the Subcommittee agreed with Carnegie Category with the current group price, Nurimedia would have a 3% annual increase. (In this option, most of current members would belong to Carnegie Category 1)

Table 9. Nurimedia’s Proposed Prices with Carnegie Category (Option 2)

	2012	2013	2014	2015
Cat. 1	\$7,183.35	\$7,398.85	\$7,620.82	\$7,849.44
Cat. 2	\$ 5630. 20	\$5,799.11	\$5,973.08	\$6,152.27
Cat. 3	\$4,052.64	\$4,174.22	\$4,299.45	\$4,428.43

- The Subcommittee proposed 2 group categories, instead of the previous 3 groups, through merging Groups A and B. They also suggested that database vendors should have a long-term consortium plan with stable prices. The group prices for Nurimedia (DBpia and KRpia together) proposed by the Subcommittee were as follows;
 - Group 1 (with Korean Studies Librarian): \$6,000
 - Group 2 (without Korean Studies Librarian): \$4,500

¹⁹ For example, other database’s consortium prices were as follows in 2012; KISS (\$4,640~\$32,000), KPjournal (\$1,940~3,200), Korean History & Culture Research (\$2,700~\$4,600), etc.

- Nurimedia finally agreed with this proposal at the end of September, 2012. The new prices for Nurimedia (2 databases) were finalized for 2 groups for 3 years (March 2013 to February 2016) with 2% annual increase as follows:

Table 10. Group Subscription Prices for Nurimedia in 2013

2012 Group	2012	2013 Group	2013
A	\$7,183.00	Group 1	\$6,000
B	\$5,630.20	(with Korean Studies Librarian)	
C	\$4,050.00	Group 2	\$4,500
		(without Korean Studies Librarian)	

- EKS's new group price
 - EKS also proposed a 15% annual increase at first, and then settled on a 5% increase annually.
 - The new prices for EKS (9 databases) were finalized for 2 groups for 3 years (March 2013 to February 2016) with a 2% annual increase as follows;

Table 11. Group Subscription Prices for EKS in 2013

2012 Group	2012	2013 Group	2013
A	\$12,094.00	Group 1	\$10,200
B	\$7,257.00	(with Korean Studies Librarian)	
C	\$4,838.00	Group 2	\$5,500
		(without Korean Studies Librarian)	

- In December 2012, the Subcommittee announced that it finally reached an agreement on Korean Studies database subscription prices and terms with two e-resource vendors (EKS and Nurimedia) for 2013-2016. The Korea Foundation also provided a grant for eligible institutions up to 50% of the user/subscription fees with a limit of \$5,000 per year.

- In 2013, a total of 59 institutions from 12 countries took advantage of this group negotiation and grant program. The total amount of the grants provided by the Korea Foundation was \$271,105.
- In 2014, 67 institutions from 13 countries applied for the grant.

Table 12. Number of Participating Institutions in 2013 and 2014

Countries	No. of Recipients in 2013	No. of Applicants, as of March 16, 2014
US	39	43
Canada	4	4
England	4	4
China	3	5
Australia	2	3
Denmark	1	1
German	1	1
Austria	1	1
Czech Republic	1	1
France	1	1
Hungary	1	1
Kazakhstan	1	1
Hongkong	0	1
Total Institutions	59	67
Total Countries	12	13

Chapter 6

Case Studies

6.1. The Korean Collection at the University of Auckland Library

By Kyu-won Hwang¹

6.1.1 Introduction

The Korean collection is housed in the General Library of the University of Auckland. The University of Auckland (UoA) is the country's largest, most comprehensive university located in Auckland, New Zealand.

The UoA Library has the most extensive library system in New Zealand, with 13 subject-specific libraries across five campuses. The Korean collection is part of the Asian Languages Collection (ALC). The ALC is the most comprehensive collections of Asian language materials in New Zealand, which is comprised of materials mainly from China, Taiwan, Japan, Korea and some from Indonesia. This paper discusses the course of development, a brief introduction and various aspects of the Korean collection.

6.1.2 History

In 1989 the first Korean Studies programme at the University was started by the introduction of Korean language papers offered with the sponsorship of the *Yonkang Foundation* in Korea. At that time a number of Korean books were donated to the University which marked the beginning of the Korean collection in the Library. A part-

¹ Korean Resources Librarian, The University of Auckland

time Korean librarian position was created to take care of those books. Since then, the collection has continued to develop with an allocated budget for Korean material from Library funds. And the librarian position was made a full-time cataloguer in 1999. In addition, donations and assistances from various organizations in Korea – such as the National Library of Korea or the Korea Foundation – helped the collection to grow (Hiyama, 2005; Hwang, 2010).

Until 2008, the Korean collection had been one of the few Asian collections in the world that was using the *Harvard-Yenching* Classification (HYC) system. Since the HYC was considered to be outdated for today's use and for the purpose of making the ALC more aligned with international classification standards, a plan to reclassify the entire ALC into the *Library of Congress* Classification (LCC) system was proposed in 2005. Following careful planning and preparations, the reclassification project was begun at the end of 2008 and successfully completed by the end of 2009.

These factors have enabled the Korean collection to become the largest collection of Korean materials in New Zealand with a Korean specialist librarian (Hiyama, 2005). The Korean librarian is responsible for selection, acquisition, cataloguing and processing of Korean material and providing relevant reference and consultation services to faculty staff and students.

6.1.3 Composition of the Collection

Currently the collection holds more than 13,000 print volumes with approximately 12,000 monographs, 1000 serial volumes and about 400 audio-visual items. It is the third largest Korean collection in the Australasian region.

The collection covers a wide range of subjects such as history, philosophy, religion, politics, economics, fine arts, film studies and literature. Traditionally, the focus of the Korean Studies programme had been Korean language teaching, literature and history. As a result, the largest part of the collection is still occupied by works of literature and language, about 38.8% of the total (as of January 2014). Books on Korean history comprise the second largest part (27.0%). The rest of the collection is made up of social sciences (9.6%), humanities (7.6%), fine arts (3%) and other subject areas (geology, library science, etc.). The following Figure 1 depicts the holdings ratio of the collection in accordance with the subject areas in the LCC system.

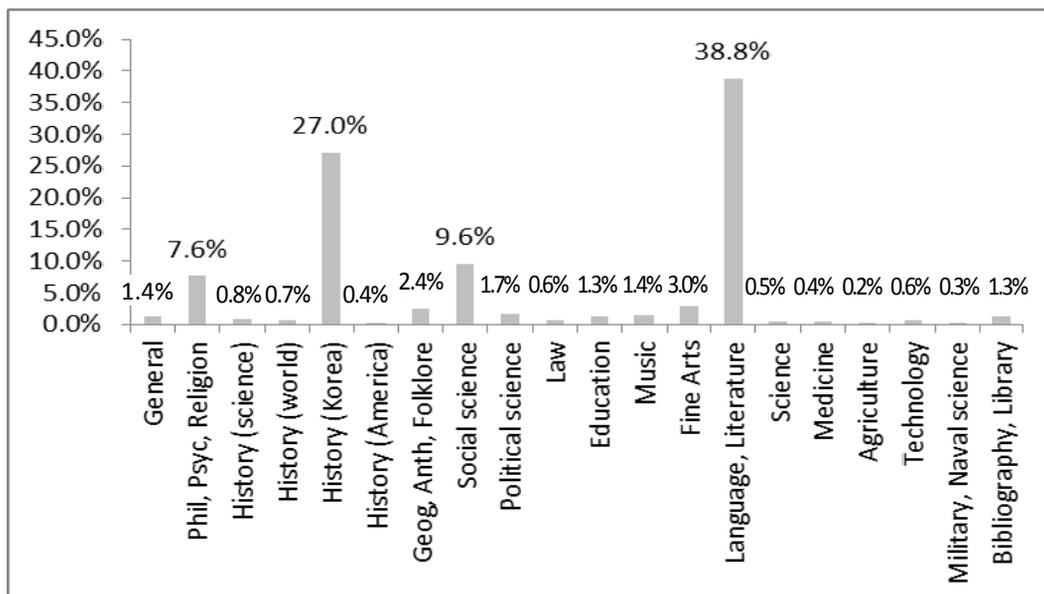


Figure 1. Composition of the Korean collection based on subjects of the LCC as of January 2014.

6.1.4 Collection Development

The development of the Korean collection is performed chiefly by the Korean Resources Librarian, often in consultation with Korean Studies lecturers. Selection of material is carried out in line with the Library’s *Collection Management Plan*², and items are chosen from various sources (e.g. publication catalogues, publishers’ websites, Internet sources, personal recommendations, etc.) in accordance with the following guidelines (Hwang, 2011).

- i. Research interests or requests of academic staff
- ii. Subject areas of currently-taught Korean courses
- iii. Material requested by students for their research in compliance with the Asian Languages Collection Management Plan

Recent efforts in collection development have focussed on giving more support to the currently active research areas of the Korean Studies programme at the University. These areas are Korean diaspora studies (about *Chosŏnjok* [조선족] or *Koryŏin* [고려인]),

² Available from the Library’s website, <http://www.library.auckland.ac.nz/about-us/collections/collection-management> [Accessed 10 March 2014].

multiculturalism in Korea, Korean traditional geological philosophy (Korean *Fengsui* [風水] ideology or *T'aengniji* [擇里志] documents), and translation studies. Materials on these topics have been growing considerably for the past few years. Also, our collection had acquired some notable primary resources from time to time. Such a case was the acquisition of a 400-volume set of *Yijo sillok* [李朝實錄] in 2005. Another example is a CD-ROM copy of an old Korean newspaper in Kazakhstan called *Lenin Kichi* (Renin ūi kichi, 레닌의 기치).

6.1.5 Last Word: Future Challenges

The Korean collection has also kept abreast of new technological developments. Between 2008~2009, the Library took part in a trial service of a new Korean Studies database initiative, e-Korean Studies.com, and experienced the benefits of having Korean databases available for Korean Studies. The Library subscribed to a Korean database called the *RISS International*, which marked the beginning of a specialized Korean Studies database at the University. Last year the first Korean e-book of Korean classics, the Enlarged *Yŏnhaengnok* [燕行錄] series, was acquired as well.

The Library uses a high proportion of its expenditure on the acquisition of electronic books. However, the Korean collection is still yet to start purchasing Korean e-books due to several factors; for example, (a) e-book publishing in Korea is still in a development stage, (b) a lack of good academic material in electronic format, (c) pricing of e-books and so forth. Along with these factors the future challenges for the Korean collection are to find an e-book platform (or a publishing model) that would be right for our circumstances and to discover ways to deliver e-books effectively to our users.

References

- Hiyama, K. (July, 2005). *University of Auckland's Korean collection: development and directions*. Paper presented at the 2005 Fourth KSAA biennial conference: Intellectual engagements with Korea: diversity in Korean studies in Australasia. Auckland, N.Z.: The Korean Studies Association of Australasia.
- Hwang, K. W. (2010). The Korean collection at the University of Auckland, New Zealand. *Trends in Overseas Korean Studies Libraries*, no.4, 41-53.
- Hwang, K. W. (2011). An introduction to the Korean collection at the University of Auckland Library. In C. Song (Ed.). *Korean Studies in shift: Proceedings of the 2010 Pacific Asian Conference on Korean Studies*. (pp. 533-540). Auckland, N.Z.: School of Asian Studies, University of Auckland.

6.2. Korean Studies Collection at the University of Michigan

By Yunah Sung³

6.2.1 Introduction

The Korean Studies collection at the Asia Library has been developed to support the university's instructional and research needs in Korean studies, and to promote the learning and understanding of Korean culture and history. The strengths of the Korean collection are in modern history, socio- economic conditions, language & literature, political science, and art history. Materials are mainly in instructional and research level monographs, periodicals, reprints, maps, microforms, and audio-visual media, with an emphasis on reference works and government documents. As of June 2014, the collection comprises over 53,000 volumes in Korean with all major Korean studies scholarly periodicals available online.

6.2.2 Korean Studies at Michigan

Korean Studies at the University has a relatively short history of 20 years. Korean language courses were first offered in 1990 and the Korean Studies Program (KSP) was officially founded in 1995 at the International Institute with generous financial support from the Korea Foundation. Since then it has become an active participant in the academic community of the university. Integral to the program's success are faculty members who taught and conducted researches on Korean politics, modern history, economic development, religion, film, and language. The KSP developed into a center in 2007 and was named the Nam Center for Korean Studies (NCKS) in 2011. The Nam Center supports academic conferences, cultural events such as art exhibitions and film festivals, development of new courses, visiting scholars programs, and lecture series.

³ Korean Studies Librarian, University of Michigan

6.2.3 History of the Korean Collection

Established in 1948 at the Harlan Hatcher Graduate Library, the Asia Library has been providing one of the nation's foremost collections of Chinese, Japanese, and Korean language resources to students, faculty, and researchers.

The history of the Korean studies collection can be traced back to 1982 when a number of the “Korean Studies Association” and local Korean community leaders realized the lack of Korea-related materials in the university, and launched the “Donating one book per person” campaign. During the campaign, they requested donations not only from individuals, but also from the Korean Publishers Association and the Korean Consulate General in Chicago. Starting from just 100 volumes, the collection has steadily increased through the years, thanks to local community leaders. In addition to local support, the Korean collection has received magnanimous donations from Prof. Andrew C. Nahm at Western Michigan University (2,400 volumes of books and journals in 1996) and Prof. Keum Jang-Tae at Seoul National University (1,500 books and journals in 2001), which propelled the rapid growth.

To satisfy the instructional and research needs, the Korean collection began to gather books and other materials on a large scale in 2000. It launched a three-year collection development plan in 2005 to systemically expand its holdings, including comprehensive reference materials, and primary resources in humanities/social sciences. In particular, one of the methods to acquire out-of-print publications and rare books was to seek donations from the university alumni or any scholars who were looking for a distinguished home for their personal collection of books.

The Korean studies collection has expanded more than 300 percent during the past decade. As of June 2014, the collection comprised of 53,000 volumes in Korean, 212 Korean serial subscriptions, as well as a wide range of e-resources.

6.2.4 Scope of the Collection

- **LANGUAGES:** Materials are collected in Korean.
- **GEOGRAPHICAL AREAS:** Predominantly South Korea. Materials published in North Korea are purchased from the vendors in China and Japan. Korean language materials in China and Japan are also collected intensively.
- **CHRONOLOGICAL PERIODS:** Major emphasis is on the modern period to the present day.
- **PUBLICATION DATES:** Emphasis is on the acquisition of current imprint. Books published before 1930 will be evaluated as possibilities for housing in the Asia Library Special collection.
- **LC CLASSIFICATION NUMBERS:** A - Z, but primarily in the ranges of B, DS, N, and PL.
- **SUBJECTS:** It collects materials in a wide range of subjects in humanities and social sciences, particularly in the following areas; Literature, History (including political and social history), Language and Linguistics, Religion, Sociology, Arts, Philosophy, Anthropology, Cinema studies, Women's studies, and Urban studies. Materials in music and science are accepted on a very limited basis.
- **RETROSPECTIVE ACQUISITION:** Some retrospective acquisition can be made. Non-current books on Korean history and culture may be added as donated or purchased from vendors.

6.2.5 Electronic Resources

The internet and information technology have opened up exciting new possibilities for research on the Korean Studies. To meet a growing demand for electronic resources, several full-text databases containing a broad coverage of primary resources have been provided to the users in 2003. Starting from three major Korean full text journal article databases provided by Nuri Media, Korean Studies Inc., and Dongbang Media, the e-resource collection has expanded to major newspaper archives and scholarly e-books.

The Library has been a member of the Collective Subscription of Korean E-Resources Group which has been organized by the Committee on Korean Materials (CKM) at the Council on East Asian Libraries (CEAL). As a member, the Library has been providing following primary Korean e-resources to library patrons at the group rates with generous financial support from the Korea Foundation; Databases (DBPIA, Korean Studies Information Service System <KISS>, E-Korean Studies, and RISS International), and Newspapers (Chosun Daily Newspaper Archive and Donga Daily Newspaper Archive).

These databases offer information for indexing and abstracting services and full-text reference resources which contain bibliographic records. Over 2.8 million articles from more than 3,500 journals and magazines provided by DBPIA and KISS are now represented in ArticlesPlus, Michigan Library's article discovery tool. ArticlesPlus searches full text content from a wide variety of English as well as Korean sources, and returns a list of relevancy-ranked results. By using ArticlesPlus, Korean researchers can search across multiple databases in any languages simultaneously.

6.2.6 Staffing and Collection Budget

To meet the needs of a rapidly multiplying number of Korean collection users, the Library has provided more personnel and funding support. From 2003 to 2014, the collection budget of the Korean collection has tripled, thanks to generous support from the Library, Nam Center for Korean Studies, Korea Foundation, and various gifts and grants. Also the total holdings of the Korean collection have increased about 280%, from 15,000 volumes to 53,000 volumes during this time period.

What began as a one-person operation in 2003 has grown into a three-person (a Korean Studies Librarian, a cataloging specialist, and an acquisitions specialist) unit capable of processing the increased number of materials in a timely manner. Working closely with colleagues at other departments, including Order Unit, E-Resource Unit, and Central Technical Services Division, staff members of the Korean collection have been developing very effective, productive, and smooth workflow.

6.2.7 Korean Collections Consortium of North America (KCCNA)

One epoch-making development of the Korean collection is to join the Korean Collections Consortium of North America as the 10th member in 2003. The Consortium is a cooperative collection development program, funded by the Korea Foundation which is the primary government organization that supports overseas Korean Studies. Each member library is committed to develop in-depth collections on assigned subject areas and makes them available through ILL in an effort to expand the breadth and depth of overall Korean Studies collections in North America. As an active member of the KCCNA, Michigan has been collecting research materials in following assigned subject areas: Auto industry, Historiography, Democratization, Reunification questions (1945-), Labor relations, Publications on Korea and Korean published in Japan, Publications on Korea and Koreans published in Detroit and Mid West Area.

The Korean collection has received annual grants of \$20,000-\$30,000 over the past 10 years. The membership of the Consortium not only ensured financial support, but also provided many collaboration opportunities with other peer institutions nationally and internationally.

6.2.8 Challenges and Opportunities

With the wide use of the internet and information technology, the Library should come up with a strategic plan to develop user-centered and user-friendly Korean language resources to facilitate teaching and research, placing more emphasis on electronic resources and their easy accesses. As the trends in academics and publishing industry move quickly toward to electronic resources, the University of Michigan has been trying to keep the balance between the print collection and the electronic collection. In contrast to the print collection, these e-resources are provided by certain vendors as a package deal without much room for price negotiation. It is critical to secure additional funds to pay for highly priced e-resources which are irreplaceable and indispensable.

With the strong commitment and support from the University and the Library, the Korean Studies collection will continue to help facilitate groundbreaking scholarship in Korean Studies and to strive to meet the needs from faculty members and students at a wide range of departments in University of Michigan and beyond in the Digital Age.

6.2.9 Related Sites

- Korean Studies Research Guide: <http://guides.lib.umich.edu/koreanstudies>
- Asia Library: <http://www.lib.umich.edu/asia-library>
- University of Michigan Libraries: <http://www.lib.umich.edu/>
- Nam Center for Korean Studies: <http://www.ii.umich.edu/ncks>
- University of Michigan: <http://umich.edu/>



6.3. Developing a Korean Studies Collection: The Case of the Monash University Library, Australia

By Jung-Sim Kim⁴

6.3.1 Korean Studies Collection

-- History

In order to develop Korean Studies in Australia, the Australian government established the National Korean Studies Centre in 1990. In 1992, the Centre received an A\$150,000 government grant to establish a research library, the Korean Studies Research Library (KSRL), which was located as part of the Asian Studies Research Library of Monash University. The aim of establishing the KSRL was to support a major program of research on contemporary Korea in Australia with a special emphasis on Korean-language materials focusing on economics, politics, law and the other social sciences. The writer was hired in 1992 to build this collection.

After the Asian economic crisis began in mid-1997, many Australian universities cut back or eliminated their Korean studies programs owing to financial problems. The National Korean Studies Centre itself closed in early 2001. With its closure, the Korean Studies Research Library became the Korean Collection under the Asian Studies Research Collection in the Sir Louis Matheson Library of the Monash University Library. The collection now focuses on Korean language, history, music and architecture, as well as the social sciences. In addition, the Monash University Library has acquired a very substantial DVD collection of Korean cinema and television. These DVDs are used for the teaching of Korean language as well as research on modern Korean culture and society. The Korean Collection of the Monash University Library also provides ongoing services to users at the University of Melbourne as part of Asian Libraries in Melbourne (ALIM), a collaborative venture between libraries of Monash University and the University of Melbourne.

⁴ Korean Studies Librarian, Monash University

-- Korean Materials in the Library Management System

Since September 2013, the Monash University Library has used the Alma library management system. Korean language materials are catalogued using the McCune-Reischauer romanization system and classified by Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC) system on Alma. Users can search and retrieve records by typing romanized Korean or Korean scripts (Hangul or Hancha) via the Library's discovery platform, Search (<http://search.lib.monash.edu>).

The Korean Collection acquires materials through purchase and donations. It also obtains resources through competitive grant applications. The most important donations come from the Korea Foundation, the National Library of Korea, the National Assembly Library, and the Korea Institute for International Economic Policy (KIEP). The Korea Foundation provides materials through its "Reference Materials Distribution Program" and "Support for Korean Studies e-Resources" programs.

-- Korean Studies Librarian

Monash University is the only university (of nine) in the state of Victoria which teaches Korean language. The writer is the only Korean Studies Librarian employed by an academic library in Australia. The Korean Studies Librarian is responsible for selection, acquisition and cataloguing of new materials, liaison with researchers and teachers of Korean studies, and preparation and delivery of library classes, including those relevant to Korean studies.

-- Faculty⁵ liaison

The Korean Studies Librarian liaises regularly with staff teaching Korea-related subjects and subjects with a significant component on Korea. Most of these subjects are taught in the Faculty of Arts. The Korean Studies Librarian also works with postgraduate students working on Korea-related research in the Faculty of Arts, the Faculty of Business and Economics and the Faculty of Education.

⁵ In Australia, the term Faculty is used for 單科大學, a term often translated as College in the United States and Korea.

-- Korean Studies Library Guide

The Library Guide for Korean Studies provides assistance to library users to find journal articles, full-text journal articles through databases, books, theses, and useful Korean websites. The Library Guide also provides information for “Korean architecture” and “Architectural Conservation” for the University of Melbourne.

The Library Guide is available at
<http://guides.lib.monash.edu/korean>



QR code for Korean Studies library guide

6.3.2 Collaboration and Outreach Through Asian Libraries in Melbourne (ALIM)

-- Korea-related Activities of Asian Libraries in Melbourne projects

The Korean collection receives a financial contribution annually from the University of Melbourne. Monash University Library’s Korean Studies Librarian provides research skills classes to students taking Korea-related subjects of the University of Melbourne and also provides long-term loans for Korean materials.
(<http://alim.monash.org>)

-- Exhibitions

The Korean Collection also participates in exhibitions or displays of the Monash Asian Studies Research Collection (see photo below of a Korean pop music display) and the Asian Libraries in Melbourne. The Korean Collection played a role in a recent joint ALIM exhibition on “Asian arts” and “Asian scripts” displayed at the Baillieu Library of the University of Melbourne.



Display (Korean pop music)

6.3.3 Budget and Staffing

-- Budget

At present, in times of financial stringency, the budget allowed for the purchase of Korean materials is limited, but the collection is growing both through purchase and through donations. In addition, the University of Melbourne as part of the Asian Libraries in Melbourne makes an annual contribution to the acquisitions of the Korean Collection at the Monash University Library. Of course, the Monash University Library also funds the position of the Korean Studies Librarian.

-- Staffing

The Korean Studies Librarian belongs to the Library's Asian Studies Research Collection team, the ALIM team, and the Faculty of Arts team.

6.3.4 Potential Changes

From this year, the Monash University Library expects to outsource cataloging for Asian language materials. This would reduce a key task of the Korean Studies Librarian and enable her to do more work liaising with Korean-related teaching and research staff and with postgraduate students. Whether this will work well has yet to be seen.

Recently, owing to space problems within the library, more and more Korean language materials are being moved away from the campus into off-site storage. However, only materials that have not been accessed for five years are shifted off-site and, in such a case, materials can be brought back to campus within two days. This change involves all academic disciplines.

The Monash University Library now prefers to purchase e-resources such as ebooks and databases rather than hard copies.

The Matheson Library refurbishment will start the end of 2014, so the location of the Korean Collection will be changed.

6.3.5 Conclusion

This paper provides brief information on the Korean Studies Collection at the Monash University Library. More detailed information about the Korean Studies Collection can be found at “Korean Collection at Monash University in Australia,” *Trends in Overseas Korean Studies Librarians*⁶.

⁶ Jung-Sim Kim, “Korean Collection at Monash University in Australia,” *Trends in Overseas Korean Studies Librarians*, no. 5 (June 2011) , pp.53-67 (pp. 39-52 in Korean).

6.4. Developing a Korean Studies Collection: The Case of Duke University

By Miree Ku⁷

6.4.1 Introduction

Academic libraries in the United States are increasingly providing access to foreign language materials and resources. But, building a foreign language collection in an academic library is still challenging. The Korean Studies program and collection at Duke has long been embraced within the context of East Asian Studies, but as a separate field, it is relatively new at Duke.

Duke began to offer classes in Korean language instruction, political science and sociology in 1993 in response to student request, and the first regular rank faculty member was hired in 1998. Since then, Duke's Korean Studies program has steadily developed and, as of 2014, three tenure/regular rank faculty, instructors, faculty fellow and visiting faculty offer courses on Korea, host seminars related to the study of Korea, sponsor workshops and conferences, and collaborate with a broad range of visiting scholars. Duke's Korean Studies program works closely with Duke Asian & Middle Eastern Studies (AMES) and Asian Pacific Studies Institute (APSI), which offers a Master's degree in East Asian Studies with a specialization in Korea.

6.4.2 Brief Summary of Korean Collection at Duke

-- Initial stage of Korean Collection: 1993-2006

Prior to 1990, there were less than 300 books in Korean at Duke. Since then, with the help of the Korea Foundation, the Korea Research Foundation, and an endowment created by a former missionary to Korea as well as funding from the Title VI and Freeman grants, Duke has worked to build a collection relying heavily on faculty recommendations, and concentrating largely on literature and film. Most of the growth

⁷ Korean Studies Librarian, Duke University

has come since 1999; between 1999 and 2006, the collection has grown from 1025 to 3857 volumes and 17 to 301 films.⁸

The growth of the program, together with faculty frustration over the lack of staff support and reliance on faculty selection, led to an external review by Joy Kim in 2006.⁹ According to Joy Kim's report after her site visit, Korean studies professors were frustrated at the level of library support; they invested a significant amount of time and effort in selecting and compiling materials for acquisitions, but they were often disappointed due to the delay in acquisition and cataloging as well as poor cataloging records. Joy Kim recommended as follows:

- Hire a Korean studies librarian. If funding is insufficient, start with grants and gradually transition into a permanent appointment
- Establish a South Korean approval plan
- Better utilize South Korean gift sources and free Web resources
- Take advantage of free ILL of commercial electronic resources
- Host visiting librarians from the Korean National Assembly Library or the Korean National Library, which will also provide access privileges to restricted databases
- Aggressively seek grants from various foundations and funding agencies
- Seek membership in the Korean Collections Consortium of North America

In 2007, Duke University Libraries hired Miree Ku as a Korean Studies Librarian to develop, manage, and evaluate the collections from and about Korea and provide specialized reference assistance and instruction to library users as well as assistance with cataloging and acquisitions.

-- Development stage of Korean Collection: 2006-present

During the period for 2006-present, major collection development initiatives increased Duke's Korean collection. Through careful management of the Korean budget, the

⁸ Kristina Troost, "The East Asian Collection at Duke University." Prepared for a Conference, "Over a Hundred Years of Collecting: The History of East Asian Collection in North America," University of California, Berkeley, October 18-2007.

⁹ Joy Kim, "Developing Korean Library Resources at Duke University: A Report on Site Visit." February 1-3, 2006.

primary subject areas have been strengthened. Moreover, a user-friendly, searchable Korean Collection Database was developed to enhance access to Korean resources at Duke as well as to support Korean collection management, streamline the acquisitions process, and provide a selection guide for collection development. Through outreach activities to Korean faculty, students and visiting scholars at Duke, the awareness of Duke's Korean collections has dramatically increased.

As of March 2014, there are more than 10,000 English language resources on Korea including about 300 titles of Videos and DVDs, 480 titles of Journals, magazines or serials, 187 records of microforms, and 125 maps at Duke University libraries.

- The composition of the English language collection on Korea includes approximately 22% in Economics related subjects, 16% in History, 11% in Politics related subjects, 10% in Foreign Relations, 5% in Korean War, etc.
- As of March 2014, 578 items are checked out, which is about 6% of the total English language collection on Korea.
- About 50% of the total collection is held in Perkins/Bostock Library, 20% at Duke's off-site repository, called the Library Service Center, and others in Divinity, Ford, Law, Lilly, and Rubenstein Libraries.

As of December 2013, the physical volume holdings in Korean language resources total 17,251 items. In addition, the library holds 1,315 titles in audio/visual collection. 5,109 titles of Korean serials held by Duke University libraries can be accessed; 21 titles are purchased serials and 5,088 titles are subscribed serials which can be accessed electronically.¹⁰

- As of March 2014, major holdings by call number range include 38.99% in Language and literature, 23.61% in History, 9.66% in Social Science, 8.79% in Philosophy and Religion, 4.18% in Fine Arts, 2.87% in Political Sciences and 2.03% in Law etc.
- As of March 2014, 660 items are checked out, which is about 5% of the total Korean language collection.
- Perkins/Bostock Library holds about 78% of the total Korean collection, 11.54% in the Library Service Center and 7.56% in Lilly Library.

¹⁰ Prepared for CEAL Statistics in December 1, 2013.

- Academic Korean e-books have been selected and acquired both as individual titles and e-book packages. After selecting titles to match our collecting needs, e-books have been acquired from Korean Studies Information (KSI, Han'guk Haksul Chǒngbo 한국학술정보) since 2010. Currently, Duke holds 266 titles. When purchasing print books, KSI provides e-books without additional cost. In addition, subscribing to Korean databases that include KSI e-books, KRpia and other databases enables Duke's patrons to access about 9,000 e-books.

6.4.3 Issues and Challenges

The most important issue at Duke's Korean collection in 2006 was having a professional staff for the collection. To this end, a Korean Studies Librarian was hired at Duke University Libraries in 2007.

6.4.3.1 Collection Evaluation

In order to develop the Korean collection to a level at which it could meet the teaching and research needs of Duke faculty, students, and researchers, the strengths and weaknesses of the current collection were evaluated by the Korean Studies Librarian.

At first, a list of reference resources with annotations by subject and format was prepared in order to give a thorough understanding of the collection. This list was based mainly on books held in the Korean collection at Duke University Libraries.¹¹ Also, an order list of new reference materials was prepared in response to a deficiency. Some reference books were moved to regular shelves or the Library Service Center, Duke's high-density repository. And, the Korean collection was evaluated by thorough analysis such as volume holdings by subject or circulation rates.

¹¹ Miree Ku, "Korean Studies Resources at Duke University Libraries" Prepared for a Conference, "East Asian Studies Librarians from the Southeast" Duke University, June 25-26, 2006.

6.4.3.2 Budget Analysis

After evaluating the collection, funding and budget allocation for the Korean collection was also evaluated in order to effectively meet faculty and students' increasing demands on Korean resources.

- FY2000 (July 1, 1999 – June 30, 2000): A separate fund for Western language books on Korea was established in 1999.
- FY2001: Until FY2001, expenditures for Korean serials were combined with Chinese subscriptions.
- Until 2004, the allocated budget has largely supported western language materials on Korea and serials. The collection of Korean language books at Duke largely depended on the support from the Korea Foundation and other gifts.
- The Judy Endowment was the sole funding source for Korean language acquisitions until Title VI funding for Korean collection (\$6,892) was allocated to the Korean language collection fund in FY2004.
- In FY2005 and FY2006, total allocated budget was \$9,287.89 and \$15,212.56 respectively, but 57% (\$5,303.41) and 53% (\$8,188.12) of total allocated budget were expended for Korean resources.

Fiscal Year	Total Expenditures on Korean collection
FY 2000	\$2,350
FY 2001	\$4,840
FY 2002	\$4,129
FY 2003	\$9,022
FY 2004	\$14,789
FY 2005	\$5,303
FY 2006	\$8,188

The budget has been expanded since 2007; total allocated fund for the Korean collection in FY2014 is \$78,352.71.

- Until FY2008, Korean language materials were usually acquired using Grant (Title VI Funding) or Endowment (Judy Endowment) funds. There has been a separate university fund, but it was very small.

- Since FY2008, University Appropriated Fund for the Korean language collection (monograph budget) increased from almost nothing to \$27,972 in FY2014. Other grants and endowments (about \$25,000) are also contributing to the acquisition of Korean language monographs.
- The following table shows total expenditure on the Korean collection from FY2007 through FY2013.

Fiscal Year	Total Expenditures on Korean collection
FY 2007	\$15,086
FY 2008	\$28,087
FY 2009	\$45,152
FY 2010	\$42,123
FY 2011	\$50,226
FY 2012	\$49,054
FY 2013	\$70,689

- In FY2008, the budget for Korean full text databases was requested and set up. Considering the limited budget and its usage expectations, DBpia and KRpia subscriptions were ordered in the first year, and then these were expanded to include subscription to 11 databases in FY2010 and then 14 databases in FY2013. Duke has been receiving a grant from the Korea Foundation for the Korean Studies e-resources since 2009 as follows.

Year	Databases	Subscription Fee	Duke	KF Grant
2008	2 databases	\$3,500	\$3,500	N/A
2009	11 databases	\$8,700	\$5,220	\$3,480
2010	11 databases	\$12,147	\$7,147	\$5,000
2011	11 databases	\$12,511	\$7,511	\$5,000
2012	11 databases	\$12,887	\$7,887	\$5,000
2013	14 databases	\$20,700	\$15,700	\$5,000

6.4.3.3 Acquisition

-- Vendor Selection

- After consulting with other Korean Studies librarians, Panmun (<http://epanmun.co.kr/>) was selected as Duke's Korean vendor, considering its long history and good reputation for reliable service. Also taken into consideration were monthly lists, availability of material in the shortest time, correctness of invoices and material received, cooperation in accepting returns, responsiveness to inquiries, and prompt and cooperative issuance of credit memos. During the last 7 years, Panmun has been a good partner in providing Korean materials to Duke University libraries.

-- Rush Orders

- Rush orders for items available for purchase online are made through Aladin US (<http://us.aladin.co.kr/home/welcome.aspx>). Compared to placing rush orders to vendors in Korea, it is cheaper and faster to use online bookstores in the U.S. If items are out of stock, Panmun is a good vendor to ask to find them in a used book store.
- At Duke, one acquisition staff member works for the Korean and Japanese collections. She has studied the Korean language for one year in order to help her in understanding Korean materials ordering, but this limited language proficiency means it takes time for her to make order records. In order to make processing faster and easier, OCLC records are included in the order list, if available.
- Faculty and students usually expect books to arrive within a few days when they request rush orders. For rush Korean items that especially need original cataloging, a circulation note in the Aleph system such as "Rush item circulated uncataloged. When returned, send to the cataloging department" was attached before the item was checked out to the patron in order to meet the user's needs. Nowadays, Duke Library system officially allows rush items circulated uncataloged with a circulation note, especially for foreign language materials.

-- Approval Plans

- Approval plans with Panmun in FY2013 were set up when Duke received the first grant from the Korea Foundation as a new member of the Korean Collection Consortium of North America (KCCNA). The two most important reasons for adopting approval plans were to ensure receipt upon publication of all important new books in designated collection categories and to save the time it would take library staff members to generate and process orders.
- Approval plan profiles were prepared as follows:
 - Approval plan with KF Grant (\$20,000) for building comprehensive collections in the assigned subject areas which are Applied Linguistics, History and Criticism in Literature, Cultural Studies, Buddhism, Film Studies, Korean Cuisine (Food), and Ethics
 - Approval plan with Duke University Fund (\$10,000) for building comprehensive collections in language and literature, history, politics, art and architecture, women's studies, statistics, bibliography, and for books published by Somyong and Youkrack Publishing. The fund for Duke Approval plan expanded to \$20,000 in FY2014.
- In order to avoid returning items that we do not want, Panmun's weekly approval lists are thoroughly reviewed by the Korean Studies Librarian. Panmun sends the approval lists to an acquisition staff member and ships approval materials and invoices. Panmun has been excellent in avoiding duplicate title orders.

6.4.3.4 Access to Resources

-- Finding Resources

- In 2006, it was not easy for users to find Korean materials in the library catalog. At that time, for most non-English materials, native script searching was not available at Duke University libraries. Patrons were supposed to use transliterated search, especially McCune-Reischauer (M-R) romanization for Korean materials.

- Due to spelling variants, diacritics, and different Korean Romanization systems in Korea and the United States as well as word spacing issues¹², faculty, researchers and students often encountered unexpected problems when trying to find items via online searching.
- In 2007, the Korean Studies Librarian developed Duke's Korean Database, a user-friendly, searchable database for all library-held Korean visual materials and new Korean books purchased since 2006. This database could be searched in Korean, M-R romanization or English for titles, authors, directors, actors/actresses, or publishers, regardless of characters or spaces. Since then, Duke University library system has been supporting a foreign language search function in Duke's online catalog system.
- Users also had difficulty locating Korean resources cataloged in Chinese or Japanese. In order to enhance access to Korean materials in online catalog, Korean titles in the Varying Form of Title (field 246 in the MARC record) were added to help patrons locate materials. It took a few months to correct all records. In addition, the records cataloged with incorrect romanization and diacritics were modified.

-- Cataloging and Backlog Management

- One of the most demanding tasks was cataloging Korean materials, especially for the materials that did not have any records in OCLC. Without a Korean cataloger or acquisitions staff, it has been a great challenge to carry out the necessary tasks in maintaining a fledgling Korean collection.
- The rapid growth of the Korean collection created backlogs and issues for cataloging. In order to reduce the backlog, all backlogs which had previously been split between Acquisitions, Cataloging, and the International and Area Studies (IAS) Department were consolidated. At the same time, the workflow was evaluated from the arrival of an item at the Acquisitions department to its placement on the shelf at the East Asian Collection (EAC). After making space

¹² Jeong, Wooseob, Kim, Joy, Ku, Miree, "To be, or not to be: spaces in Korean bibliographic records," *The Cataloging & Classification Quarterly* v.47 (8), pp. 708-721, 2009.

for all backlogs at the EAC, the backlogs were moved and shelved, and bibliographic data saved to a spreadsheet according to the following categories:

- Books lacking an OCLC record (original full-level cataloging record needed)
 - Books with minimal-level OCLC record (upgrade to full-level record needed)
 - DVD/VHS/CD with no OCLC record (original full-level cataloging record needed)
 - Duplicate Materials
- Library student assistants and volunteers were trained to do copy cataloging. They checked OCLC records periodically for backlog items using the spreadsheet. One of these volunteers became the Korean Cataloging Intern and created full-level, original cataloging records which were reviewed by the Korean Studies Librarian and other original catalogers at Duke. As a result, most of the Korean backlog has been processed thanks to systematic workflow and the efforts of the Korean assistants. This project required close coordination and cooperation between acquisitions, cataloging and the student assistants.

-- E-Resources

- Libraries have always served as access points for information. For overseas Korean faculty, researchers and students, the library's role as access point for Korean resources, especially e-resources are valuable to Korean Studies as to any other area of academic research. This attitude was reflected by Duke faculty and graduate students, who unanimously spoke in favor of e-resources during a meeting with the Korean Studies Librarian in 2007.
- In consideration of budgetary limitations, the Korean Studies librarian, in consultation with other Korean librarians, evaluated resource providers and their products on authoritativeness, comprehensiveness, and uniqueness in order to negotiate pricing. As a result, Duke started subscribing to DBpia and KRpia since 2008.
- In an effort to make highly requested e-resources affordable to overseas libraries, Korean Studies librarians negotiated with Korean e-resource vendors for group subscription prices, which were much lower than the vendors' list prices. Also, Korean Studies librarians convinced the Korea Foundation to support overseas Korean collections by providing Korean e-resources. As a result, the Korea Foundation has been providing a grant program to eligible universities to offset

the subscription fees for Korean Studies E-resources since 2009. Duke has been taking advantages of this grant since 2009.

- Duke subscribes the following databases as of 2014;

DB Package	DB Company	Database
EKS	Korean Studies Information	KISS 한국학술정보 학술지 원문 데이터베이스
	Korean Studies Information	KSI e-Book 한국학술정보 전자책 단행본
	Korea Contents Lab	Kdatabases 한국 현대사 통합 데이터베이스
	Korea Contents Lab	KPjournal 북한 학술지 통합 데이터베이스
	Dongbang Media	KoreaA2Z 한국학 DB 콘텐츠
	Dongbang Media	Digital Culture Art Course 디지털 문화강좌
	Zininzin	Korean History and Culture Research Database 한국역사 문화조사자료 데이터베이스
	LawnB	LawnB Legal Information Service 로앤비 법률 정보서비스
EKS Plus	학술교육원	eArticle 학술교육원 원문 데이터베이스
	학지사	New Nonmun 학지사 뉴논문
	CNC	CNC Korea Scholarship Information CNC 학술정보
Nurimeida	Nurimedia	DBpia 누리미디어 학술간행물
	Nurimedia	KRpia 한국의 지식 콘텐츠
KERIS	KERIS	RISS International

6.4.3.5 User Service and Outreach

-- Research Service

International and Area Studies (IAS) librarians in research libraries are the subject specialists who have responsibilities for a variety of subjects within a specific geographic region. As an IAS librarian at Duke, the role of the Korean Studies Librarian is providing multi-subject approaches to research, supporting cooperation across disciplines, and playing an active and central networking role to build bridges

among faculty, researchers, and students on campus as well as visiting scholars or researchers from Korea.

-- Reading Group & Forum

The Korean Studies Librarian constantly works to promote the Korean collection and library services to Duke users by initiating reading groups or forums, circulating the most up-to-date news via libguides, emails, meetings, and the Duke Korean Student Association's websites.

A reading group on North Korea issues organized by the Korean Studies Librarian in 2011 became an important forum for faculty, scholars and students with similar research interests. Later, this reading group became the Duke Korea Forum, which has been holding many events such as colloquia, workshops, a semester-long film series, public talks and panel discussions organized by Duke's Korean Faculty since January 2012.

-- Korean Collections Consortium of North America (KCCNA)

Duke joined the Korean Collections Consortium of North America in 2012. As a member of the KCCNA, Duke has been collecting research materials with an annual grant of \$20,000 from the Korea Foundation in the assigned subject areas; Ethics, Korean Cuisine, Film Studies, Buddhism, Cultural Studies, Applied Linguistics, and Publications on Korea and Koreans published in the southeastern region of the U.S.

Established in 1994 with 6 founding members, the KCCNA aims to develop and share a comprehensive Korean Studies collection in North America. The Foundation provides annual funding toward the purchase of books and materials in an effort to expand the Korea-related collections of member libraries. Each member library is responsible for developing and making readily accessible an in-depth, academic research collection in support of Korean Studies scholars in North America.

Chapter 7

Characteristics of Korean Studies Librarianship

By Joy Kim¹

It goes without saying that Korean Studies Librarianship refers to all library activities in support of the study, teaching, and research of Korea, a country with a long history, a strong academic tradition, and, until recently, a remarkably homogenous society whose people speak but one language. Compared to some other area studies involving multiple countries, peoples, and languages, Korean Studies librarianship has neatly defined geographical boundaries. The core of Korean Studies librarianship assumes Korean language materials, although some Korean Studies librarians may be responsible for collecting English and other non-Korean language materials on Korea. It may also include the study of Korean immigrants living outside of North and South Korea.

Even with this relatively well-defined focus, Korean Studies Librarianship is a complex field in its own right. A microcosm of librarianship as a whole, it involves the breadth of the issues of the profession. It deals with all the major functional areas of librarianship: collection development, acquisitions, cataloging, reference, instruction, outreach, technology, and preservation. It covers the whole gamut of subject disciplines: anthropology, the arts, business, culture, economy, history, language, literature, philosophy, politics, religion, society, and so forth. The target materials encompass a wide variety of formats including books, serials, audio-visual, digital, maps, music, archival, microform, and ephemera.

¹ Curator, Korean Heritage Library, University of Southern California (joykim@usc.edu)

Since not many libraries can afford or need multiple Korean Studies experts, it is quite common for one professional to oversee all these diverse responsibilities, with or without support staff. In addition, they often find themselves performing duties that are not normally required of their mainstream library colleagues in comparable ranks. Sometimes Korean Studies librarians act as administrators, diplomats, fundraisers, grant writers, publicists, cultural experts, and event organizers. It is no wonder, then, that Korean Studies librarianship involves distinctive sets of skills and challenges. At the same time, it also offers exciting opportunities and rewards, often envied by other librarians.

In this article, I wish to share some practical and timeless advice based on my nearly three decades of experience as a Korean Studies Librarian. In an attempt to answer questions I sometimes receive from new or aspiring librarians, I will discuss some skills and qualities I consider most important for all Korean Studies librarians to possess. I will also share a few practical techniques I have used to overcome some of the common challenges facing most Korean Studies librarians. Since every environment is different with its own set of rules, limits, and personalities, my techniques may not be applicable to other libraries.²

² For a comprehensive history of Korean Studies Librarianship in North America, see Joy Kim, "Purpose Driven Progress: Korean Studies Librarianship in North America, 1990-2009," *Journal of East Asian Libraries* no. 149 (Oct. 2009): 19-44.
<https://ojs.lib.byu.edu/spc/index.php/JEAL/article/view/11195/11110>

7.1. Essential Skills and Qualifications for Success

Language Skills

Language skills are considered the most essential requirement of Korean Studies Librarianship. In addition to being fluent in English (and/or the language of your workplace), Korean Studies Librarians must command a native or near-native fluency in Korean as well. This includes reading knowledge of Chinese characters used in contemporary and historic Korean scholarship. In addition, you should have bibliographic knowledge of Japanese in order to be able to handle the substantial body of publications from the colonial period.

Entrepreneur/Proactive Spirit

Be prepared to face it: Korean Studies is an “underdog” in most institutional settings, typically a lower priority compared to its peer areas of Chinese and Japanese Studies. Funds, space, and/or human resources commonly fall short of the needs. Rather than accepting this state passively, you must never stop lobbying for more support. At the same time, you should try your best to raise the needed resources proactively. This may take various forms of outreach efforts on your part: mobilize Korean student groups on campus to launch book drives; drum up community interest by publishing advocacy articles in local Korean newspapers; reach out to community organizations and leaders for support; engage alumni organizations in raising funds and soliciting materials; write grant proposals to foundations and governments in your country of work as well as in Korea; solicit gift materials from Korea or from other Korean Studies libraries, and so on. Not every effort will bear fruit—be prepared to face persistent indifference and occasional failures. While repeated setbacks may discourage you temporarily, *you must be resilient*; you must bounce right back and start over, because *giving up is not an option for Korean Studies librarians*.

Communication/Political Savvy

Obviously, communication skills are essential in all aspects of life, but your work as a Korean Studies Librarian happens to require more of them. By communication skills I mean more than the articulation techniques of speech and writing. You must hone some political skills and carefully choose when, to whom, and through whom to communicate in order to achieve your goals. While you always strive to communicate through the appropriate internal channels, there may be times when you are justified in resorting to other sources. For example, sometimes it may be more effective to use the voices of the users of your library. Often, faculty members and donors can command the attention of those in power much better than you can. When orally praised or complained about, consider asking the person to put it in writing. Documenting complaints against you or your library may sound harmful to your reputation, but the goal is to create an opportunity to explain the reasons for the poor collection or service. You can use the evidence of customer dissatisfaction to bolster your case for better support from the University.

Sometimes, in truly dire situations, you may have to resort to even more unconventional methods. I know one librarian who was in such a situation. When repeated pleas for adequate space for the growing Korean collections were systematically ignored, putting the collections at risk of serious damage, the librarian instigated a visit by the field officer of an important support agency. The officer was appalled by the poor condition of the collections which had been built with his organization's grants. He conveyed his concerns to the top administration of the library along with pictures of the books taken during his visit. Needless to say, the problem was immediately addressed, and the librarian received much more support than she ever anticipated. This type of brilliant success is a rare exception, and cannot be expected to be the norm. If taken in the wrong way, such a tactic could well create trust issues and damage internal relationships, resulting in negative long term consequences. Before resorting to any such maneuvers, therefore, you must weigh the potential risks and benefits very carefully.

Passion

The passion you possess is the mysterious inner strength that empowers you to face many obstacles with courage and hope. This unquenchable energy keeps you optimistic, motivates you to persevere in challenging situations, and inspires creative problem solving. This is one asset you must guard fiercely and never ever lose, because if you do, you will be easily discouraged and your work will become drudgery rather than fun.

7.2. Personal Advice on Opportunities, Priorities, and Facing Common Challenges

Cultivating Supporters

Consciously or unconsciously I tend to view all visitors to my library as potential supporters. I always strive to give the best possible impression of my library, trying to implant an idea in their mind that this library is worthy of their support. Thankfully, quite a few of them turn into enthusiastic advocates of the library. In addition to donating their own personal collections or funds, they also encourage their relatives and friends to do the same.

Importance of Gift Materials

Personal collections from individuals are especially welcome in my library. Established in 1986, my library tends to have gaps in pre-1990 publications. Since retrospective materials are normally out of print and hard to acquire, dusty old gift books excite me. If some of them turn out to be rare editions, I feel as if I have found a hidden treasure. Even more valuable are unique primary archival collections, which tend to get destroyed when passed down from one generation to the next. Discovering, preserving, archiving, and providing access to these types of unique materials are one of the most meaningful and rewarding aspects of Korean Studies librarianship.

Importance of User Service

As mentioned previously, Korean Studies librarians tend to play many roles beyond the traditional librarian responsibilities. While these must be for good causes which indirectly benefit Korean Studies programs or the library, they should not interfere with the librarian's most important role: helping the users. The ultimate goal of the wide range of activities performed by Korean Studies Librarians is to serve users well. To the extent that I can, I constantly strive to keep user services my top priority.

Importance of Cataloging

Catalog records are the very foundation of librarianship. As such, a strong knowledge in cataloging is essential in *all* aspects of librarianship. Among all areas of specialization in the profession, I consider cataloging the most intellectual part. While cataloging work is highly rule- or code-based, it is far from a mechanical process. If you are a cataloger and do not understand or question the “why’s” behind certain rules, codes, components, or structures, then it could be an indication that you do not appreciate the intellectual depth and challenge of the work but perform the task as a rote technician. It is not only the cataloger who needs this knowledge. It helps reference librarians to develop effective search strategies; collection librarians to distinguish one manifestation of a work from another when making selection decisions; instruction librarians to teach information literacy skills to students more effectively. In short, the more you understand about cataloging, the more effective you will be in all areas of your responsibility.

On Subject Expertise

As already mentioned, Korean Studies collections are multi-disciplinary in nature, essentially making the librarian a language specialist rather than a subject librarian. Having to develop collections and provide user services without deep subject backgrounds can be a challenge for some of us—it is for me. I therefore actively solicit recommendations from faculty and graduate students for collections and try to take advantage of their knowledge when providing reference and instruction services. In that sense, Korean Studies librarians were practicing the concept of DDA (demand driven acquisitions) long before it became a popular acquisitions model.

Magnifying Human Resources

Creating new permanent positions in Korean Studies libraries can be especially difficult. The technique that has worked best for me—for three positions—was obtaining fixed-term, conditional grants which included a specific condition that, at the end of the grant periods, the University agreed to convert the fixed-term positions into permanent ones. The following additional techniques are also highly effective when it comes to augmenting the human resources at my library:

- **Vendor records.** The vendor for our South Korean Approval Plan creates minimal level records directly in OCLC using our university's login ID for all the books sent to the library. This free service streamlined our South Korean acquisitions process and boosted our productivity significantly.
- **Visiting librarian program.** Since 1994, my library at the University of Southern California (USC) has hosted at least one visiting librarian from Korea each year. During their 1-2 year visits, they contribute substantially to the library by working in such areas as acquisitions, cataloging, serials control, gifts, and archival collections management. This program has been sustained for twenty years primarily by three funding sources: external grants, internal funding from USC, and in many cases, the sending libraries which paid the visiting librarians' salaries (or more) while they worked for USC.

In 2014, the **Korea Foundation Global Library Internship Program** was launched. In this new program, the Korea Foundation will recruit and dispatch qualified librarians to work for participating libraries overseas for up to 10 months. The financial support for the selected interns comes from the Korea Foundation.

Providing for the Future

An endowment guarantees that its income will benefit the designated cause in perpetuity. My advice to Korean Studies librarians *at any stage* is to start an endowment as soon as you can, be it for Korean collections, programs, or human resources. Make it as general as you can so as to give yourself the most flexibility in how the funds can be spent. For example, an endowment for Korean journal subscriptions can support only that—journal subscriptions. A more broadly defined library endowment (e.g., “Korean Studies”), on the other hand, offers you the flexibility to spend in the most needed areas, which can change from year to year. Have realistic goals. To the extent possible at your own institution, start with what you can, with the goal of increasing it over time. If possible, incorporate a matching component to give potential donors incentives. Creating and growing an endowment is perhaps one of the most *unselfish* things you can do in your career, as it is sure to benefit your successors much more than it will help you.

7.3. Conclusion

It is rare for Korean Studies librarians to have all of their needs be fully provided for, but that should in no way keep you from being successful. This book is all about helping you to be resourceful even when you have limited means. I have always maintained that an intelligent and creative librarian with a small budget can still provide adequate service by utilizing such sources as grants, gifts, ILL, and free resources on the Web. There is no question that your library's best asset is *you*—an intelligent, creative, motivated, passionate, and energetic professional. Acting as a strong advocate, you will devise ingenious ways to grow your collection and provide excellent service.

As a person who started on this journey long before you, I give you these words of encouragement: “The future of Korean Studies Librarianship is in your hands.”

Contributors

Erica S. Chang (syoungc@hawaii.edu)
Cataloging Librarian
Hamilton Library, Univ. of Hawaii,
Manoa

Jaeyoung Chang
(jchang@library.berkeley.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
C. V. Starr East Asian Library, Univ. of
California, Berkeley

Kyungmi Chun
(kyungmic@stanford.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
East Asia Library, Stanford Univ.

Kyu-won Hwang
(k.hwang@auckland.ac.nz)
Korean Resources Librarian
Asia Languages Collection, Univ. of
Auckland

Mikyung Kang
(mlkang@fas.harvard.edu)
Librarian for the Korean Collection
Harvard-Yenching Library, Harvard Univ.

Hana Kim (hn.kim@ubc.ca)
Head
Asian Library, University of British
Columbia

Helen Kim (helen.kim@ubc.ca)
Korean Studies Librarian
Asian Library, Univ. of British Columbia

Joy Kim (joykim@usc.edu)
Curator
Korean Heritage Library, Univ. of
Southern California

Jung Sim Kim
(jung.sim.kim@monash.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
Asian Studies Research Library, Monash
Univ.

Miree Ku (miree.ku@duke.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
Perkins Library, Duke Univ.

Hyounghae Lee
(hyoungl@princeton.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
East Asian Library, Princeton Univ.

EunHee Nah (enah@fas.harvard.edu)
Korean Cataloger
Harvard-Yenching Library, Harvard Univ.

Youngsim Leigh (ylei@loc.gov)
Librarian
Asian & Middle Eastern Division, Library
of Congress

Eunseung Oh (eoh@stanford.edu)
Korean Tech Services Librarian
East Asian Library, Stanford Univ.

Jee-Young Park
(jeeyoungpark@uchicago.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
East Asian Library, Univ. of Chicago

Hee-Sook Shin (hs2148@columbia.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
C.V. Starr East Asian Library, Columbia
Univ.

Yunah Sung (yunahs@umich.edu)
Korean Studies Librarian
Asia Library, Univ. of Michigan

Jude Yang (yoonlim@hawaii.edu)
Korea Studies Librarian
Asia Collection, Univ. of Hawaii, Manoa

Hyokyung Yi (hkyi@uw.edu)
Head, Public Services and Korean
Studies Librarian
East Asia Library, Univ. of Washington